

MARKHAMS MAISTER-PEECE.

OR,

1480 da 17

What doth a Horse-man lacke.

Containing all possible knowledge whatsoeuer which doth belong to any Smith, Farrier or Horse-leech, *touching the curing of all manner of diseases or sorran-ces in horses; drawne with great paine and most approved experience from the publique practise of all the forraine Horse-Marshalls of Christendome, and from the private practise of all the best Farriers of this Kingdome.*

Being deuided into two Bookes.

The first containing all cures Physicall. The Second whatsoeuer belongeth to Chirurgerie, with *an addition of 130 most principall Chapters, and 340 most excellent medicines, receits and secrets worthy euery mans knowledge, neuer written of, nor mentioned in any Author before whatsoeuer.*

Together with the true nature, vse, and qualitie of *euerie Simple spoken of through the whole worke.*

Reade me, practise me, and admire me.

Written by *Gervase Markham* Gentleman.

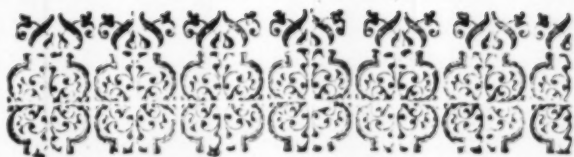
Pro. 12. ver. 10.

A iust man hath pity on his beast: but the mercies of the wicked are cruell.

LONDON,

Printed by *Nicholas Okes*, and are to be sold by *Arthur Iohnson*, dwelling at the signe of the white Horse neere to the great North doore of *S. Pauls Church*. 1610.





TO THE RIGHT
HONORABLE AND HIS
SINGVLAR GOOD LORD,
the Lord Clyfton, Baron of Layton.

IF the tribute of pcore
mens labours (Right
Honourable, and my
most best Lord) be
the al-witnesses of our
most seruiceable loues : then I hope
mine which comes to kisse your
hand, will protest and vowe for me,
that my zeale and duty towards you
and your house, hath no date but in
my last breath. And al be this worke,
which hath beene my many yeares
experience (for the rude and deformed
collection) may seeme too humi-

A 3 ble

The Epistle Dedicatory.

ble for your support; yet in as much
as I know both your owne excellent
and well approued knowledge in the
same art (and so best able to iudge
either of my worth or vanitie) and
your most noble affection to men of
any vertue, I dare with better bold-
nesse present you with this my last
sacrifice of writing, beseeching you
in it to behold not only how my time
is imployed, but how infinit my lon-
ging is to bee numbred onely your
creature.

Your Honors in all humble

duty to command,

Geruase Markham.



THE FIRST BOOKE

containing all cures Physicall, or
such infirmities as being inward, craue
the administration of Physicke, and are
called in Horse-leach-craft,
Horses sicknesses.

CHAP. I.

Of the naturall composition of horses bodies.



Any, yea euen of those which
are nearest to my studies, will
not onely wonder, but in part
condemne me for this worke
when they shall but reade the
title, without any excuse ima-
gining, that I hauing in my last
booke done my vttermost en-
deuour, and spent my best skil in this subiect, that sure-
ly this reiteration, can be nothing but either meere
Tautologie, or some surfaite of ostentation. But how
much I hate the one & condemne the other, both my
selfe and those with whom I hold any comercement,
can iustly and truly witnesse: for beleeue it, I neuer
stood affected either to *Absalons* pillars or to the mu-
sique of mine owne words. Truth it is, that at the
publishing of my last booke, I intended to haue inser-

B

ted

ted this in the same forme and methode as now it is, but the ouer hastie greedinesse of a selfe-hurting Stationer, and the confusion of many Printers (one poore booke being mangled into diuers hands) did both so confound, and defeate all my better purposes, that I was compeld to giue way to their wils, and to suffer it to come forth with that mishapen and distraet face which now it beareth; euery page being loaded with the Printers faults, and no way to saue their reputation, but by most wilful neglecting to fixe to any *Errata*. Well, for euery part of that booke (excepting that of cures) the Printers faults excused, I dare boldly defend it against either enuy, censure, or any preiudication; and though it be not the perfection or most perfect (for those fruites grow not on my tree,) yet it is such, and so sound as shall giue a full satisfaction to euery indifferent and vpright iudgement. As for that part, (the booke of cures I meane) which my selfe must needs confesse, giueth not that ample satisfaction which I intended, I haue in amends thereof compiled this volume with such earnest care, practise and diligence, that I dare engage euen my best fortunes, that simplicity and ignorance it selfe (I meane such as neuer intermedled with this art in the whole circuit of their liues) shall not onely with good iudgement performe as great and as inuincible cures as the best Smith-farriers of this kingdom, but also shall giue such substantiall reasons and uncontrollable accounts for whatsoeuer they do, (which yet neuer Smith that I knew was able to do) that not the best artist shall be able with vndoubted truth to refute them. And with this protestation and full assurance to euery well practizing reader of this worke,

worke, I will proceede to my purpose, according to euery branch and head in the title.

It is most necessary then for euery man who shall endeouour himselfe to haue knowledge in this art, first to learne whereof and how a horses body is compounded, that according to the naturall composition thereof, and the vnnaturall workings in those compositions, he may compound his medicines, and make them agreeable with the effects of his infirmities; and not as our farriers do, many times vse one medicine for all inward diseases, and one salue for all sores.

Touching therefore the true composition of a horses body, you shall vnderstand that it is as the body of a man is, compounded of thirteene seuerall things, that is to say, seuen naturall, and fixe not naturall; the seuen naturall are, *Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members, Powers or Vertues, Actions or Operations, and Spirits*; all which be called naturall, because the naturall profession and excellency of euery sensible body, doth wholly depend vpon them, and bath his mouing no longer then they haue power of working. The fixe which are not naturall, be the *Aire, Meate and Drinke, Motion and Rest, Sleepe and Watch, Emptinesse and Fulnes*, and the *Affects or motions* of the minde; and these are called not naturall, because as (being rightly and in due order applyed) they preserue, sustaine, and fortifie the body; so being misgouerned, or vsed in any excessse or disorder, they are the onely corrupt destroyers of the whole body: and of these thirteene simples which compound the fabricke or whole frame of the body, I intend to speake seuerally.

First, for the exposition of this word *Element*, you shall vnderstand that it is the primere or first beginning of things, being of it selfe pure, vncorrupt and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at the last being resolued into the same againe. It is also in it owne nature so bright, cleare, and without contraction or impurity, that it is not to be discerned by any sensible eye whatsoeuer. Lastly, it is the least part or *Atomie* of that thing which is made, or proceedeth from it.

Now of these elements which are the vsuall first mouers or beginners of all mouing things, there are onely foure in number, that is to say: *Fire, Aire, Water* and *Earth*; meaning not that fire, aire, water and earth, which is visible here with vs beneath, and which through the grossenes thereof, is both palpable and to be discerned; but those which are mounted aloft, and through their purity inuisible, and concealed from vs, (for the other are compounded bodies and not simple) And of these perfect and distinct elements you shall know, that the fire is the highest, as being fixed or ioyned next vnto the Moone, being hot and drye, yet naturally exceeding or being most predominant or ruling in heate.

The aire is placed next vnto the fire, and is naturally light and hot, yet his predominant or chiefe quality is moist.

The water is adioyned vnto the ayre, the disposition thereof, being heauy and moist, but his predominant

minant or chiefe quality onely cold.

Lastly, the earth adioyned to the water, is the lowest, and it is most heavy and cold; but the predominant or chiefe quality thereof is onely drinesse.

Now for the vertues, properties, and operations of these foure elements, you shall vnderstand, that first the fire by meanes of his heate, moueth matter to generation, and stirreth vp warmth in all liuing things; it is that which the *Philosophers* call *Heterogenia*, which is in mixt bodies to separate things of diuers kindes, one from another, and also to ioyne things of like kindes together, which they likewise call *Homogenia*. For by vertue of the fire, the bones of horses are separated from the flesh, the flesh from the sinewes, the sinewes from the veines, the veines from the arteries, the heart from the liuer, the liuer from the spleene, and so forth, in such sort as we see the diuers parts of the fuelle we burne, by the vertue of the fire and heate to be separated and deuided one from another, as the vapour from the smoake, the smoake from the flame, and the flame from the ashes. And as in these things, so in many other things, as in the tryall of mettals and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heate, separateth body from body, that is, mettall from mettall, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together euery thing of one and the selfe same kinde. Besides, the vertue of the fire is to ripen, order and digest things raw and vndigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the powers that the aire being somewhat more solide and grosse, may enter into the body; and lastly, it breatheth and moderateth the coldnesse of the water and the earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the body.

Touching the vertue and operation of the aire, you shall vnderstand that by the moistnesse thereof it maketh the matter apt to receiue shape either naturall or accidentall, and by the helpe and assistance of the fire, bringeth the powers and influences of the heauens and starres into the inferour bodies, making the mixt bodies, not onely subtile and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too grosse nor too heauy. Secondly, the ayre through his moistnesse cooleth the burning heate of the heart, liuer and intrails, as we dayly see by the office of the lights and lungs, which like a paire of bellows draweth vncessandy fresh ayre vnto the heart and inward members. And albeit the ayre doth not seeme to the sense of our outward eyes, to bee any thing neare so moist as the water, yet according to the opinions both of our bookes and best Physitions, it is by much the moister; which is well proued, say they, by the abundant fluxe it containeth, which fluxe spreadeth it selfe so farre abroad in the body, that it filleth euery empty part and corner thereof with the speciall properties and characters of moistnesse; and by that reason is much harder to be kept within his owne bounds then the water is. Lastly, as the water was altered by God from his first naturall place, for the better profite both of man and beast, euen so the ayre, according to Schoole-mens opinions was not left altogether in his first naturall disposition, lest being ouermoist it should so confound and suffocate all sense, that neither man nor beast should be able to breathe or liue.

Now for the vertue and operation of the water, it is to be noted that through the coldnesse thereof, it
con-

conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies, both parts & members together, which be of diuers kinds, as bones with flesh and sinewes, flesh with sinewes & bones, and sinewes with bones and flesh. Euen as for a familiar exámple, we see in the time of any great frost, the strength of the cold how it bindeth things of diuers kinds together, bringing into one masse or substance both water, dirt, stones, strawes, stickes and leaues: the water also with its coldnesse, doth temper and coole the inflammation and heate of the fire, gathering together those things which otherwise the violent heate would disperse and scatter abroad.

Lastly, for the vertue and operation of the earth, it is through his driness in mixt bodies, so to harden and fixe them together, that they may retaine their shapes, which otherwise by the power of the ayre and water, would be so soluble and loose, that they could not hold together; as we may see in paste, waxe, and such like, which whilest it is moist will receiue no print, but being once hardened it retaineth any forme that is prest into it. And here to be noted, that according to the opinion of *Hippocrates*, when any sensible body dyeth, not onely euery quality but euery substance and part makes his returne to the element from whence it came; as heate to the fire, moistnesse to the ayre, coldnesse to the water, & driness to the earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these foure common elements or common beginners of things, the fire being hot separateth, the aire being moist shapeth, the water being cold bindeth, and the earth being dry hardeneth and retaineth. The vse that you are to make of this knowledge, ouer and beside the composition of a naturall body, is, that when you find

find any sicknesse or infirmity which proceedeth from the fire, as inflammations of the body, or such like; that then you apply simples of the nature of the aire or water, which may moisten and coole the violence of that heate. If the infirmity proceede from the aire, as fluxe of blood, or too much moisture; then you shall apply simples of the nature of the fire or earth, whose heate and drinessse may disperse and harden such moisture. If the disease spring from the water, as colds, rheumes, apoplexies and such like, then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire and aire; that through the heate of the one, and the moist lightnesse of the other, all such cold, grosse and solide humors may be dispersed. But if the disease proceed from the earth, as manginessse, and leprosie, or their like that are dry & hardened infections, then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire onely, whose heate may dissolue & loosen those ill knit, dry, and hard humors. Thus you see too much heate is abated by coldnesse and moistnesse, too much moistnesse by heate and drinessse, too much coldnesse by heate and moistnesse, too much drinessse by heate onely.

Thus much of these foure common elements, which begin all things liuing and vniuing, sensible and vsensible; yet of sensible things which liue and haue blood, there be other more neare elements or beginnings, which are called proper elements or generation, as the ingendring seede, and menstruall blood, from whence euery beast taketh his first shape and beginning; and yet these proper beginnings haue their whole dependancy and hanging vpon the qualities of the first common beginnings already spoken of, which is moist, dry, hot and cold; for with-

The first Booke.

9

without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

CHAP. 3.

*Of Temperaments and their severall kindes, and how
farre every way, they extend in horses.*

THESE *Temperaments* or *Temperatures*, which are the second things in a horses composition, do spring from the commixture of the foure elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are vnequall, and the ninth is equall. Of the eight vnequall, foure are simple, and those be hot, cold, moist, and dry, which Physitions call the first qualities; and of these, the first two be active, and the other two passive: the other foure are compound, and they be hot & moist, hot & dry, cold and moist, cold and dry. Now the equall temperament is divided into two, an vniuersall and a speciall. The equall *Temperament* vniuersall, is when the foure elements are in an equall proportion, generally diuided through the whole body, nature enioyning no more from the one then from the other. The equall *Temperament* special, is when the elements are proportioned according as every kind doth most properly require, be it either plant or beast: in plants, when every plant hath that commixture of elements which are proper to its kinde, the hot plant being hot, the cold being cold, and so forth: whereas contrariwise, to haue a hot plant cold, or a cold hot, to haue rue cold, or sorrell hot, were a false and vnequal commixture of elements. So likewise of beasts, that horse, that dogge, that swine is said to haue his due *Temperament*, when hee is of such temperature as is most proper vnto his kinde; which onely is best discerned

C

by

by his actions or motions. As thus, the horse is known to be hot and moist by his lightnesse, swiftnesse, valiantnesse and long life; and also to be of a temperate nature, in that he is easily tamed, docible, obedient and familiar with the man. And so long as either horse or any other thing, continueth in the mediocrity and excellencie of his proper *Temperament*, so long we may truly iudge him of a good temper & disposition; but if there be any overflow of qualities, or excess in his humors, as either in heate, coldnesse, moistnesse or driness, then we say, he is either a hot cholericke horse, a cold dull horse, a dry mischievous horse, or a moyst cowardly horse, according to the overflow of that quality which raigneth in him.

Againe, euery horse is sayd to haue his due *Temperament* according to his age, and the country wherein he is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the yeare wherein he liueth. And thus a horse in his foale-age, which is till he be sixe yeares old, is naturally hot and moist. In his middle age, which is till twelue, more hot and dry then moist; and in his old age, which is past eighteene, more cold and dry, then either hot or moist. So likewise the horses which are bred in southerne parts, as either in *Spaine*, *Barbary*, or *Greece* are naturally more hot then those which are bred either in the seuentene lands, *Germany*, or *England*; neither is there any horse which is in good state of body, that is so hot in the spring time of the yeare, as in the summer, nor so cold in the summer as in the winter. All which obseruations are with most curious diligence to be obserued of euery horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any sicknes: for vnlesse he consider their natures & temperatures, and euery other

other circumstance already declared, he shall right soone be deceiued in the administration of his physicke. Therefore I earnestly aduise euery Farrier, before he giue any drench or potion, first to enquire the kinde, race, and disposition of the horse, next his age, then the country, and lastly the time of the yeare: and so according to the truth thereof, to mixe his receipts.

It is most expedient also for euery horse-leach to consider the second qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings from the first qualities already declared; of which second qualities some be called palpable, or to be touched, as these, softnesse, hardnesse, smoothnesse, roughnesse, toughnesse, brackelnesse, lightnesse, heauinesse, thinnesse, thicknesse, smalnesse, grosnesse, and such other like. Some againe are not palpable, as those which appertaine to hearing, seeing and smelling, as noysses, colours, odours and such like; and by obseruing well these second qualities, he shall with much ease, know whether the horse be disposed to any sicknes or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in euery particular chapter.

CHAP. 4.

Of humours, and to what end they serue.

NOW concerning *Humours*, which are the third composers of a horses body, and so likewise of euery other beast also; you shall vnderstand that they are foure in number, that is to say, *Bloud, Fleame, Choler* and *Melancholy*. As touching bloud, it is in it owne nature vncorrupted, and therefore hot and moyst,

and sweet in taste, as participating of the elements, *Fire* and *Aire*. *Fleame* is cold and moist, and either sweet or wallowish without any taste at all, as participating of the elements water and aire. *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the elements fire and earth. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, and in taste sower and heauy, as participating of the elements water and earth: so that these foure humours by their qualities, are euery way allied vnto the elements. For to speake briefly, and according to the manner of Physitions, *Bloud* is of the nature of aire, it being most predominant therein; *Fleame* of the nature of water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholy* of the nature of the earth. And albeit these humours are simbolized or mixt through euery part of the body; yet euery one of them, aboundeth more in one part then in another, and haue their places of residence absolute and peculiar to themselves, as *Bloud* about the heart, *Fleame* in the braine, *Choler* in the liuer, and *Melancholy* in the spleene. Now as these humors do more or lesse abound, or haue greater or lesse soueraignty in the body of the horse: so is the beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified or disposed, as thus. That horse in whom bloud hath the greatest predominance, & may be called a horse sanguine, is bright bay of colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That horse in whom fleame hath the greatest dominion, and may be called a flegmatike horse, is for the most part, of a milke white colour, and so consequently slow, dull and heauy. If choler beare the greatest rule in his constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright sorrell, and by that meanes of disposition hot, fiery, and

and of little strength. Lastly, if the earth haue gotten power aboue the other elements, so that he may be called a melancholy horse, then is his colour commonly a mouse dunne, and his disposition cowardly, faint and slothfull. But because these particularities are properly appertaining to the complexions of horses, of which we shall haue cause to speake more largely hereafter, I will not stand vpon any greater relation; onely I giue you thus much in conclusion: to vnderstand that euery one of these aforesaid humours hath his proper vse or end, whereunto it serueth, as thus. *Bloud* serueth most properly to nourish the body. *Fleame* giueth motion to the ioynts. *Choler* prouoketh the auoydance of excrements, and *Melancholy* begetteth an appetite or longing to his meate. Now during the time that these humours do possesse their naturall qualities, so long they are wholefome, and bee called by their simple names, without glosse or addition; but if by any mischance they be disordered or corrupted, then they are vnwholefome, and are no longer called by their simple names, but haue other epithetons annexed vnto them, as *Melancholy Bloud*, *Salt Fleame*, *Choler adust* or *Burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholy*, whercof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of humours.

CHAP. 5.

Of Members and their seuerall kinds.

TOUCHING *Members*, which are the fourth maine instruments in this great fabricke of a horses bo-

dy; they are by Schoolemen diuided into two parts. The first is called *similaria*, which is like, semblable or one and the same thing. The other is called instrumentall, and are contrary to the first.

Members alike are those which being separated or distributed into parts, yet euery part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation or nature; as flesh, bone, sinew, and such like: for flesh being cut or incised into many parts, yet is euery part still flesh, so reputed and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether, and as of this, so likewise may it be said of bones, sinewes, and their like.

Now for members *instrumentall*, they bee those which being made of parts semblable, and diuided into parts; yet the parts are not alike, neither haue all one name with the whole, as the head, legge, foote, and such like: for euery part of the head is not called the head, nor euery part of the legge, the legges; but haue other appellations, as the brow, the temples, the knee, the feetlocke, and so forth. Now these instrumentall members, in doing of their offices and duties are of much more perfection then the semblable members; wherefore Schoole-men haue made amongst these instrumentall members foure souveraignes or princes aboue the rest; that is, the *Braine*, the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the first three are the preseruers of the singular body; and the fourth of the whole kinde: the first three giuing motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and increase to succeeding ages.

Now from these principall members, like branches from a well growne tree, do spring other members which

which do them seruice : as from the braine springeth sinewes, whole office is feeling : from the heart arteries, whose office is sprightnelſe and liuely hood; from the liuer, veines, whose office is warmth and ſtrength; and from the ſtones the ſeede veſſels, whose office is procreation and increaſe. Now for as much as from theſe doth likewise proceede a world of other members, as *Tendants, Ligaments, Lungs, Spleene, Guts* and ſuch like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chyrurgian then to the Phyſitian (though moſt neceſſary for both) I am here to aduert ſe euery ſtudiouſ reader, that when he ſhall haue occaſion to meddle with any member about a horſe, that he turne to the ſecond booke in this volume, which treateth onely of ſurgery; and there he ſhall not only find euery member and lineament in a horſe, but alſo the true anatomies ſo liuely demonſtrated, that there ſhall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his vnderſtanding. And thus much in this place of members.

CHAP. 6.

Of Powers, and how a Horſes body is gouerned by them.

POwers which by ſome are called vertues or principall faculties, and do gouerne and controll both the body of man or beaſt, and haue the fiſt place in this worke, are in number three, that is, the *Power animall*, the *Power vitall*, and the *Power naturall*. The *Power animall* is a vertue incident to the braine, which through the ſinewes coming like little conduit pipes from the braine, diſtributeth feeling and mouing to all

all the parts of the body. The *Power vitall* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth giue life and spirit to all the body by meanes of the arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the chiefe fountaine of naturall heate, carries in their little channels ouer the whole body, that aire and spirituall bloud which makes it full of lightnesse and alacrity. The *Power naturall* is a vertue belonging to the liuer which giues nourishment vnto all the body, and to euery part thereof, by meanes of the veines, which do likewise proceede from the liuer like greater conduites, carrying the bloud from the liuer which is the fountaine of bloud, into euery part of the body. Besides the *Power naturall* containeth foure other vertues, that is, the vertue attractiue which draweth food meeete to sustaine the body; the vertue retentive, by which it retaineth and keepeth the foode receiued: the vertue digestiue whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same. And lastly the vertue expulsiue, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these powers or vertues being of no lesse validity then you perceiue by this discourse. it is the part and duty of euery good Horse-leach, to haue a most carefull and vigilant respect vnto them: for if any of them faile, the horse cannot liue. Therefore whensoever you see that either your horse refuseth his foode, or that he doth not retaine and keepe his food, but casteth it vp againe, or that he doth not digest his food, but keeps it corruptly in his stomacke, or that he can not void his excrements in a naturall manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certaine signes of mortall sickness. And thus much of powers or vertues.

The first Booke.

17

CHAP. 7.

Of Actions or Operations, and whereto
they belong.

AS touching *Actions* or *operations*, which are the sixth columnne or pillar which doth vphold this naturall body of which we treat, they are not onely belonging, but euen deriued from the three powers immediatly spoken of in the former chapter, as thus. The action and operation of the *Power animall*, is to discerne, to moue, and to feele. Horses discerne by meanes of the vertue *Imaginative*, *Discoursatiue*, and *Memoratiue*, whereof the first is placed in the forehead, the second in the middle of the braine, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended vnder the *Power animall*, Horses moue by meanes of the vertue *Motiu*e, whose action & operation is to straine or let slacke the sinewes, whereby euery member hath his mouing. And horses feeling is by meanes of the vertue *Sensitiue*, whose action or operation is busied in the fve senses, as to *See*, *Heare*, *Smell*, *Tast*, and *Touch*; and all these actions spring from the *Power animall*.

The action or operation of the *Power vitall*, is to restraine and loosen the heart, and the arteries, which proceede from the heart, which action whether it be hurt or disturbed in a horse's body is easily knowne of euery good Farrier or horse *Marshall* by the vnequall beating of his pulse, that is to say of the arteries which cometh downe from the heart, to the insides of both his fore legges, a little below the knuckles of his shoulders, and likewise crosse both the temples of his head, a little higher then his eyes. And if any

D

man

man be so simple to imagine that the thickeſſe of the horses skinne shall be any impediment to the feeling of this motion, let him remember that as a horses skin is thicker then a mans, so also are his arteries greater, and beate with more violence; and so consequently to be felt without any great difficulty.

The actions or operations of the *Power naturall*, are to *ingender*, to *increase*, to *nourish*, to *desire with appetite*, to *attract*, to *change*, to *digest*, to *retaine* and to *expell*, and many others of like kinde. These actions therefore are carefully to be looked vnto by every Farrier, to the intent that he may learne by them, not only the whole state of a horses body, but also what particular member thereof is euill affected, as thus. If either in your horse you finde much forgetfulness, vnnimbleness of his limbes, or dulness vpon correction, it is a signe of sickness in the braine, and that the *Power animal* is euill affected. If you find that his pulses do beate extraordinarily slow, or much to fast, it is a signe that his heart is grieued, and his *Power vitall* euill affected; but if you finde that he doth consume, pine away, & loseth his stomacke, it is a signe that his liuer is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power naturall* euill affected.

Now you shall againe vnderstand that of actions some be voluntary, some not voluntary.

The voluntary actions be those which a horse may either further or hinder, stay or let when themselves pleaseth, as the mouing of the legges: for they may go, stand, or lye downe, at their owne pleasure.

The actions not voluntary, are those which depend not vpon the will of any beast, but be done of their

theirowne accord and naturally, as the mouing of the heart and of the arteries, and the passage of the blood: the first whereof beateh sleeping and waking; and the other hath his course euery minute. And thus much of actions and operations.

CHAP. 8.

Of Spirits, and in what parts of the horses body they remaine.

Spirits, which is the seventh naturall builder of this naturall worke, are to be vnderstood to be that fine, pure, cleare, and ayrie substance which is ingendred of the finest part of the blood, whereby the vertue of euery principall member may visite all the other parts of the body, making them to do their duties according to the rules of nature. Now of spirits, according to the opinion of some Physitians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit animall* and the *Spirit vitall*. The *Spirit animall* is that which giueth power of feeling and mouing to a horse, and hath his resting place in the braine, from whence through the sinewes it is dispersed into all other parts of the body; and as it is ingendred of the vitall spirit, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continuall breathing: euen so it is partly preserued by the *Chaule* of the braine, which doth howrely water and nourish it.

The *Spirit vitall* is contained in the heart, from whence it floweth into euery part of the body, being the chiefe cause of all naturall heate; and it is preserued and nourished, both by breathing and blood.

To these two spirits, there be some Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit naturall*, saying, it hath its residence in the liuer & the veines: but the two former are of such power, and haue such superiority, that the body cannot liue without them, nor haue any being at all; wherefore it is the office of the Farrier continually in all his medicines to haue euer some comfortable simple which may maintaine and keepe these spirits in their full strength, liuelyhood and vertue. And thus much touching spirits, & those seuen naturall things which compact a naturall body.

CHAP. 9.

*Of the sixe thing not naturall, how they profit,
and how they hurt.*

HAuing spoken of the naturall things whereof a horses body is compounded, it is needfull now that we speake something of the other sixe which be not naturall, so farre forth as they concerne the office of the Farrier and no further: for with other matters we haue not to do. The first thing then which is not naturall, yet preserueth a horses body in good state, is the aire, which being pure, sharp, cleare and piercing, giueth great life and nourishment to a horse; but being contrary, that is, grosse, thicke, and full of putrifaction, it cannot chuse but alter the good habit of his body, and breede in him many infirmities. Therefore euery Farrier shall haue great respect to the aire wherein a horse either liueth or was bred in, as if a horse that was bred in a hot aire, come to liue in a cold, and through that exchange grow sicke, the

the Farrier shall by warme dyet, close house, and moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: also when a horse exceedeth in any of the foure qualities, that is, in heate, moystnesse, coldnesse, or drinesse, it is best for him to, liue in that aire which is contrary to that quality wherein hee exceedeth. Lastly, in many diseases, the change of the aire is most wholesome, as shall be shewed at large in the particular diseases.

For the meate and drinke of a horse which is the second thing not naturall in a horses composition, it is not to be doubted but whilest it is sweete, cleane, & good, as bread well made and baked, dry oates, dry beanes, dry pease, sweet hay, sweet straw, or short grasse, so long it nourisheth and preserueth the horses body; but if it bee fusty, raw, corrupt and vn cleane, or if he eate tares, fitches, rye, or barley, then must hee needes bee vnfound and full of infirmities. Therefore the Farrier shall be carefull to keepe him from all such foodes as breede naughty euill bloud; as for his water, the more pure it is, the better, and the more muddy, thicke and pleasant, so much the more vnhealthfull.

Now for his mouing and rest, that is either his trauell or standing still, which is the third thing not naturall in a horses composition, doubtlesse they be great preseruers of a horses health: for as moderate exercise dissolueth grosse humours, ingendreth appetite, and addeth strength vnto the limbes, so likewise indifferent rest, causeth digestion, comforteth the sinewes, & maketh the heart cheareful against ensuing labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate trauell or exercise, when a horse is gidden beyond his strength,

To these two spirits, there be some Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit naturall*, saying, it hath its residence in the liuer & the veines; but the two former are of such power, and haue such superiority, that the body cannot liue without them, nor haue any being at all; wherefore it is the office of the Farrier continually in all his medicines to haue euer some comfortable simple which may maintaine and keepe these spirits in their full strength, liuelyhood and vertue. And thus much touching spirits, & those seuen naturall things which compact a naturall body.

CHAP. 9.

*Of the sixe thing not naturall, how they profit,
and how they hurt.*

HAuing spoken of the naturall things whereof a horses body is compounded, it is needfull now that we speake something of the other sixe which be not naturall, so farre forth as they concerne the office of the Farrier and no further: for with other matters we haue not to do. The first thing then which is not naturall, yet preserueth a horses body in good state, is the aire, which being pure, sharp, cleare and piercing, giueth great life and nourishment to a horse; but being contrary, that is, grosse, thicke, and full of putrifaction, it cannot chuse but alter the good habit of his body, and breede in him many infirmities. Therefore euery Farrier shall haue great respect to the aire wherein a horse either liueth or was bred in, as if a horse that was bred in a hot aire, come to liue in a cold, and through that exchange grow sicke,
the

the Farrier shall by warme dyet, close house, and moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: also when a horse exceedeth in any of the foure qualities, that is, in heate, moystnesse, coldnesse, or drinessse, it is best for him to, liue in that aire which is contrary to that quality wherein hee exceedeth. Lastly, in many diseases, the change of the aire is most wholesome, as shall be shewed at large in the particular diseases.

For the meate and drinke of a horse which is the second thing not naturall in a horses composition, it is not to be doubted but whilest it is sweete, cleane, & good, as bread well made and baked, dry oates, dry beanes, dry pease, sweet hay, sweet straw, or short grasse, so long it nourisheth and preserueth the horses body; but if it bee fusty, raw, corrupt and vncleane, or if he eate tares, fitches, rye, or barley, then must hee needes bee vnfound and full of infirmities. Therefore the Farrier shall be carefull to keepe him from all such foodes as breede naughty euill bloud; as for his water, the more pure it is, the better, and the more muddy, thicke and pleasant, so much the more vnhealthfull.

Now for his mouing and rest, that is either his trauell or standing still, which is the third thing not naturall in a horses composition, doubtlesse they be great preseruers of a horses health: for as moderate exercise dissolueth grosse humours, ingendreth appetite, and addeth strength vnto the limbes, so likewise indifferent rest, causeth digestion, comforteth the sinewes, & maketh the heart cheareful against ensuing labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate trauell or exercise, when a horse is gidden beyond his strength,

breedeth many dangerous & mortall sicknesses, as the foundring in the body, the consumption of the lungs and liuer, molten grease and such like, besides the pissing of blood, manginess, farrye, and such like; all which inward diseases craue strong purges, and the outward sharp and corroding medicines. Immoderate rest, which is when a horse doth stand long still without any exercise. Feeding foule and grossly is as great an enemy to a horses health as the other: for it congregateth & bindeth together all sorts of ill humours, breedes corruption in the blood, rottenness in the flesh, & generally as many diseases as any ill dyet whatsoever.

The sleepe or watch of a horse (which is the fourth thing in our composition) is so necessary a comfort to a horse, that he cannot liue without it: it is the greatest mouer of digestion: and so consequently giues comfort to the whole body. For whilest a horse sleepeth, the *Powers animal* do take their rest, which otherwise would be ouer-wearied, and neither able to discharge their duties, nor to continue their actions and operations, which is the giuing of feeling and mouing only: & whilst a horse doth sleep the powers natural haue more liberty to do their work, in concocting the meate, and comforting the bodie; in so much that I account sleepe to be the onely quieting of the senses, ordained by nature to ingender strength. Sleepe is begotten by sweet, fatty and grosse vapours, (& not by their contraries) which are raised from the heart to the braine; with the coldness of which braine those vapours being congealed and thickned together do stop the pipes of the sensitiue spirits, so as they can not resort to the instruments of the senses, to giue the
body

body feeling & mouing, wherby the body at that time is depriued of those motions. And according as those vapours do more or lesse fill the pipes, so is the horses sleepe more or lesse sound and vndisturbed; but when this sleepe shall at any time grow into excesse, and you shall perceiue a horse to sleepe beyond both nature and custome, then you shall know that such sleep cometh from an euill habite of the body, and is a signe either of *Lethargie*, and a numbnesse of the spirits, or else that he hath some inward grieve and paine in his limbes when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him couet a continuall rest and sleeping. Now for the watch of a horse, because it is the meere contrary to sleepe, there needes little to be sayd more then this: that as the excesse of the one sheweth the want of the other, so the vnnaturall working of either shewes the euill state of a horses body, and giues the Farriers warning to expect ensuing sicknesse.

Now for emptinesse and fulnesse (which is the fift not naturall compositor) foras much as it is onely an adding to, and a taking away, some Farriers haue held opinion, that all Physicke belonging to a horses body, consisteth in them two onely; and truly I am of this minde, that whosoever can take away corruption, and adde perfection, shall without doubt, euer keepe an able and substantiall body. But to our purpose, of this fulnesse there are two sorts, the one fulnesse by excesse of humors, the other fulnesse by excesse of meate; either of which perturbing the spirits are the grounds of sicknes. Againe, excesse of humours are of two kindes, the one an equall encrease of all maner of humours gathered together, and the other a particular excesse either of too much *Melan-*
choly,

choly, Fleame, or other waterish humours whatsoeuer, the first being termed an aboundance of humours, the latter an excesse of euill iuice or nutriment: lastly, their fulnesse in quantity, and fulnesse in quality. Fulnesse in quantity is when a horse is full of bloud or any other simple humeur. Fulnesse in quality is when any of those humors is too hot or too cold, too grosse or too thin. Now for emptinesse, as all diseases of fulnesse must be cured by it onely, so all diseases of emptinesse must be healed by fulnesse, as by taking of bloud, by purge, friction, scarification, boxing, sweating, bathing, and a world of such like, as shal be very largely set forth hereafter.

Lastly, touching the affections of a horses minde, you shall vnderstand that so farre forth as the sensitiue soule doth stretch, so farre they haue sence and feeling of affections, as namely to loue, to hate, to be angry, to reioyce, to be sorry, and to feare: for all which, there needs no great apologie, sith we haue it in dayly experience: as who seeth not the loue of some horses to their keepers, their hate to strangers, their anger in their fights, their ioyes in their prides & wooings, their sorrowes in their sicknesses, and their feares vnto their riders? Now these affections sith many times they are the grounds of strange motions in the body; therefore they ought carefully to be looked vnto by the Farrier, and that the horse be not ouer-oppressed with any of them; especially feare and hatred, the first whereof compelleth the bloud and spirits to flye to the inward parts, and to leaue the outward without sence or feeling, and the latter makes him to be vnquiet, fierce and raging; both together breedes distemperature in a horse, and those distemperatures
ingender

ingender mortal sicknesses. And thus much for these fixe things, being held not naturall in a horses composition.

CHAP. IO.

Of Horses complexions.

HAuing spoken of those thirteene natural and not naturall things, wherof a horses body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speake of the complexions of horses, which is one of the most necessary faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the iudging of a horses infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his medicines for euery disease: therefore you shal first vnderstand that by the color of the horse you shal euer iudge his complexion: for looke which of the elements is most predominant in him, from that element we draw his complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the fire then of any of the other elements, then we hold him to be a cholericke horse, and his colour is either a bright sorrell, a cole blacke without any white, or an yron gray vnchangeable, that is, such a gray as neither will euer turne to a dapple gray, to a white or to a flea-bitten; and these horses are of nature light, hot, fiery, and seldome of any great strength: these horses are much subiect to pestilent feuers, yellowes, and inflammations of the liuer. Therefore euery Farrier shall be carefull in the composing of any medicine for such a horse, to purge choler; yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary strength in the potion or drench: because the horse being in his best strength not reputed strong, should you apply any violent
E thing

thing to him, that little strength being abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole body.

If the horse participate more of the aire then of the other elements, then is he of a sanguine complexion, and his colour is either bright bay, or darke bay, which hath neither skouling countenance, mealy nose, nor white flanke, or a white flea-bitten, white lyard like siluer, or a blacke with white starre, white rache or white foote; these horses are of nature pleasant, nimble, free, and of a good strength. The diseases to them most incident, is consumption of the liuer, leprosie, glanders, or any disease that is infectious. They are of a good strong constitution, and may endure strength in their medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the bloud.

If the horse participate more of the water then of the other elements, then is he of a flegmaticke complexion, and his colour is either a milke white, a yellow dun, a kiteglewd or a pyedball, in whom there is an equall mixture of colours, that is, as much white as of the other color: otherwise if the bay, the blacke, or the dunne exceed the white, he is sayd to be of that complexion of which the color is greatest. These horses are of nature slow, dull, and apt to leese flesh; the diseases which are most incident vnto them, is colds, head-atch, rheumes, staggers and such like. They are able to endure the reasonable strength of any medicine; because the abundance of steame which is in them, sufficeth both nature and the potion to worke vpon: all cold simples are to them exceeding hurtfull, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree; the first because it bindeth too soone; the lat-

ter because it disperleth too suddenly, therefore simples of a moderate meane are the best.

If the horse participate more of the earth then of the other elements, then is he of a melancholy complexion, and his colour is mouse dunne, russet, chestnut, asky gray, darke bay, with mayly nose, redde or white flanke, ora reddish bay, hauing long white haire, like goates haire growing on his legges. These horses are of nature heauy, and faint hearted: the diseases to them most incident, is inflammations in the *Spleene*, *Frenzie*, *Droisie* and such like. They are commonly of better strength then they will suffer to appeare by their actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable medicine: all cicatrizing and dry simples are hurtfull vnto them; the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Hauing thus shewed you these foure complexions, *Cholerike*, *Sanguine*, *Flegmatike* and *Melancholy*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall vnderstand now that amongst Farriers there is another complexion, or fist constitution, which is called the composition or mixture of complexions, that is, when fouera horse doth participate of all the foure elements equally and in due proportion, none being greater or lesse then another; and this complexion of all other is the best and most perfect; and the horse which is of this complexion, is euer of one of these colours, that is to say, either a faire browne bay, dapled or not dapled, a duple gray, a blacke, full of siluer haire, or a faire roane redde or blacke. And these horses are of nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest, and most healthfull; though they may haue any disease, yet are they naturally inclined

to no disease; but what infirmity soeuer falleth vnto them is meereley accidentall, and not through any ouerflow of naturall distemperature. All medicines must be compounded for them according to the nature of the sicknesse, and the time of their languishment: for if their sicknesse be young and new bred, then are they able to receiue any well composed receipts; but if it be old, & the inward powers and faculties feebled, then you must bee carefull to helpe nature, by adding to euery medicine of what nature soeuer, some simple of comfort, that as euill humours be clenfed, so strength may still be repayred & maintained. And thus much for complexions.

CHAP. II.

*Of inward sicknesse, the causes and severall
kinds thereof.*

Sith I haue already passed ouer al those things which haue a naturall and perfect working in a hortes body, and do maintaine, vphold and preferue the same in good state and health, except accidentally they be encountred and crossed by some excesse, or in dyet, or in exercife: it shall now be meete that we begin to speake of the things which be contrary and against nature, which are all those things whereby at any time, the healthfull estate of the hortes body is any way impeached; and they be three in number, that is, the causes, the sicknesse, and the accidents which follow euery sicknesse.

Now the causes of sicknesse are all vnnaturall affects, and euill dispositions, which going before, do as it were by violence, bring sicknesse after them:
and

and of these causes there be two sorts, some internall, some externall; the internall be those which breede within the body of the horse, as euill humours, euill obstructions and euill iuice. Externall are they which communicate with the outward parts of the body, as heate, cold, wounds and such like, of which I shall speake more in the second booke: and for so much as I intend at the beginning of euery particular disease, to shew the cause of that disease, I will at this time speake no more of that subiect.

Now for sicknesse it selfe which is any thing that is contrary to nature, it is diuided into three generall kindes: the first an euill temperature, the second an euill state or composition, and the third a loosening or diuiding of an vnity. Now of these two latter, I intend not to speake in this place, because they appertaine to surgery, which I referue for the second booke; but for the first kinde which is an euill temperature, it is taken two fold, that is, either simple or compound; simple, when one quality onely doth abound or exceede, as to be too moist or too dry: compound when mo qualities then one do grow into excessse, as for a horse to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold and too moist. Againe, sicknesse are sayd some to be long, as consumptions, glanders and such like, which linger and weare a horse away by small degrees. Some short, as the staggers, yellowes, anticor, and such like, which as soone as they be perceiued, so soone they be mortall.

Now of inward sicknesses, some do occupy all the whole body, some but particular parts; those which occupy the whole body are feuers, the pestilence, conuulsions and such like: those which occupy parts

or members, are colds which annoy the head, sur-
saits which perplexe the stomacke; and so likewise all
outward infirmities proper to euery particular mem-
ber, as splents vpon the legs, spauens on the houghes,
pearles in the eyes, and such like, as shall be amply
shewed hereafter. And thus much for sicknesse and
the seuerall kindes thereof.

CHAP. 12.

*Of the signes of sicknesse, and of what na-
ture it consisteth.*

THe signes and faces by which sicknesse is dis-
cerned, are many, and almost numberlesse; yet in
the best sort that I may, I will shew you such and so
many as shall amply serue for any mans vnderstan-
ding. Know then first that there be according to the
rules in physicke, foure especiall wayes to iudge of
inward and outward infirmities. First, by accidents,
as by the shape, number, quantity, & place of the mem-
ber grieued: for if it carry not his true proportion, or
be more or lesse in number or quantity, or out of his
proper place, then questionlesse it is diseased. Second-
ly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is either too
hot, too cold, too moist or too dry. Thirdly, when a-
ny member in the body is hindered from doing his
office; as when the eye cannot see, or the foote can-
not tread: and fourthly, by excrements, as by his
dung or his vrine. But for as much as in the specu-
lation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may
be either amazed, distract or deceived; and that my
desire is to giue an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of
people, I will briefly and plainly shew you the most
vnde-

vn-deceiueable signes of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus. If a horse be slower in labour, or duller in the spur, then he hath bene accustomed, if he be shorter breathed, if his eares hang downe more then they were wont; if his haire be more staring, if his flanks be more then vsually hollow, if he burne betwixt his eares or about his pasternes, if in trauell his stomacke faile him; or his mouth that in labor was vsually wont to be foaming, become dry; all these are most apparent signes of inward sickness.

When a horse holdeth downe his head which was wont to be of a chearefull countenance, it is a signe either of a feuer, head-ache, or else foundring in the body.

If a horse be dimme of sight that was cleare sighted, it is a signe either of head-ache, the staggers, or sore eyes.

When a horse turneth his head backward to the place griued, if it be to the right side, it is a signe of obstructions in the liuer; but if he turne it downe to his belly, then it is a signe either of cholericke, bots or wormes.

When a horse hath water running from his mouth, it is a signe of the staggers or the wet cough.

If a horses breath stincke, or foule matter issue from his nostrils, it is a signe of an vlcere in the nose or head; but if the matter be white, then it is a signe of glaunders; if the matter be blacke, then it is a signe of the mourning of the chine; but if the matter be yellow, then it betokens the consumption of the liuer; but if he cast little lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the consumption or rottenesse of the lungs.

If a horses body and breath be hot, it is a signe of

a feuer and heate of the stomacke, if therewithall he forsake his meate, it is a signe of inflammation in his liuer, and either of dry or moist yellowes.

If the temples of a horses heade be very hollow, it is a signe either of the strangle or old age.

Shortnesse of breath, and a breathing flanke, is a signe either of a feuer or the strangle; but if the passage of the throate be stopped, it is a signe the filme of the lungs is broken, & the spleene troubled, or else broken winded.

If any thing lye on both sides the forehead, which may be felt beate, it is a signe of the staggers.

If there be any swelling betweene the eares, it is a signe of the polle euil; swelling vnder the eare, a signe of the viues; and swelling in the mouth, a signe either of canker, flaps or lampasse.

Swelling vnder the throat is a signe of the glaunders; and swelling about the tongue rootes, a signe of the strangle; but if there be about the tongue rootes, nothing but little small knots like waxe kynrels, then it is a signe but of cold onely.

Swelling on the left side is a signe of a sicke spleene. Swelling in the belly and legges, a signe of the drop-sie; and swelling in the flanke, of the cholericke onely.

To cough, or to offer to cough, is a signe either of the glaunders, of the mourning of the chine, of a feather in the weasand, of the wet or dry cough, of the filme broken, of the dry malady, of a consumption, or of foundring in the body.

Staggering is a signe either of a feuer, of the staggers, or of swaying in the necke; but if he stagger, or rolle behinde onely, then it is a signe either of foundring in the body, or of paine in the kidneyes.

Trembling

Trembling is a signe of a feuer, or of foundring in the body: and here is to be noted, that a horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold water, hath during that time of trembling, a very certaine fit of an ague; and if any Farrier or other, will but obserue it, he shall finde that the horse after he hath done trembling, will burne and glow in as great extremity at least an howre and an halfe after; and some horses after their burning, will sweate also.

The hollownesse of a horses backe is a signe of the dry malady or the drop sic.

Haire staring, is a signe either of a cold stomacke or of foundring in the body.

If a horse stale with much paine, it is a signe either of foundring in the body, the wind cholicke, or the stone; and if the vrine which comes from him be yellow, it is a signe of the glaunder; but if it be blackish and thicke, it is a signe of paine in the kidneyes.

Leanness and gauntnesse is a signe of hide-bound, or of the consumption, of the dry malady, of foundring in the body, inflammation of the liuer, the yellowes, cholicke or wormes.

Laxatiuenesse or loosnesse of the body, is a signe of a hot liuer.

Costiuenesse in the body is a signe of dry yellowes, or of diseases in the galle.

If a horses dung stinke, it is a signe of a hot liuer; if it haue no smell, then of a cold liuer; but if it be vndigested, then either of a consumption, or of a drye malady.

If a horse go stiffe, it is a signe either of wrinching, hiping, stifing or foundring either in body or legs; if he go crouching behinde and stiffe before, then the

griefe is in his forelegges; but if he go onely weake behinde, then is the griefe in his hinder legges onely.

If a horse desire extraordinarily to lye downe on his right side, it is a signe of heate in the liuer. If on the left side, then of a diseased spleene; if he be oft vp and downe, finding no rest, then it is a signe of bottes, wormes, chollicke, or griping in the belly; if when he is downe he spreade himselfe abroad, it shewes the dropsie; if he groane when he is downe, it shewes either a sicke spleene, moist yellowes, chollicke, bots, or filme broken; if he be not able to rise when he is downe, then either mortall weaknesse, foundring in the body or legges.

To be troubled with much wind is a signe either of griefe in the spleene, or losse of much blood.

If a horse forsake his meate, it is a signe either of a feuer, head-ache, strangle, staggers, consumption, or dry malady, anticor, foundring in the body, a hot and consumed liuer, moyst yellowes, cholicke, or the wormes; but if when he forsaketh his prouender he doth, as it were, chauell or chaw a little hay, and in his chawing doth make a certaine sharp noyse in his mouth, and if his tongue could not well part from the roose without a kinde of chanking, it is then a certaine signe that the horse is troubled with the falling of the palate of the mouth, a disease which only cometh by ouermuch trauell, or too sore a burthen.

If a horse desire to eate much and drinke little, it is a signe of a cold liuer; but if he desire to drinke much and eate little, it is then a signe either of a feuer, rotten lungs, heate in the stomacke, heate in the liuer, or the dry yellowes.

If a horse both eate and drinke with an extraordinary

nary greedinesse, it is a signe of rotten lungs, or a diseased spleene.

Lazie and heauy going contrary to true nature, is a signe either of a feuer, sicke spleene, yellowes, or else obstructions of the liuer.

If a horse strike with his foote at his belly, it is a signe of the chollike; but if when he striketh, he fiske with his taile also, then is it either bots or rough wormes.

If a horse be scabby and vlcereous all ouer his body, or but about his necke, it is a signe of the mangie; if it be an vlcer full of knots, creeping alongst a veine, it is the farcy; if spreading abroad onely in one place, it is a canker; if the vlcer be hollow and crooked, it is a fistula, but if it be a spongie wart, full of bloud, it is then an *Anburie*.

If a horses tongue hang out, and be swolne, it is a signe of the strangle.

To conclude, if a horse in health beate short, thicke, & fast in the flanke, it is a signe of sicknesse in the lungs & lights, which we call brokenwinded; with a world of other such like signes and tokens, as shall be more amply declared in euery particular chapter.

CHAP. 13.

*Generall obseruations in the Physicking
of Horses.*

After you can by these signes and characters iudge and approue either the health or sicknesse of a horse, it is then necessary that you learne some generall rules and obseruations which belong to the physicking of a horse; lest that either by your rashnesse,

vnskillfulnesse or vncleanlinesse in what you go about to do, you commit errors more grosse then the medicine you administer hath power to do good. Know then first, that whensoever you go about to giue your horse any inward potion or drench, you must first take very carefull heede that your drinke be no more then milke warme : for there is nothing more mortall to a horse then the scalding of his stomacke. Next you must be very carefull that you giue the drench easily and gently, lest in making too much haste, the drinke passe into his weasand or windepipe, and so force him to an extreme coughing, and almost suffocate him; which if it do, you must then let his head loose, and walke him vp and downe, till the passion be past. Lastly you shall obserue in giuing a drench, to draw out the horses tongue before you put in the horne, and then presently let it loose againe : for that will compell him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be vsed when you giue your horse pills, as butter and garlike, bulter and Saunders, or butter and sauen. Also euery drench will worke the better, the longer you keepe the sicke horse fasting, both before and after his medicine; wherein is likewise to be obserued, that moderate exercise (as gently walking, or trotting vp and downe according to the horses strength after his drench is receiued) is most wholesome, and maketh the medicine worke a great deale the better.

You shall likewise obserue if your horses sicknesse be a feuer, to mixe alwayes your simples either with warme water, with hony, or with oyle; but if the disease be coughes, rheumes or any thing that proceedeth of cold causes, then you shall mixe your simples
with

with good ale or wine; and if your horse be brought low & weake with sicknesse, then you shall mixe your simples with milke or egges.

You shall also obserue that in blood letting, you must take but halfe so much from a yong colt as from an old horse; and but the fourth part from a yearling foale: also in letting blood, you must carefully regard the age and strength of your horse, taking more or lesse according to his ability of body. Lastly, letting of blood is either to diuert sicknesse and preserue health, or to refresh and coole the spirits, or to diminish blood, or else to purge grosse and badde humours.

Obserue before you let your horse blood, first moderately to chafe or exercise him; then let him take rest a day before his letting blood, and three dayes after; not forgetting that *Aprill* and *October* are the two principall seasons of the yeare for that purpose, except vrgent occision be ministred.

Obserue whensoever you rake your horse with your hand (which is to draw his ordure out of his fundament when hee cannot dung) that then first you annoynt all your hand with sallet oyle; the like you must euer do when you put vp any suppositary; but when you administer any glister, you shall then but annoynt the glister pipe onely. Many other obseruations there are which be more particular, and those you shall finde annexed to the seuerall cure of euery disease. Thus much then of these generall obseruations.

After you haue made your memory acquainted with the signes and obseruations before specified, and so in the end finde a horse which by the demonstration of some of these signes appeareth most certainly to be sicke and diseased; my aduice is then (if conueniently you may, and that the violence of the sicknesse do not vrge the contrary) that before you administer any thing vnto him, in any case you see his vrine, from which vrine you shall reape these knowledges.

First, if the vrine of a horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour, like vnto amber, & therewithall somewhat strong smelling, and not very cleare, then you shall be assured that the horse is in good state of body, strong and healthful; but if it be extraordinary white, and as it were, creamy, then it is a signe the horse hath weake reines and is subiect to the stone, and the stopping in the kidneys.

If the vrine of a horse be somewhat high coloured, bright and cleare like lambe and not like amber, or like a cup of strong march beere; then it sheweth the horse hath inflammation in his blood, and that he hath either a feuer, or else some great surfaite; but if it be red like blood, then is his inflammation more geat, and his surfaite is onely an ouer heate taken by ouer-riding; insomuch that if present remedy be not applyed, either by scouring or other healthfull physicke, the horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortal sicknesse.

If the vrine of a horse be of a pale greenish colour,
thicke

thicke and slimy, it is a signe of a weake backe, and consumption of the seede.

Lastly, if the horses vrine be high colored, yet therewithall cloudy and full of blacknesse, then it is a signe that the horses sicknesse is mortall, and hardly to be preferued by any physicke; but if the blacknesse and cloudinesse of the vrine do not remaine, as it were, bound vp together in one body, but is broken & dispersed, shewing many cloudes in one water, then it is a signe that the violence of the sicknesse departeth away, and there is great hope, by good gouernement, that the horse will recouer his health, as at the beginning.

Now for the excrements or dung of a horse, which is no lesse worthy of note then the vrine. You shall first vnderstand, that if his dung be euer of alliance with his foode, I meane either in part or whole coloured like vnto that he eateth; as thus for example: If your horse go at grasse, his dung wil euer be greene, and the brighter such greennesse is, and being in a meane betweene hardnesse and softnesse, the sounder and in more perfect estate the horse standeth; but if the greennesse be bright, yet the ordure so soluble and loose, that it cometh from the horse like water, then you shall vnderstand that either the horse hath eaten vp some feather, or else that he hath an inward coldnesse both in his stomacke and bowels.

If a horses dung be of a reasonable thicknesse, neither too costiuue nor too soluble, yet the greennesse inclined to some blacknesse, it is a signe that the horse hath a hot stomacke, and is easile subiect either to the yellowes or staggers.

If the horses dunge be in round hard pellets, and of

a blackish Greene colour, like the dung of a sheepe, or a Deere, then it is without faile that the horse hath had some great surfeit, either by ouer-riding, or by ill food, or else is certainly posselt either of the yellows, or feuer, or foundred in the body.

Now if your horse be fed onely vpon straw, then his colour will be of a high coloured yellow, rather costine then soluble, and the graine thereof long, and not well couched together: and all these be good signes of great healthfulnesse; but if the colour be inclined to rednesse; or if it be exceeding dry without moisture, or if it be thinne like the dung of an Oxe or a cow, they be all apparant signes of inward sicknesse; but if the rednesse turne to blacknesse, and that his ordure doth leese the strength of its smelling, then it is a great signe of death and mortality.

If your horse be fed with hay and prouender, then your perfect and sound dung will be of a browne yellow colour, the graine somewhat long, yet moist and well fixt together; but if the brownnesse turne to rednesse, it is a signe of distemperature; and if it turne to blacknesse, then of death. Now for the smell of this dung, you must vnderstand that the more prouender you giue, the greater will be the smell, and the lesse prouender, the lesse smell.

Lastly, if you feede your horse onely vpon prouender, as bread, oates, and such like, then the dung which shewes a perfect and a sound body, will be of a pale yellow colour, like course hony, firme like a thicke salut, hauing within it when you tread vpon it, or breake it, little white graines, like those which are in soper; or if the dung be harder, like the ordinary ordure

ordure of a man, it is not amisse: for both be signes of health and strength; but if the dung looke redde, then it is a signe that the horse hath taken some inward heate, and his stomacke and bowels do rest still inflamed.

If his dung be browne and slimy, or if it shine and looke greasie, it is a signe that he hath had some of his inward grease molten, and that it resteth and putrifieth in his body; but if with his dung you see him void great clods and lumps of grease, then you may be assured that his grease was molten, but nature hath ouercome infirmity, and the worst danger is past already; but if his dung be matter yndigested, so that you may either perceiue therein whole corns or whole bits of bread, it is a signe the horse hath either taken a late surfaite, or is entering into a mortall consumption. Lastly, if his dung be blacke, or haue lost the smell, it is an apparant signe of death. And thus much for vrine and excrements, and the seuerall knowledges are attained by them.

CHAP. 15.

*Of Feuers in generall, and the diuers
kindes thereof.*

THat horses haue feuers, and those feuers of diuers and sundry natures, there is nothing more certaine, as by strict obseruation may daily be perceiued, especially when either we vse much trauell, or disorderly diet: for questionlesse from these two and none other heads do spring most feuers whatsoeuer. But first, that I may giue you an account what a horses feuer is, you shall know that it is an vnnaturall and
G im.

immoderate heate, which proceeding first from the heart, disperfeth it selfe not onely through all the arteries, but euen the veines of a horses body, & thereby hindereth all the actions and wholesome mouings of the same. Now of feuers, some Farriers make three sorts: the first those which breede in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of nature: the second those which breede in the humours, being likewise distempered by heate: and the third those which breed in the firme parts of the body, and are continually hot. Now I for your better memory, will diuide them onely into two parts, that is to say: Ordinary and extraordinary. The ordinary feuers are all those which are bred either in the spirits or in the humours, as namely: *Quotidians, Tertians, Quartans, Feuers continuall, Feuers Hectique, Feuers in Autumne, Sommer, or Winter.* And the feuers extraordinary are all those which are bred in the firme parts of the body, and are euer hot, as *Pestilent Feuers,* and the *Plague*, which euer are accompanied with vlcers; and the feuer accidentall, which proceedeth from the anguish and paine of some mortall wound.

Now for the causes from whence these feuers do proceede: you shall vnderstand that all these which I call ordinary feuers, do generally spring either from surfaite by extreme labour, or from surfaite by naughty meate, as raw pease, rawfitches, raw oates, mouldy and vnwholesome bread, and such like: sometimes they do proceede from the extreme violence and heate of the Sunnes beames, when traouelling with disorderly haste in the extremest heate of the day, those two heates mixing together, labor & the Sunne, there cannot chuse but be bredde in the horse some mortall

mortall inflammation: and for mine owne part I haue seene horses fall downe dead in the high way: for whose deaths I could find no reason more then their labour and the heate of the Sunne. Feuers sometimes spring from a contrary cause, as from extreme cold in this maner: when a horse in the Winter time hath bene trauelled sore all the day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his bloud and inward powers are settled and cooled, you then presently or the same night, giue him cold water as much as he will drinke, you shall see him out of hand fall into an extreme quaking, and from that quaking, into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Feuer.

Now for extraordinary feuers, they euer proceede either from corruption of bloud, or from infection of the aires; and albeit these feuers are not vsually knowne vnto our Farriers, yet they are as common as the former; onely the violence of them is so great, and the poison so strong, that they euer carry with them some other mortall sicknes, as namely, *Staggers*, *Yellowes*, *Anticor*, and such like, which neuer are, but a pestilent feuer euer goeth before them. And they, like the markes of the plague, are seldome seene till the cure be desperate; and then the vnskilfull Farrier, neither noting, nor knowing if he did note, the effects of the feuer, doth euer mis-baptise the name of the horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, failes many times to do the good office & cure which he intendeth.

Now the signes to know a feuer be these: first he will euer hold downe his head, he will quake and tremble; but when his trembling is past, then will

his body burne, and his breath be hot, he wil breathe fast, and his flanke will beate; he will reele, he will forsake his meate, his eyes will be swolne and closed vp, yet therewithall much watring; his flesh will, as it were, fall from his bones, and his stones will hang downe low, he will oft lye downe, and oft rise vp againe; all his desire will be to drinke, yet at no time drinke much; neither will he at any time sleep. Now for the generall cure of these generall feuers, you shall vnderstand, that some Farriers vse to let the horse bloud in the face, temples, and palate of the mouth; and the first day to giue him no meate, but warme drinke onely, by a little at a time, and after, the finest grasse or finest hay wet in water, keeping him warme, and often walking him vp and downe in a temperate aire, and giuing him good store of litter; then when he begins to mend, to feede him with barley sodden, huskt and beaten as you do wheate before you make firmity. And this cure is not amisse, for it agreeth with the ancient experience of the *Italians*; but in our English horses (through the clyme as I suppose) it often faileth.

The best cure therefore that I haue found is, as soone as you perceiue him to begin to shake, to giue him the yolkes of three or foure egges, beaten with seuen or eight spoonefull of aqua-vitæ to drinke; and then chafe him vp and downe till his shaking be past, and then set him vp close and warme, and with many clothes make him sweate an howre: let his foode be oates very well dried and sifted, and one day some walht in ale. If his shaking fit be past before you perceiue his sicknesse, you shall onely giue him a pint of *Muskadine*, and an ounce of sugar-candy beaten to powder,

powder, and brewd together, to drinke, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little as aforesaid, and giving him no water but such as is warme; and this order you shall obserue at the beginning of euery fit if you can note them, or else euery morning if his sicknesse haue no ccausing.

CHAP. 16.

*Of the Quotidian or one dayes feuer,
and the cure.*

THe *Quotidian* or one dayes feuer is that which taketh a horse, and holdeth him with one fit once euery day; it will at first appeare somewhat violent, but seldome or neuer endureth long, if the Farrier haue any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreme riding, either after water or a full stomacke; and then suddenly after his heate, being thrust into a stable, & neither stopt nor rubbed, a suddaine coldnes to that suddaine heate begets a shaking, and so consequently the effects of a feuer.

The signes to know it, are watrish and bloud-shotten eyes, short and hot breathing, panting, loathing of his meate, and stiffnesse in his limbes; but aboue these, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you shall obserue that these signes together with the sicknesse, will not last aboue sixe or eight howres in one day, and then he will be cheerefull and in health againe, till very neare the same howre of the next day, at what time his fit will begin againe. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the howres, the more hope there is of his health, as if it take him at seuen of the clocke of the one day, and at three of the

clocke of the other, and so forth. The cure is: You shall only during his fit, giue him nothing but a sweet mash made of malt and water being luke warme, and walke him gently vp and downe in a temperate aire; then as soone as his fit is past, you shall set him vp, and rub his body & legs exceedingly: then foure howres after, you shall giue him this drinke. Take of strong ale a quart, and boyle therin halfe a handfull of worm-wood, of long pepper and graines two ounces, of the best treacle two ounces, and of the powder of dryed rue one ounce: now when a third part of the ale is consumed, take it from the fire and straine it; then put therein three ounces of sugar-candy, beaten to powder; then when it is luke warme giue it him with a horne to drinke. Do this twice at the least, or thrice if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will recouer.

CHAP. 17.
Of the Tertian Feuer.

THe *Tertian* feuer is that which cometh euery other day, holding the horse with one sicke day, and one sound: it is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer lasting; it happeneth ofttest in the spring time of the yeare, when bloud begins to encrease, and most commonly to colts and yong horses: it proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth and sometimes of ranknesse and ill bloud. The signes to know it, are all the signes formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that the horse will be apparantly sicke, as it were, on the Munday, then apparantly well on the Tuesday, and sicke on the Wednesday

day following. This feuer is neuer seene, but it beginneth with shaking. The cure therefore is, as soone as you perceiue the horse to begin to shake, you shall take a certaine hearbe, or rather weede, called stone-croppe, and bruising it in a stone mortar, take some foure spoonefull of the iuice thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong ale, and giue it the horse to drinke; then walke him gently vp and downe in some temperate aire for an howre, then set him vp, & with the helpe of clothes put him into a sweate for an other howre, then coole him; and in any wise till his fits leaue him, let him drinke no cold water, and let his prouender be the oldest and dryest oates you can get, onely vpon his good dayes before his fits come, keepe him very long fasting and empty.

CHAP. 18.

Of the Quartane Feuer.

THe *Quartane* feuer is that which some Farriers call a third daies sicknesse, as thus. If his fit begin on the Munday, he will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday, and sicke againe one the Thursday. It proceedeth from the same causes that the *Tertian* feuer doth, yet in his working is not so apparantly violent, but of much longer continuance: for if great care & helpe be not, these feuers will last some a quarter of a yeare, some halfe a yeare, and some a whole yeare. There needes no other signe to know it, then the coming and going of the fits as hath bene declared already. And for the cure, it is the selfe same which is described in the former chapter for the *Tertian* feuer: onely if his fits do not leaue him at the first taking

taking of the medicine, you shall then giue it him againe the second time, but not aboue thrice at the most in any wise.

CHAP. 19.

Of the Feuer Continuall.

THe feuer continuall is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: for there is in it the effects of all the former feuers, euer one taking place as the other endeth; as a *Quotidian* beginning, is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartane*, and those two supply so many howers till the *Quotidian* doth begin againe. This kind of continuall feuer, most often springeth from some inflammation or violent heate ingendred in the principall members about the heart: and the signes thereof are want of rest, and falling away of the flesh, besides certaine inflammations or swellings, which will appeare about his withers and flanks. The cure is, first to purge his head by neefing, the manner whereof you shall finde in a particular chapter hereafter; which done, you shall giue him this drinke. Take of Iermander two ounces, of gumme dragant, and dried roses, of each halfe an ounce, beate them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of ale, adding thereunto of oyle Oliue two ounces, and as much hony; and when it is luke warme, giue it the horse to drinke: then walke him a little space, and after set him vp close and warme, keepe him from cold water, and let his prouender be dry oates.

THe *Hellique* feuer in horses, is a dangerous and mortall feuer, being in a horse the first originall breeder of a consumption; it is a certaine hot and dry humour, which runneth betweene the skinne and the flesh, proceeding from a sicke stomacke, which hauing bene scalded with hot drinks (as those ill dyeted running horses be, which feede vpon much spice, or those which take hot drenches vpon euery foolish and sleight occasion) hath almost cleane lost the power of digestion: it sometimes happens to those horses which men too carefully teaching to drinke beere and wine, do so continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become subiect to this sicknesse. The signes to know it is: the horse will neuer eat with any appetite, and when you draw out his tongue you shall finde it rawe and almost scalded; his flesh will be loose and flabby, and his body will be subiect to a continual trembling. The cure is, first wash his tongue either with the sirrop of mulberries, or with allome, running water, sage, and woodbinde leaues boiled together; then giue him fasting in a morning, this drink. Take of aloes one ounce, of agarike halfe an ounce, of licoras and anise seeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, & let him drinke it with a quart of white wine, luke warme, & made sweet with sugarcandy or hony; let him drinke no drinke but warme mashes of malt & water, and let his meate be sweete hay, or greene corne blades; and euer after his medicine let him be chafed a little, kept fasting two or three howres, and stand warme and well clothed.

CHAP. 21.

Of the Feuer taken in Autumne, or the fall of the leafe.

ALL these feuers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to horses in the spring time of the year, by reason that the new blood is euer aptest to be inflamed; yet notwithstanding we finde by experience, that feuers will sometimes come at the fall of the leafe, which we call *Autumne*, and they are of longer continuance then the other. The signes are none other but such as I haue already declared; for they are the same feuers, onely altering in the time of the year. If therefore your horse do chance to catch a feuer at the fall of the leafe, you shall let him blood on his necke veine, and in the palate of his mouth, and you shall giue him to drinke the same drinke which is formerly set downe for the feuer continuall, and there is no doubt of his recovery.

CHAP. 22.

Of the Feuer taken in the Summer season.

A Feuer taken in the Summer season is the worst of al ordinary feuers whatsoeuer, especially all such as are taken in the Dog daies; because according to the opinion of Farriers, al accidents are then most furious: the especial signes of this feuer are, that his arteries will beate most palpably, & wherefoeuer he stalet, there you shall perceiue he sheddeth his seed also. The cure according to the ancients is, to let him blood on the great veine which he hath on his hinder haunch, almost foure inches beneath his fundament; but for
mine

mine own part, because that vein is not so easily found of euery ignorant Smith, & that many times by mistaking, they may cut the artery in stead of the veine, I hold it fully as good to let him bloud vpon the necke veines; which done, giue him to drinke two howres and a halfe after, this drinke. Take the iuice of a handfull of purslaine, and mixe it with gumdragant, anise seedes, and damaske rose leaues beaten to powder; then put them into a quart of strong ale made sweete either with sugarcandy or hony, and faile not to giue him this drinke three mornings together, keeping the horse warme during his sicknesse.

CHAP. 23.

Of the Feuer taken in the winter season.

A Feuer taken in the winter, is not so dangerous touching the life of a horse, as the feuer before mentioned; yet is it a feuer which will continue long, and aske great circumspection in the cure: the causes thereof are the same which are formerly described; and the signes are no other then hath bene already declared. Touching the cure it is thus: you shall first purge his head by making him neese, that done you shall let him bloud both in the necke, and the palate of the mouth, and then two howres and a halfe after, giue him this drinke. Take of treus three ounces, of round pepper halfe an ounce, of bay berries and the seede of smallage, of each halfe an ounce; boyle these in white wine, and giue it him to drinke luke warme. Other Farriers vse to take a pint of new milke, and to put therein two ounces of sallet oyle, of saffron one scruple, & of mirre two scruples, of the seede of smal-

lage a spoonefull, and to make him drinke it luke warme; but the horse which taketh this drinke, must be in good strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The ancient *Italians* did vse for this feuer, to giue this drinke: Take of *Aristolochia* halfe an ounce, of Gentian, of Hyfop, of wormwood, of Southerwoort, of each halfe an ounce, of dry fat figges three ounces, of the seede of smallage an ounce and an halfe, of rue halfe an handfull; boyle them all with running water in a cleane vessel, vntil almost halfe be consumed; then when it beginnes to thicken, take it from the fire, straine it, and giue it the horse luke warme. Now there are not any of these dringes but are sufficient for the cure; but the first is best. Now for his dyet, be sure to keepe him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drinke be onely warme malhes of malt and water. Now if you perceiue that his fits continue, and bring the horse to any weaknesse, you shall then to comfort and quicken the natural heate of the horse, rubbe and chafe all his body ouer, either in the Sunne, or by some sotte fire with some wholsome friction, of which frictions you shall finde choyce in a particular chapter hereafter following, together with their seuerall natures and vses.

CHAP. 24.

*Of the Feuer which cometh by surfaite
of meate onely.*

THE Feuer which cometh by surfaite of meate onely, without either disorder in trauell or corruption of blood, is knowne by these signes: The horse will

will heave and beate vpon his backe, his breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his winde he will draw on-ly at his nose with great violence. The cure therefore is, you shall let him blood in his necke, vnder his eyes, and in the palate of his mouth, you shall also purge his head by making him needes; then keepe him with very thin dyet, that is, let him fast for more then halfe of the day, and let him not drinke aboue once foure and twenty houres, and that drinke to be warme water: you shall also once or twice chafe his body with wholesome friction; and if during his cure he chance to grow costive, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward giue him either a suppositary, or a glister, of both which, and of their seuerall natures, you shall reade sufficiently in a chapter following.

CHAP. 25.

*Of Feuers extraordinary, and first of
Pestilent Feuers.*

VWE find by many ancient *Italian* Writers, that both the Romans, and others their country men, haue by experience found many horses subiect to this pestilent feuer, which is a most contagious and pestiferous disease, almost incurable; & for mine own part, I haue seene it in many colts and young horses. Surely it proceedeth, as I iudge, either from great corruption of blood, or from infection of the aire. The signes thereof is, the horse will hold downe his head, forsake his meate, shed much water at his eyes, and many times haue swellings or vlcers rising a little below his eare rootes. The cure is, first you shall saile to let him blood in the necke veine: then two or

three howres after you shall giue him a glister: then make this plaister: Take of squilla fiue ounces, of elder, of castoreum, of mustard-seed, and of euforbium, of each two ounces; dissolue the same in the iuice of daffadill and sage, and lay it all about the temples of his head, and betweene his eares: then giue him to drinke for three or foure dayes together, euery morning, two ounces of the best treacle dissolued in a pint of good muskadine. The *Italians* vse to giue him diuers mornings, a pound of the iuice of elder roots, or in stead of his hay, a good quantity of that hearbe which is called *Venus haire*; but if the time of the yeare be such that they cannot haue it greene, then they boyle it in water, and straine it, and giue it him to drinke; but I hold the first drinke to be most sufficient, his dyet being thin, and his keeping warme.

CHAP. 26.

Of the Plague or pestilence in Horses, of some called the gargill, or murraine.

THis pestilence, murraine, or gargill in horses, is a contagious and most infectious disease, proceeding either from surfaite of heate, cold, labour, or hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours in a horses body, as the holding too long of his vrine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding vpon grosse foule & corrupt foods, as in low grounds after flouds, when the grasse is vnpurged, & such like. Sometimes it springs from som euil influence of the planets, corrupting the plants and fruites of the earth, and cattell too sometimes also, & from diuers other such like causes; but howsoeuer, when the disease beginneth, certaine it is, that

that it is most infectious, and if there be not care and preuention vsed, of multitudes it will not leaue one. Not any of the ancient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our English Farriers that I haue met with, do or can yeeld me any signe or token to know this disease, more then that one or two must first dye, & then by their deaths I must adiudge & preuent what will follow; but they are mistaken: for this disease is as easily known by outward signes as any disease whatsoeuer, as namely the horse will first begin to lowre and hang downe his head; & within two or three dayes after such lowring, you shal see him begin to swell vnder his eare rootes, or vnder the rootes of his tongue, and that swelling will run vniuersally ouer all one side of his face, being very extreme hard and great. Moreouer all his lips, mouth, & whites of his eyes, will be exceeding yellow, and his breath will be strong, and stinke exceedingly.

The cure of this disease, according to the maner of the *Italians* & *French men*, is first to separate the sound from the sicke, euen a farre distance from that aire where the sicke breatheth: then let them blood in the necke veines, and giue euery one seuerally to drinke, two spoonefull of the powder of *Diapente* brewd in a pint of strong sacke; of the composition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular vertues thereof, you shall reade in a chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and dissolue it in two ounces of the best treacle, and it will serue the turne. Questionlesse these medicines are both exceeding good, for they are great preseruatiues against all inward infections, yet that which I haue found, farre to exceede them, and to be most excellent not onely for this plague amongst horses,
but

but for the plague or murraine (of some called the mountaine euill) amongst beasts, is this: Take a good quantity of old vrine, and mixe therewithall a good quantity of hens dung, stirre them well together till the dung be dissolued: then with a horne giue to euery horse or beast a pint thereof luke warme. This haue I seene helpe hundreds.

CHAP. 27.

Of the Feuer accidentall, coming by some wound receiued.

IF a horse shal receiue any grieuous and sore wound, either by stroake or thrust, by which any of the vitall powers are let or hindred: certaine it is that the paine and anguish of such wounds will bring a horse to a hot feuer, and then his life is in great danger: besides, a horse being naturally subiect to moist distillation in his throat, there will many times rise therein great swellings and vlcers, through the paine whereof a horse will fall into a burning ague. The signs whereof are, that he will couet much to drinke, but cannot drinke, and his flesh will fall away in much extraordinary fashion. The cure besides the remedies before mentioned, is, to let him blood vnder his eares and in the mouth: and then to take a fine manchet, & cutting it in slices, steep it in muscadine, and compel him to swallow them: it shall also be good if once in three dayes you steepe your manchet in sallet oyle, and make him eat it. As for his drinke let it be onely warme mashes of malt and water, which if he cannot drinke, you shall then giue it him with a horne. And thus much touching feuers both ordinary & extraordinary.

Chap.

AS a horses head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subiect to many and sundry grievances, as namely, the panicles or thin skins, which cleauing to the bones, do couer the whole braine, are subiect to headache, mygram, dizinesse, and amazes; the whole braine it selfe, is properly subiect to breede the frenzie, madnesse, sleeping euill, the taking, and forgetfulnesse. And here is to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approued good skils, haue strongly held opinions, that horses haue very little or no braines at all: and my selfe for mine owne part, being carried away with their censures, did at last vpon good considerations cut vp the heades of diuers horses, some dead, some in dying, and I could neuer find any liquid or thin braine, as in other beasts, but onely a very thicke, strong, tough, and shining substance, solid and firme, like a tough ielly, which I euer held to be onely a panycle, and so resolued with others that a horse had no braine, but after vpon further discourse with men of better learning, I had this solution giuen me: That a horse being a beast of extraordinary strength and ability, made euen to endure the worst of all extremities, either by sore labour or heauy burthen, that nature in his creation had endowed him with members answerable to such vigor: as namely, that his braine was not liquid and moist, as subiect to fleet, or to be distempered with euery small disorder; but tough and hard, euen vnpenetrable, and not to be pierst by any reasonable motion. And for the panicles, they shewed me those thin skinnes ouer

and besides that great substance ; so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a horse hath both brain and a panicle, and in them two are bred the diseases before mentioned. Now in the ventricles, or cels of the braine, & in those conduits by which the liuely spirits giue feeling and motion to the body, there do breede the turne-sicke or sturdy, the staggers, the falling euill, the night mare, the apoplexie, the palsey, and conuulsion, or crampe, the catharre, or rheume, and lastly the glaunders. And thus much of the head in generall.

CHAP. 29.

Of head-ache, or paine in the head.

THe head-ache is a paine that commeth either of some inward cause, or of some cholericke humor, gathered together in the panicles of the braine, or else of some extreame heate or cold, or of some suddaine blow, or of some noysome sauour. The signes are the hanging downe of the horses head & eares, dropping of his vrine, dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes. The cure according to the opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him blood in the eye veines, and to squirt warme water into his nostrhels, and for that day giue him no meate; the next morning fasting, giue him warm water and some grasse, at night giue him barley and fitches mixt together, and so keepe him warme till he be sound ; but this cure I do not fancy, the best help is first, to make him neefe by fuming him, then let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and keepe him fasting at least twelue howres after : then powre into his nostrhels
wine

wine, wherein hath bene sodden euforbium, frankincense, and after seede him, and keepe his heade warme.

CHAP. 30.

Of the frenzie and madnesse of a horse.

THe madnesse of a horse by the most ancient and best approued Farriers, is diuided into foure passions: the first is when some naughty blood doth strike the panicle of the braine but in one part onely, it presently makes the horse dull both of minde and sight: and you shall know it by this signe, the horse will turne round like a beast that is troubled with the sturdy, the reason being, because the outside of the head is griued onely. The second is when the poyson of such blood doth infect the middle part of the braine: then the horse becommeth franticke, leaping against walles or any thing. The third is when that blood filleth the veines of the stomacke, and infecteth as well the heart as the braine, then is he said to be madde. But the fourth and last is when that blood not onely infecteth the braine and heart, but euen the panicles also, and then he is said to be starke madde, which you shall know by his biting at euery man which comes neere him, by his gnawing of the manger and walles about him. And lastly by tearing of his owne skin in peeces. Now for the cure, you shall cause him to be let blood in all the lower parts of his body, to draw the blood from his head, as namely, on the shackell veines, the spurre veines, the plat veines, and the thigh veines, and you shall let him blood abundantly, then giue him this drinke: Take the roote

of wild cowcumber, or where that cannot be gotten, take a handfull of rue and mints, and a handfull of blacke elleborus, and boyle them in strong red wine, and giue it luke warme to the horse in a horne. Some vse to giue mans dung with wine, three mornings together; and also to rubbe his body ouer with a friction at least twice a day, and not to faile to giue him moderate exercise. Other vse to pierce the skinne of his head with a hot yron, to let out the ill humours. Others as the most certaine of all medicines, vse to geld him of both, or one stone at the least; but I like it not for mine owne part: the cure I haue euer vsed for this grieve, was either to make him swallow down hard hens dung, or else to giue him to drinke the root of *Virgapafloris* stampd in water; and for his ordering during the cure, I would haue his stable quyet, but not close, and his foode onely warme mashcs of malt and water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest dyet is best.

CHAP. 31.

Of the Sleeping euill, or Lethargie in horses.

THe sleeping euill is an infirmity which maketh a horse to sleepe continually, depruiing him thereby both of memory, appetite, and all alacrity of spirit. It is most incident to white and dunne horse, because it proceedeth only from flegme, cold & grosse, which moysturing the braine too much, causeth heauinesse and sleepe. There needes no other signe more then his sleeping onely. The cure is to keepe him waking whether he will or no, with great noises and affrights. then let him bloud in the necke, and the palate of the mouth,

mouth, and giue him to drinke water luke warme, wherein hath bene boyled camomill, motherwoort, wheate, branne, salt and vinegar; you shall also perfume his head, and make him neese, and annoynt the palate of his mouth with hony and mustard mixt together: it shall not be amisse if with the ordinary water which he drinketh, you mixe either parley seede, or fennell seede, for that will prouoke vrine, you shall also bath his legges and stop his houes with bran, salt, and vinegar boyled together, and applyed as hot as may be, and his stable would be lightsome and full of noyse.

CHAP. 32.

*Of a Horse that is taken, or of shrow
running.*

THose horses are supposed by Farriers to be taken, or as some call it, planet strooke, which are depriued of feeling or of mouing, not being able to stirre any member, but remaineth in the same forme as he was at his time of taking. Some hold it proceedeth from choler and fleame, when they are superabundantly mixt together, or of melancholy bloud, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppresse and sicken the hinder part of the braine. Other ancient Farriers hold, it cometh of some extreme cold, or extreme heate, or raw digestion, striking into the empty veins suddainly; or else of extreme hunger caused by long fasting. The signes thereof are numbnesse, and want of motion before spoken of: as for the cure, it is diuers; for first you must note whether it come of cold, or heate: if it come of cold, you shall know it by the

I 3 stuffing

stuffing and poze in the head, which euer is ioyned with the disease: if of heate, by the hotnesse of his breath, and cleare fetching of his winde. Now if it proceed from cold, you shall giue him to drinke one ounce of *Lacerpitium* mixt with sallet oyle and muskadin luke warme: if it proceede of heate, you shall giue one ounce of *Lacerpitium* with water and hony luke warme; but if it proceede of crudity or raw digestion, then you shall helpe him by fasting; and if it proceede of fasting, then you shall heale him by feeding him often with good meate, as with wholesome bread, and dry oates; yet but a little at a time, that he may euer eate with a good stomacke.

Now for the French Farriers, as Monsieur Horace and the rest, who call this disease *Surprius*, they hold it cometh onely from cold causes, following hot accidents; and they vse for their cure to let him bloud on the breast veines, and then put him into a sweate, either by exercise, or multiplicity of clothes, but many clothes is better, because the horse is not capable of labour: and sometimes they will bury him all saue the head in an old dunghill, till throuh the heate thereof his limbs receiue such feeling that he begins to struggle out of the same. All which cures are not much amisse; yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way: First to let him bloud in the necke and breast, then to annoynt all his body with oyle *Petrolinum*, then giue him this drinke. Take of malmsey three pints, and mixe it with a quarterne of sugar, cynamon and cloues, and let him drinke it luke warme: then take old rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet hay, and with clothes, fursingles and cords, swaddle al his whole body ouer with the same of a good thickness,

nesse, and renew it once in three daies till he be whole, let his stable be warme, his exercise moderate, and if he grow costiuē, let him first be raked, and after giue him either a glister, or a suppositary, according to his strength. There is also another kinde of taking, and that is when a horse is planet strooke, or stricken with thunders; but it is vtterly vncurable, and therefore I will omit to speake further of it. The last kinde of taking is when a horse is shrow runne, that when a horse lieth sleeping, there is a certain venemous field mouse, called a shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a swines head, and her feete shorter of the one side then the other. This mouse if she happen to runne ouer any of the limbes of the horse, presently the horse leese the vse of that limbe she ranne ouer; and if she runne ouer his body, he commonly leese the vse of his hinder loynes; and these accidents hauing bene often found vnexpected, common Farriers haue held the horse to be taken, or planet strooke. As for the cure thereof, the best is to seeke out a bryer which groweth at both ends, and take the horse or beast that is thus vexed, and draw him vnder the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine owne part, I haue heard much, both of the infirmity, and of the cure, but I haue had no experience of it, but only in one yong foale, which being suddainly lame, was as suddainly helped to my much contentment.

CHAP. 33.

Of the Staggers.

THe staggers is a dizzy madnesse of the braine, proceeding from corrupt bloud, or grosse, tough,
and

and heauy humours, which oppresse and make sicke the braine, and from whence proceedeth a vaporose spirit, dissolued by a weake heate which troubleth all the whole head; it is almost of all diseases the most common, yet very mortall and dangerous: it cometh many times from surfaite of meate, surfaite of traucell, or from corruption of blood. The signes to know it, is dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes, a moyst mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beating of his head against the walles, or thrusting it into his litter. The cure is diuers, for almost euery Smith hath a seuerall medicine, yet these which I shal rehearse are the most approued. The ancient Farriers, both *Italians* and *Fren h*, vse to let the horse blood in the temple veins, and then with a knife make a hole of an inch long, ouerthwart his forehead, vnderneath his foretop, and raising the skinne vp with a cornet some two or three inches about, stop the hollownesse with a taint dipt in turpentine and hogges grease molten together; but some of our Smiths finding this cure faile, except the disease be very young, vse to stoppe the hollownesse with a docke roote. Others with a clove or two of garlicke. Others vse for this disease to take selladine, and stamping it, to stoppe it into his eares, and so tye vp his eares, or stich the tippes of his eares together, that he may not shake the medicine out. Others vse to mixe salt and water together thicke, & to put it into his eares. Others vse to mixe ground-fill and aquauitæ together, and to put that into his eares. Others vse to take garlicke, rue, and bay-salt, and beate them grossly, then mixe vinegar with them, and put it into the horses eares, then wet wolle or tow in the medicine, and stoppe that in his eares also.

also: let the medicine rest so foure and twenty houres, and if he forsake his meate, wash his tongue with vinegar, and it wil recouer his stomacke. Others vse, first to perfume the horses head to make him neese, then to take halfe a handfull of selladine, and as much hearb of grace, three or foure cloues of garlick, and a little bay salt, and stampe them all together: then mixe therwith two or three spoonfull of vinegar or verdeg, and thrust it hard into the horses eares: then tye vp his eares with a soft inckle string, that no aire may come in, and let this medicine remaine the space of a day and a night: then let him bloud in the neck veine, and giue him a comfortable drench, of which drenches you shall find great plenty, together with their vses in a chapter following. There be some Smiths which onely take rue and selladine, of each like quantity, and stamping them with white salt, thrust it into the horses eare, and it helpeth. Others take an ounce and a halfe of the oyle of bitter almonds, two drams of an oxe gall, an halfe peny in blacke *Ellaber* stamped, and five drams of the graines of *Casterum*, vinegar and verdeg; seeth them all together till the vinegar be consumed, then straine them, and put it into the horses eares. All these medicines haue bene diuers times approued to be singular good, and for mine owne part I haue found great effect in them; yet that which I haue found at all times most excellent, is, if the disease be young and early taken (that is, before the horse be growne into any extremity of weaknesse) to take onely verdeg and bay salt, and mixing them well together, to stoppe it into the horses eares. But if the disease be old, and the horse brought to a desperate state of mortality, then you shall take *Assafetida*, and

K hauing

hauing dissolued it in vinegar, warme it vpon a chafing dish and coales, and with round balles of tow, thrust it hard into the horses eares, and so bind them vp for foure and twenty howres, after which time giue him a comfortable drink. Now whereas some Smiths do vse to stampe aqua-vitæ and garlicke together, and stoppe that into his eares, I for my part, thinke it too strong, except the horse be in great lust, and full of flesh, which if he be, doubtlesse it may do well inough.

CHAP. 34.
Of the Falling euill.

THIS falling euill, or as the *Italians* call it, this *Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in men the falling sicknesse, in beasts the falling euill: for it doth for a certaine season, deprive them of all sense whatsoeuer, it is a disease not commonly incident to our English races; but amongst the *Italian*, *Spanish* and *French* horses, many times found. Now considering that the most of our best English stables are furnished euer with some horses of these countries, I thinke it not amisse to write something touching the disease. It proceedeth from cold and grosse steame gathered together in the forepart of the head, betwixt the panicle and the braine, which being by any hot vapour disperst ouer the whole braine, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose that it is gouerned by the Moone; and that by a certaine course thereof both horses and other beasts do fall, and as it were, dye for a small time. The signes to know the disease is, the horse will fall suddainly, both through the

the resolution of his members, and the dissention of his sinewes; all his body will quake and quiver, and they will foame much at their mouthes; yet when you thinke them past all hope of life, they will start vp suddenly and fall to their meate. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often or but seldome, you shall feele the gristle betwixt his nostrils, and if it be cold he will fall oft, but if it be warme he will fall seldome. The cure is, you shall first let him bloud on the necke veine, taking good store of bloud away: then within foure or five dayes after, you shall let him bloud on his temple veins, and on his eye veins: then annoint all his body ouer with a comfortable friction, then bathe his head and eares with oyle de bay, liquid pitch and tarre mixt together, and of the same put some into his eares: then make him a cap or bgin of canuasse quilted with wolles, to keep his head warme: then giue him a purgation or scouring, of which you shall find plenty in a chapter hereafter: you shall also force him to neese, but if the disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot yron pierce the skin of his forehead in diuers places, and after annoynt it with sweet butter, for thereby you shall draw out the grosse humours which do oppresse the braine; and in any wise during the time that he remaineth in phisicke, let his stable be kept exceeding warme, and his dyet thin.

CHAP. 35.
Of the Night-mare.

THis disease which we call the Night-mare, is an infirmity which onely troubleth the horse in the
K 2 night

night season, stopping the drawing of his breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and struing he will be driuen into a great sweat and faintnesse: it proceedeth, according to the opinion of ancient Fairiers, from a continuall crudity or raw digestion of the stomacke, from whence grosse vapours ascending vp into the head, doe not onely oppresse the braine, but all the sensitiue parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the stomacke and inward bowels, which being cloyed with much glut and fat, doth in the night season so hinder the spirits and powers from doing their naturall office, that the beast hauing, as it were, his breath strangled, doth with an vnnaturall struggling in his sleepe, put his body into an extreme sweat, and with that passion is brought to much faintnesse; of which I haue had much and continuall experience, onely in horses exceeding fat and newly taken from the grasse, but especially from such horses as are either fatted vpon coddish grasse, which in some countries is called after-maths; or such as are taken vp fat in the winter season. The signes to know this disease is, that in the morning when you come early to your horse, you shall finde him all of a great sweate, and his body something panting; or perhaps you shall but only find him sweat in his flanks, vpon his necke, and at the rootes of his eares: either of both are signes of this sicknesse, especially if at night when you litter him, you finde that he is dry of his body, and giueth no outward signe of inward sicknesse. Now there be some that will object against me, and say: that this infirmity is not the night-mare, but an ordinary infirmity ingendred by superfluity of cold, grosse, and vnwholesome food,
got

got in the winter season: which nature, through the helpe of warme clothes, and a warme house, expels in this manner, in the night season. To this obiection I answer, that if they do disallow this sicknesse to be the night-mare, that then without all contradiction, there is no such disease as the night-mare at all, and that it is but only a name without any substance or consequence; but forasmuch as this sicknesse is not onely very vsuall, but also carrieth with it all the effects and attributes ascribed vnto the night-mare, and that it is as yet a disease vnnamed, I do not think I can giue it a more proper terme then to call it the night-mare. The cure whereof is, euery morning and euening, both before and after his water, to giue the horse some moderate exercise, as to make him go at least a mile and more for his water; and after he is watered, to gallop him gently on the hand a good space: then when he is brought into the house, and well rubbed, to giue him his prouender, being oates, and to mixe therewith a handfull or better of hempleede; onely in this cure you must be carefull, that your exercise do not enforce him to sweate, nor shall you haue need to vse it longer then you finde that he sweateth much in the night season. This exercise and medicine will not onely cure this infirmity, but also any cold that is newly gotten whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 36.

Of the Apoplexie or Palsey.

THESE palseyes or apoplexies which happen vnto horses, are of two sorts: the one generall, the other particular. The generall palsey is when a horse is

deprived of all sense and moving generally ouer his whole body, which is seldome or neuer found out by our Farriers; because the mortality and suddainnesse of death which pursues the disease, takes from them all notes & obseruations of the infirmity: and indeed for the generall palsey there is no cure, and therefore there needs no description of signe or cure. For the particular palsey, that is, when a horse is deprived but of some part or member of his body, and most commonly it is but the necke onely, as both my selfe and others haue found by dayly experience. The disease proceedeth from foulnesse of foode, or from fenne feeding, which breedeth grosse, cold, and tough humours, which ioyning with crudities and raw digestions, oppresse the braine violently altogether; it also cometh many times by meanes of some blow or wound giuen vpon the temples of the head. The signes to know the disease, are the gathering together of his body, going crookedly, and not straight forward but seldome, and holding his necke awry without motion; yet neuer forsaking his prouender or meate, but eating it with greedinesse and much flauering. The cure is to let him blood on his necke veine, and temple veine, on the contrary side to that way he wryeth: then annoynt all his necke ouer with the oyle *Petroleum*, and with wet hay ropes swaddle all his necke ouer, euen from his breast to his eares, but hauing before splented his necke straight with splents of wood, made strong, smooth & flat for the purpose: then for 3 mornings together, giue him a pint of old muscadine with two spoonefull of this powder to drinke. Take of *Opoponax* two ounces, of *Storax* three ounces, of *Gentian* three ounces, of *Manna Sucaric* three ounces,
of

of *Mirre* one scruple, and of long pepper two scruples; beate all these into fine powder. Now there be some Farriers, which for this disease vse to draw the horses necke on the contrary side, with a hot yron, euen from the necke to the shoulder, and on the temple of his head, of that side also, a long strike, and on the other a little starre in this maner, ✱, and from his reines to his midde backe, small lines in this maner. ←←← But I that know this sicknesse proceedeth from the braine and sinewes, cannot conceiue how any helpe should come from burning of the skinne, because it is the sinewes themselues, and not the skinne, that is drawne vp and straightned: and therefore I would wish euery Farrier to forbear this tormenting, vnlesse he apparantly see that the skinne it selfe, through dislike and weaknesse is shrunke also, and then the cure is not amisse.

CHAP. 37.

*Of the generall Crampe, or convulsion of
sinewes.*

THeſe generall crampes or conuulſions of ſinewes are moſt forcible contractions or drawings together of the ſinewes and muſcles; and they happen ſometimes generally into many parts of the body, ſometimes particularly, as but into one member and no more: when they are generally diſperſt in horſes, they proceede commonly from ſome wound, wherein a ſinew is halfe cut and no more; and ſo there runneth a generall contraction over the whole body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one member, then they proceede either from cold windy

dy causes, or from the want of blood. For the generall contraction which cometh by a wound, you shall reade the cure thereof in the booke of Surgery following, where, the sinew being cut in two peeces, the contraction ceaseth. For the particular, where but one member is grieued, you shall know it by these signes: the member will be starke and stiffe, inso-much that neither the beast nor any man will be able to bow it: the sinewes will be hard like stickes, and the horse being downe, is not able to rise during the time of the contraction; he will also halt extremely whilst the fit is vpon him, and presently go well againe, as it were in one moment. The cure is, to chafe the member exceedingly, either with linscede oyle, sheeps foot oyle, or neats foot oyle; & during the time of his chafing, to hold vp the contrary foot that he may stand vpon the limbe which is most pained. There is also another crampe or conuulsion of sinewes, which doth extend into the necke, and reines of the horses backe, & so almost vniuersally ouer the horses whole body: it proceedeth euer either from some extreme cold, as by turning a horse suddainly out of a warme stable and warme clothes into the piercing rage of the cold winter; or by the losse of much blood, whereby great windinesse entreth into the veines, and so benumbeth the sinewes: or else by too much phisicking & drenching of a horse, whereby the naturall heate is much weakned or dried. The signs of this conuulsion is, his head and neck wil stand awry, his eares vp-right, & his eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung vp that he cannot eate, and his backe will rise vp in the midst like the backe of a Cammell. The cure hereof is, with great store of warme wollen clothes, as blanketts,
and

and eouerlids, some foulded double about his body, and some girded all ouer from his head to his taile, to force him into a sweate; but if the clothes will not force him to sweate; then you shall either fould all his body ouer with hot wet horse litter, or else bury him all saue the head in a dunghill or mixion; then when he hath sweat an howre or two, and is moderatly cooled, you shall annoynt him all ouer with this oyntment (holding hot barres of yron ouer him, to make the oyntment sinke into his body:) Take of hogges grease one pound, of terpenine a quarter of a pound, of pepper beaten into powder halfe a dramme, of new waxe halfe a pound, of old oyle oliue one pound, boyle all these together, and vse it, being made warme. There be other Farriers which vse this oyntment: take of new waxe 1. pound, of terpenine 4. ounces, of oyle de bay as much, *Opoponax* two ounces, of Deeres suet, and of oyle of *Storax*, of each three ounces, melt all these together and vse it warme. There be others which vse after his sweate, nothing but oyle of Cyresse, and oyle de bay mixt together, and with it annoynt his body ouer. After this vnction thus applied, you shall take twenty graines of long pepper beaten into fine powder, of *Ceder* two ounces, of *Nitre* one ounce, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, and mingle all these together with a gallond of white wine, and giue him a quart therof to drinke, euery morning for foure dayes. Now for his dyet and order, let his food be warme mashes and the finest hay, his stable exceeding warme, and his exercise gentle walking abroad in his cloathes, once euery day about high noone.

THe cold or poze in a horses head is gotten by diuers suddaine and vnseene meanes, according to the temper and constitution of the horses body, in so much that the best keeper whatsoeuer cannot sometimes warrant his horse from that infirmity. Now according as this cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of humours which abound in the head, and as those humours are of thicknesse or thinnesse, so is the disease & the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall vnderstand that if the horse haue but onely a cold that is newly taken, the signes are, he will haue many knots like waxe kyrnels betweene his chaules about the rootes of his tongue; his head will be somewhat heauy, and from his nosthrels will runne a certaine cleare water; but if about his tongue rootes be any great swelling, or inflammation like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the strangle; but if from his nosthrels do issue any thicke, stincking or corrupt matter, then it is the glanders, of both which we shall speake hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary cold which is ordinarily taken (the signes whereof besides his much coughing are before declared,) you shall vnderstand that for the cure being very easie, it is helped sundry wayes: some cure it onely by purging his head with pils of butter and garlicke, the manner whereof you shall finde in the chapter of purgations. Other Farriers cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to neele, the manner whereof is in the chapter of neefing; which done, you shall
giue

because those kyrnels are called of the *Italians, Glandule*, that thence we borrow this word glaunders; adding moreouer that a horse which is troubled with this disease, hath great kyrnels vnderneath his iawes, easie to be felt, paining him so that he cannot eate or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling vpon the iawe bones great and hard, which being inflamed doth putrifie and rot; but both these opinions I hold erroneous: for although our old Farriers might (according to the custome of our nation which loueth the imitation of strangers) borow this word glanders from the *Italian Glandule*; yet these inflammations vnder the chappes of the tongue rootes, is that disease which we call the strangle, and not the glaunders; and whereas they would call the strangle the *Quinsie*, or *Squinancie*, there is no such matter, neither hath a horse any such disease, except they will call the *Puer*, by that name which is farre more fitter for the application.

Now for the glaunders, you shall vnderstand that it is a running impostume ingendred either by cold, or by famine, or by long thirst, or by eating corrupt and musty meate, or by being kept in vnfauey places, or is taken by standing with infected horses. It is a gathering together of moyst and corrupt humours, which runneth at the nose; or may be said to be a fluxe of rheume, which issucth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the nostrhels: the cause being the wide-nesse of the passage, so that the cold liberally entring into the braine, bindeth and crusheth it in such manner that it maketh the humours there to distill; which descending to the spirituall parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the horse either by their abundance,

dance, or killeth him by corrupting the principall parts; or else by coniealing there by little and little, ouerrunneth the naturall heate. Now that distillation that by cold cometh from the braine and breedeth this glanders, is of three sorts. The first is a cold which maketh indigest humours to passe from the braine, which cometh by taking off the saddle suddainly when the horse is hot, or by letting him drinke before he be inwardly cooled, or before his body be dried: this distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells not, and is easie to be cured: for it is no inward vlcere, but only abundance of humor, the substance whereof is grosse and white. The second is a greater cold, ingendred and coniealed, causing humors something thin and slimy, of the colour of marrow, or the white of an egge: this descendeth to the throate and lyeth there till it be discharged through the nostrils. The third is by long continuance thicker and therefore harder to be cured: if the colour thereof be yellow, like a beane, then is the glanders most desperate, and lyeth also in his throate; but if it be a browne or darkish yellow, then commonly a feuer will accompany the disease. To these three distillations there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his nose, is darke, thinne, and reddish, like little sparkes of bloud; but then is it not said to be the glanders, but the mourning of the chine, which is a disease for the most part, held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for euery good Farrier, when he shall take this cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issueth from the horses nose: for if the humour be cleare and transparent, so that it may be seene through, then it is not greatly hurtfull, or of much



much moment. If it be white, it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it be yellow, separate him from the sound horses, for he is infectious, yet to be cured: if that yellow be mixt with bloud, it is with much difficulty helped; or if the matter be like vnto saffron, the horse is as hardly to be saued: he must also consider whether the matter stinke or haue lost the smell: the first is a signe of an vlcer, the latter of death: also whether he cougheth with straightnesse in his chest or no: for that also is a signe of an inward vlcer, and that the disease is past cure. Now for the cure of these three distillations, which are all that make vp a complete glanders, you shall vnderstand that when the glanders is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and by warme keeping; but if it be of the second sort, you shall giue him warme masches of malt & water, and perfume his head well, and purge it by needling: and into his masches you shall put fennell seedes bruised. Others will take a pint of white wine, a handfull of foote, a quart of milke and two heads of garlike bruised; brew them together, and giue it the horse to drinke. Others will take a pottell of vrine, a handfull of bay salt, and a good quantity of browne sugarcandy, boyle it to a quart: then adde licoras and anise seedes beaten to fine powder, and giue it luke warme to drinke. Others will take larde or swines greafe, and boyle it in water: then take the fatte from the water, and mingle it with a little oile oliue, a good quantity of vrine, & halfe as much white wine; giue a quart of this luke warme to drinke. Others vse to giue of ale a quart, of grated bread an ounce and a halfe, the yolkes of two egges, of ginger, saffron, cloues, cinnamon, nutmegs, cardimonium, spicknard or lauender,

der, galingale and hony, of each a pretty quantity; mixe these together, and giue it to drinke. Now if the distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst of the three, you shall take halfe a pound of swines bloud, and melt it at the fire, adde to it a pound of the iuice of beets, with three ounces of *Eusorbinum* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and adde an another ounce of *Eusorbinum* to it: keepe this oyntment, and annoynt therewith two very long feathers, or little rodde, lapt with linnen about; and so annoynted, put them into his nostrhrels, and after rubbing them vp and downe, tie them to the nose-band of the bridle, and walke him abroad: do thus three dayes together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the eye sore. Others vse to take a quart of ale, an halfe peny worth of long pepper, a little brimstone, and a penny worth of Galingal, two peniworth of spygnal of Spaine, two peny waight of saffron brayed, with two ounces of butter boyled in the ale; when it is luke warme, cast the horse and holding vp his head, powre it equally into his nostrhrels: then hold his nostrhrels close till his eyes stare, and that he sweate; which done, giue him bayes and ale to drinke: then let him rise, and set him vp warme, feeding him with warme graines and salt, or with sweet mashies; but the best is, if the weather be warme, to let him runne abroad at grasse. Other Farriers vse to dissolue in vinegar three drams of mustard-seede, and as much *Eusorbinum*: then to giue him one dram at his nostrhrell euery day before he drinke. Others vse to take of *Mirre*, *Iris Illyrica*, seedes of smal-lage, *Aristolochia*, of each three ounces, *Sal-niter*, *Brimston*, of each five ounces, bayes, two ounces, saffron
one

one ounces make this into powder, and when you giue it, giue part in pills, made with paste and wine, and part by the nosthrels with strong ale: do this for the space of three dayes at the least. Others vse to take of malmsey a pint, of strong ale a pint, of aqua-vitæ foure spoonefull, and brew them together with a pretty quantity of anise seeds, licoras, ellocampane roots, long pepper, garlicke, and three or foure new layed egges, and a little buter; giue this luke warme to drinke: then walke him abroad, and set him vp warme: do thus euery other day for a weeke together. Others vse to take stale vrine that hath stood three or foure daies, and ten garlicke heades, and seething them together, giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to take swines grease well clarified, and as much oyle de bay as a walnut, and giue it the horse to drinke with faire water luke warme. Others vse to take of ellocampane, anise seeds and licoras, of each one peny worth, boyle them in three pints of ale or beere til one pint be consumed; then adde vnto it a quarter of a pint of sallet oyle, and giue it him to drinke luke warme: then with a quill blow *Eusorbium* vp into his nosthrels, and within three dayes after, take mustard foure spoonefull, vinegar a pint and an halfe, butter three ounces, boyle them together, then adde thereto halfe an ounce of pepper, and giue it the horse luke warme to drinke: vse this medicine a fortnight. Others vse to take a handfull of pild garlicke, and boyle it in a quart of milke till a pint be consumed: then adde thereto two ounces of sweet butter, and a pint of strong ale, stirre them well together, and giue it the horse fasting to drinke luke warme: which done, ride him a little vp and downe, and vse this the space of nine dayes.

Thus I haue shewed you the opinions & practise of all the best Ferriers both of this kingdome and of others, & they be all very good & effectual; yet for mine own part, that which I haue found euer the best in my practise is, if the disease be of the first or second sort, to giue the horse to drinke fasting euery morning for a fortnight together, a pint of strong ale, and fise spoonefull of the oyle of oates, the making of which oyle, you shall reade in a particular chapter following; but if the disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate, you shall then take of Tanners ouse a pint, and of new milke a pint, and of oyle oliue halfe a pint, and the quantity of a head of garlicke bruised, and a little turmericke; mixe these well together, and giue it the horse to drinke: do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe if any helpe be to be had.

CHAP. 41.

Of the mourning of the Chine.

THIS disease which we call the mourning of the chine, or as some Farriers terme it, the moist maldy, is that fourth sort of corrupt distillation from the braine, of which we haue spoken in the chapter before, shewing from whence it proceedes, and the signes thereof; to wit, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his nostrhels, will be darke, thinne, and reddish, with little streakes of bloud in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this disease is a foule consumption of the liuer, and I do not dissent from that opinion: for I haue found the liuer wasted in those horses which I haue opened vpon this disease; and
this

this consumption proceedes from a cold, which after growes to a poze, then to a glaunders, and lastly to this mourning of the chine.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is to take cleare water, and that hony which is called *Hydromela* quart, and put thereunto three ounces of sallet oyle, and powre it into his nostrils each morning the space of three dayes; & if that helpe not, then giue him to drinke euery day, or once in two dayes at the least, a quart of old wine mingled with some of the soueraigne medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almost of euery Apothecary. Others vse to take garlicke, houslicke & cheruill; and stamping them together, to thrust it vp into the horses nostrils.

Others vse to let the horse fast all night; then take a pint and a halfe of milke, three heads of garlicke pild & stamped; boyle them to the halfe, and giue it to the horse, some at the mouth and some at the nose; then gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him; then gallop him halfe a mile, and rest him againe: thus do twice or thrice together; then set him vp warme, and giue him no water till it be high noone: then giue him a sweete mash: vse this cure at least three dayes together. Others vse to take halfe a pecke of oates, & boyle them in running water till halfe be consumed; then put them into a bagge, and lay them very hot vpon the nauell place of his backe, and there let it lye thirty howres, vsing thus to do three or foure times at the least. Others vse to take wormewood, *Pseudanum*, and *Centorie*, of each like quantity: boyle them in wine; then straine them, and powre thereof many times into his nostrils, especially into

that which most runneth. Others vse to take harehound, licoras, & anise seeds, beaten to powder: then with sweete butter to make pils thereof, and to giue them fasting to the horse. Others vse to take wheate flower, anise seedes, and licoras, stamped in a mortar, fīue or sixe cloues of garlike bruiled; mixe all these together & make a paste of them; then make it into pils as big as walnuts, & taking out the horses tongue, cast the balles downe the horses throate three or foure at a time, then giue him two new layed egges, shelles and all after them. Now after all these, the best and most approuedst medicine, is to take as much of the middle Greene barke of an Elder tree growing on the water side, as will fill a reasonable vessell, putting thereunto as much running water as the vessell will hold, and let it boyle till halfe be consumed, and then fill vp the vessell againe with water, continuing so to do, three times one after another: and at the last time when the one halfe is consumed, take it from the fire, and straine it exceedingly through a linnen cloath; then to that decoction, adde at least a full third part of the oyle of oates, or for want of that, of oyle oliue, or of hogges grease, or sweete butter; and being warmed againe, take a quart thereof, and giue it the horse to drinke, one horne-ful at his mouth, and another at his nostrils, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case let the horse be fasting when he taketh this medicine: for it not onely cureth this, but any sicknesse proceeding from cold whatsoeuer: it shall be also good to vse to his body some wholesome friction, & to his head some wholesome bathe, of which bathes you shall reade more hereafter in a chapter following. For his dyet, his food
would

would be sodden barley and sweete hay, and his drinke warme water or mashes; but if it be in the Summer season, then it is best to let him runne at grasse onely.

CHAP. 42.
Of the Cough.

Coughing is a motion of the lungs, raised naturally from his expulsive power, to cast out the hurtfull cause, as needling is the motion of the braine. Now of coughes, there be some outward, and some inward: those are sayd to be outward which proceed of outward causes, as when a horse doth eate or drinke too greedily, so that his meat goeth the wrong way; or when he licketh vp a feather: or eateth dusty or sharpe bearded straw, and such like, which tickling his throat, causeth him to cough: those which are sayd to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speake more hereafter. Now of these outward coughes, they may proceede from the corruption of the ayre, which if it do, you shall boyle in running water, figges and currants together; then straining the water, adde to a quart thereof, three spoonfull of *Diapente*, and it will helpe. It may also proceed from dust; and then you must wash it downe by powring into his nostrhels ale and oyle mingled together. It may come by eating sharpe and sowre things; and then you must put downe his throat, pils of sweete butter, whose softnesse will helpe him. It may proceede from some little or sleight taken cold; and then you shall take the whites & yolkes of two egges, three ounces of sallet oyle, two handfull of beane flowre,
one

one ounce of Fenugreeke; mixe them with a pint of old malmsey, and giue it the horse to drinke three daies together: or else take tarre and fresh butter; mixe them together, and giue pils thereof to the horse foure times in seuen dayes, that is, the first, the third, the fift, and the seuenth day. There be others which vse to take a gallon of faire water, and make it ready to seeth: then put thereto a pecke of ground malt, with two handfuls of boxe leaues chopt small, and a litle groundsel; mixe them altogether, and giue him euery morning and euening a pint for a weeke together. If to the boxe leaues you adde oates and bettony, it is not amisse, so you keep the horse warme. Others vse to giue a horse a pint of swines bloud warme. Others vse to boyle in a gallon of water, one pound of Fenugreeke; then straining it, giue the water morning and euening by a pint at a time to drinke; then drying the Fenugreeke, giue it the horse with his prouender. Others vse for all maner of coughes, to take a quarterne of white currants, and as much clarified hony, two ounces of sweet marioram, with old fresh greafe, and a head of garlick; melt that which is to be molten, and punne that which is to be beaten; mixe them together, and giue the horse better then a pint thereof three mornings together. Others vse to giue a horse the guts of a young pullet dipt in hony and being warme; and certainly there is not any of these medicines but are most soueraigne and well approued. Now whereas some Farriers vse to thrust downe the throat of the horse, a willow wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and annoynted all ouer with hony, I for my part do not like it: for it both torments the horse more then there is occasion

occasion; and doth but onely go about to take away that which is gone in the struggling before the medicine can be vled: for it is onely for a cough which cometh by a feather or some such like matter.

CHAP. 43.

Of the inward and wet Cough.

Touching all inward coughs which are gotten and ingendred by colds and rheumes of long continuance, being not onely dangerous, but sometimes mortall, you shall vnderstand that they are diuided into two kindes, the one wet, the other dry: the wet cough proceedeth from cold causes taken after great heats; which heat dissolving humours, those humors being againe congealed, do presently cause obstructions and stoppings of the lungs. Now the signes to know this wet cough is, the horse will euer after his coughing, cast out either water or matter out of his nostrhels, or champe and chaw with his teeth, the thicke matter which he casteth out of his throate, as you shall easily perceiue, if you heedfully note him: he will also cough often without intermission; and when he cougheth he will not much bow downe his head, nor abstaine from his meate: and when he drinketh, you shall see some of his water to issue out of his nostrhels. The cure is, first to keepe him exceeding warme; then for as much as it proceedeth of cold causes, you shall give him hot drinckes and spices, as sacke, or strong ale brewd with *cinamon, ginger, cloves, treacle, Long pepper*, and either swines grease, sallet oyle, or sweete butter: for you shall know that all cold causes are cured with medicines that open and warme; and

the hot with such as cleanse and coole. Some vse to take a pretty quantity of *Beniamine*, and the yolke of an egge; which being well mixt together, and put in. to an egge shell, cast all downe into the horses throat, and then moderatly ride him vp and downe for more then a quarter of an howre: and do this three or foure mornings together. Others vse to keepe him warme, and then to giue him this drinke. Take of barley one pecke, and boyle it in two or three gallons of running water, till the barley burst, together with bruised licorras, anise seeds, and of raisins, of each a pound; then straine it, and to that liquor put of hony a pint, and a quarterne of sugarcandy, and keepe it close in a pot to serue the horse therewith foure seuerall mornings, and cast not away the barley nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot euery day to perfume the horse withall in a close bagge; & if he eate of it, it is so much the better: and after this you shall giue the horse some moderate exercise: and for his dyet let him drinke no cold water till his cough abate; and as it lessoneth, so let his water be the lesse warmed. Now for mine own part, though all these receits be exceeding good and very well approued; yet for mine owne part, in this case, thus hath bene my practise. If I found either by the heavinesse of the horses head, or by the ratling of his nostrhrels, that the cough proceeded most from the stopping of his head, I would only giue him foure or fiue mornings together, three or foure good round pills of butter and garlick, well knoden together, in the morning fasting; and then ride him moderately an howre after; but if I found that the sicknesse remained in the chest or brest of the horse, then I would giue him twice in foure dayes, a pint of sacke, halfe a
pint

pint of sallet oyle, and two ounces of sugarcandy wel brewd together, and made luke warme, and then ride him halfe an howre after, and set him vp warme, suffering him to drinke no cold water till his cough began to abate or leaue him.

C H A P. 44.

Of the dry Cough.

THIS disease which we cal the dry cough, is a grosse and tough humour, cleauing hard to the hollow places of the lungs, which stoppeth the winde-pipes so that the horse can hardly draw his breath. It doth proceede by ill gouernment from the rheume, which distilling from the head, falleth downe to the breast, and there inforceth the horse to strue to cast it out. The especiall signes to know it is, by eating hot meates, as bread that is spiced, straw, dry hay, or such like, his extremity of coughing will encrease: by eating cold and moyst meates, as grasse, forrage, graines, and such like, it will abate and be the lesse: he cougheth seldome; yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently, long time together, and dryly with a hollow sound from his chest: he also boweth his head downe to the ground, and forsaketh his meate whilest he cougheth; yet neuer casteth forth any thing either at his mouth or nosthrels. This cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time, is incurable: for it will grow to the purficke or broken winded altogether. The cure according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers is, that for as much as it proceedeth from hot humours, therefore you shall perfume his head with cold simples, as *Camomill, Mellilot, Licoras,*

dried red *Roses* and *Camphire* boyled in water, and the
 fume made to passe vp into his mouth and nostrils.
 Others vse to take a close earthen pot, & to put therein
 three pints of the strongest vinegar, and foure egges
 shels & all vnbroken, and 4. heades of garlicke, cleane
 pild & bruised; & set the pot being very close couered
 in a warme dunghill, or a horse mixion, & there let it
 stand foure and twenty howres; then take it forth and
 open it, and take out the egges which will be as soft as
 filke, and lay them by vntill you haue strained the vi-
 negar and garlicke through a linnen cloath: then put
 to that liquor a quarterne of hony, and halfe a quar-
 terne of sugarcandy, and two ounces of licoras, & two
 ounces of anise seedes, beaten all into fine powder;
 and then the horse hauing fasted all the night, early
 in the morning, as about seuen or eyght a clocke, o-
 pen the horses mouth with a drench staffe and a cord,
 and first cast downe his throate one of the egges,
 and then presently powre after it a horn-full of the afore-
 sayd drinke being made luke warme; then cast in a-
 nother egge and an other horn-full: and thus do till
 he haue swallowed vp all the egges, or three at the
 least; then bridle him, and couer him warmer then he
 was before, and set him vp in the stable, tying him to
 the bare racke for the space of two howres; then vn-
 bridle him, and giue him either some oates, hay, or
 grasse, yet in any case giue him no hay, vntill it haue
 bene somewhat sprinkled with water: for there is no
 greater enemy to a dry cough then dry hay, dry straw,
 or chaffe; let him haue no cold water the space of 9.
 daies. Now if you chance the first morning to leaue
 an egge vntaken, you shall not faile to giue it him and
 the remainder of the drinke the morning following. If
 you

you find by this practise that the cough weareth not away, you shal then purge his head with pils, of which you shall reade in the chapter of purgations: after his pils receiued, you shall let him fast 3. howres, standing warme clothed & littered in the stable: you shall also now and then giue him a warme mash, and once a day trot him moderatly abroad. There be other Farriers which for this dry cough take onely the hearbe called lions foot, or Ladies mantle, (purge & smillage, of each like quantity; seeth them either in a quart of old wine, or a quart of running water till some part be consumed, and giue it the horse to drinke; if in stead of the hearbs themselues, you giue the iuice of the hearbs in wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white currants, & as much hony, two ounces of *Murioyam*, one ounce of peniriall, with 5. pounds of fresh grease, and nine heades of garlicke; beate that which is to be beaten, & melt the rest; giue this in 4. or 5. dayes like pils dipt in hony. Others vse to take *Myrre*, *Opoponax*, *Iris Illyrica*, & *Galbanum*, of each two ounces, of red *Storax* three ounces, of turpentine foure ounces, of henbane halfe an ounce, of opium halfe an ounce; beate them to a fine powder, and giue two or three spoonfull with a pint of old wine, or a quart of ale. Others vse to take forty graines of pepper, foure or fise rootes of raddish, foure heades of garlicke, and sixe ounces of sweet butter; stampe them all well together, and giue euery day a ball of it to the horse for a weeke together, making him fast two howres after his taking it; and surely it is a most excellent approued medicine for any old grown cold or cough. Other Farriers vse to take of oyle de bay and of sweete butter, of each halfe a pound, of garlicke

one pound, beate it together vnild; and being well beaten with a pestill of wood, adde your oyle and butter vnto it: then hauing made it into balles, with a little wheat flowre, giue your horse euery morning for a weeke or more, three or foure balles as bigge as walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meate, three howres, and from drinke till it be night, prouided that still his drinke be warme, and his meate if it possible may be, grasse, or hay sprinkled with water; as for his prouender, it would be oates, and Fenugreeke sprinkled amongst it. Now if you perceiue that at a fortnights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another weeke, giue him againe the same physicke and dyet; but truly for mine owne part, I haue neuer found it to faile in any horse whatsoever; yet I would wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward medicines, except they be well assured that the cold hath bene long, and that the cough is dangerous.

CHAP. 45.

*Of the frettized, broken, and rotten
Lungs.*

COughes do many times proceede from the corruption and putrifaction of the lungs, gotten either by some extreme cold, running or leaping, or by ouer-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the lungs being inclosed in a very thinne filme, they are therefore the much sooner broken; and if such breach be made, without instant cure, they beginne to inflame and apostume, oppressing and sickning the whole lungs. Now the signes to know this disease
is,

is, the horses flankes will beate when he cougheth; and the slower they beate, the more old and dangerous is the disease: he will also draw his winde short, and by little at once: he will groane much, be fearefull and loath to cough, and often turne his head to the place grieved: to conclude, he will neuer cough but he will bring vp something, which he will champ in his mouth after. The cure is, giue him two or three ounces of hogges grease, and two or three spoonfull of *Diapente* brewd in a quart of barley water, wherein currants hath bene sodden. Other Farriers vse to take a pound of licoras, and being scrapt, and sift, to steep it in a quart of water foure and twenty houres; then to straine it; then to boyle three or foure ounces of currants in it, and so giue it the horse to drinke, & keep him fasting 3. or 4. howres after. There be other Farriers which vse to take of Fenugreeke, and of linseed, of each halfe a pound, of gum dragant, of masticke, of myrre, of sugar, of fitch flowre, of each one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warme water, and the next day giue him a quart of this luke warme, putting thereunto two ounces of the oyle of roses; and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease be new, it will certainly heale; if it be neuer so old, it will assuredly ease him; but in any case let him drinke no cold water: and for his food, grasse is the most excellent. Others vse to take of malmsey a pint, of hony three spoonful, mixe them together; then take of *Myrre*, of *Saffron*, of *Cassia*, & *Cynamon*, of each like quantity; beate them to a fine powder, and giue two spoonfull thereof in the wine to drinke; do this at least a fortnight together, and it is certaine it will helpe these

these frettyzed and broken lungs; but for the putryfied and rotten lungs, we will speake more in this next chapter.

CHAP. 46.

Of putrified and rotten Lungs.

THis disease of rotten and exulcerated lungs, you shall know by these signes: he will cough oft & vehemently, and euer in his coughing he will cast little reddish lumps out of his mouth; he will decay much of his flesh, and yet eate his meate with more gredinesse then when he was sound; and when he cougheth he will cough with more ease and clearenesse then if his lungs were but onely broken. The cure whereof, according to the practise of our ordinary English Farriers is, to giue the horse diuers mornings together a pint of strong vinegar warmed, or else as much of mans vrine, with halfe so much hogs grease brewd warme together; but the more ancient Farriers take a good quantity of the iuice of purslaine mixt with the oyle of roses, adding thereunto a little *Tragacanthum* which hath before bene layd to steep in goates milke, or for want thereof in barley or oaten milke strained from the corne; and giue him a pint thereof euery morning for seuen dayes together. This medicine is but onely to ripen and breake the impostume, which you shall know if it haue done; because when the sore is broken, his breath will stinke exceedingly: then shall you giue him for other seuen dayes this drinke. Take of the roote called *Coffus* two ounces, and of *Cassia* or *Cinamon* three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few raisins, and giue it him to drinke

drinke with a pint of malmsey: Others vse to take of *Frankinsence*, and *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces beaten into fine powder, and giue the horse two or three spoonfull thereof with a pint of malmsey. Others take of vnburnt brimstone, two ounces, of *Aristolochia* one ounce and a halfe beaten to powder, and giue the horse that with a pint of malmsey.

CHAP. 47.

Of shortnesse of breath or purfinesse.

THIS disease of short breath or purfinesse, may come two seuerall wayes, that is naturally, or accidentally: naturally as by the straightnesse of his conduits which conuey his breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed vp with fat, force stoppings & obstructions in his windpipe, & thereby makes his lungs labour & worke painfully. Accidentally as by hasty running after drinking, or vpon a full stomacke, by which, humours are compelled to descend downe into the throate and lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the breath: The signes of this disease are a continuall panting and heauing of his body without any coughing, great heate of breath at his nostrhels, and a squeesing or drawing in of his nose when he breatheth; besides, a coueting to hold out his head whilest he fetcheth his winde. The cure, according to the opinion of some of our best Farriers, is to giue him in his prouender the kynels of grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must giue them plentifully. The warme blood of a sucking pigge is excellent good also. Other Farriers vse to take *Venus-haire*, *Ireos*, *Ash-keyes*, *Licoras*, *Fennegreeke*

greek, and Raisins, of each a dram and an halfe, pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettleseede, Aristolochia and Coloquin-tida, of each two drammes, Algaristum, one dramme and an halfe, hony two pound, dissolue them with water wherein licoras hath bene sodden, and giue him one pint euery morning for three or foure mornings. Others vse to take Malline or Longwort & make a powder thereof, and giue two spoonefull thereof with a pint of running water, or else powder of Gentian in the foresayd manner, and do it for diuers mornings. Others vse to take of nutmegs, cloues, Galin-gale, graines of Paradise, of each three drammes, Care-away seede and Fenugreece, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and halfe an ounce of Licoras; beate them all into fine powder, then put two or three spoonefull thereof to a pint of white wine, and the yolkes of foure egges, and giue it the horse to drinke: then tye his head vp high to the racke for an houre after: that done, either ride him or walke him vp and downe gently, and keepe him fasting foure or fiue howres after at the least: the next day turne him to grasse and he will do well. There be other which vse to let the horse blood in the necke veine, and then giue him this drinke. Take of wine and oyle of each a pint, of Frankinsence halfe an ounce, and of the iuice of Horehound halfe a pint; mixe them well together, and giue them to drinke. Others vse to giue him onely somewhat more then a pint of hony, hogges grease and butter molten together, and let him drinke it luke warme. Egges made soft in vinegar, as is shewed in the chapter of the dry cough, is excellent for this shortnesse of breath, so you giue the egges encreasing, that is, the first day one, the second three, and the

the third five; and withall to powre a little oyle and wine into his nosthrels, is very good also. There be other Farriers which vse to take a *Snake* and cut off her head and taile, and then take out the guts and entrails, boyle the rest in water till the bone part from the flesh: then cast the bone away, and giue euery third day of this decoction more then a pint till you haue spent three snakes; and this is excellent good for the dry cough also. Now the last and best medicine for this shortnesse of breath (for indeede in this case I do not affect much physicking) is onely to take anise seeds, licoras, and sugar candy, all beaten into very fine powder; and take foure spoonfull thereof and brew it well with a pint of white wine, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle: and vse this euer after your horses trauell, and a day before he is trauelled.

CHAP. 48.

Of the broken winded or Pursicke Horse.

THis disease of broken winded, I haue euer since I first began to know either horse or horse-leachcraft, very much disputed with my selfe, and for many yeares did constantly hold (as still I do) that in truth there is no such disease; only this I found by dayly experience, that by ouer hasty or sudden running of a fat horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the stable with no exercise and foule foode, that thereby grosse and thicke humours may be drawne downe into the horses body so abundantly, that cleauing hard to the hollow places of the lungs, and stopping vp the wind-pipes, the wind may be so kept in, that it may onely haue his resort backward,

ward, and not vpward, filling the guts, and taking from the body great part of its strength and liue-
lihood; which if from the corruption of our old inuen-
tions, we call broken winded, then I must needs con-
fesse, that I haue seene many broken winded horses.
The signes of which disease are these, much and vio-
lent beating of his flanks, especially drawing vp of
his belly vpward; great opening and rising of his no-
sthrels, and a continuall swift going to and fro of his
tuell; besides, it is euer accompanied with a dry
and hollow cough. The cure, I must needs say in so
great an extremity (for it is the worst of all the euils
of the lungs which are before spoken of) is most
desperate; but the preseruations and helps, both to
continue the horses health and his dayly seruice, are
very many, as namely (according to the opinion of
the ancient Farriers) to purge your horse by giuing
him this drinke. Take maiden haire, of *Ireos*, of *Asbe*,
of *Licoras*, of *Fenugreeke*, of *Basnis*, of each halfe an
ounce, of *Cardannum*, of pepper, of bitter almonds,
of *Baurach*, of each two ounces, of nettle seed, and of
Aristolochia, of each two ounces; boile them altogether
in a sufficient quantity of water; and in that decocti-
on dissolue halfe an ounce of *Agaricke*, & 2. ounces of
Coloquintida, together with 2. pound of hony, & giue
him a pint & a halfe of this at a time for, at least, a week
together; and if the medicine chance at any time to
proue too thicke, you shall make it thin with water,
wherein licoras hath bene sodden; and some Farriers
also besides this medicine, will with a hot yron draw
the flanks of the horse to restrain their beating, and
slit the horses nosthrels to giue the wind more liber-
ty; but I do not affect either the one or the other: the
best

best diet for a horse in this case, is grasse in Summer, & hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There be other Farriers which for this infirmity hold, that to giue the horse 3. or 4. daies together sodden wheat, and now & then a quart of new sweet wine, or other good wine, mixt with licoras water, is a certaine remedy. There be other Farriers which for this disease take the guts of a hedgehogge, and hang them in a warme ouen till they be dry, so that a may make powder of them: then giue your horse 2. or 3. spoonfull thereof with a pint of wine or strong ale: then the rest mixe with anise seeds, licoras, & sweet butter, & make round balles or pills thereof, & giue the horse 2. or 3. after his drinke and so let him fast at least 2 howres after. Now when at any time you giue him any prouender, be sure to wash it in ale or beere; then take *Comin*, *Anise seeds*, *Licoras* and *Sentmarie* of each like quantity; make them (being mixed together) into fine powder, & strew two spoonful therof vpon the prouender being being wet. This physicke must be vsed for a fortnight at the least. Others vse to take of cloues & nutmegs 3. drams, of *galingale* & *Cardomonum*, 3. drams, of foot, of bay seeds, & comin, of each 3. drams, & make them into fine powder, & put it into white wine, being tempered with a little saffron: then put to so many yolkes of egges as may coueruaile the other quantity: then mixe them with water, wherein licoras hath bene sodden, making it so thin that the horse may drink it, and after he hath drunk the quantity of a pint & halfe of this drinke, tye vp his head to the racke, & let him so stand at least an howre after, that the drinke may descend into his guts: then walke him gently abroad, that the medicine may worke, and in any case giue him no water

for foure and twenty houres after: the next morning giue him some grasse to eate, and the branches of willow or fallow, which will coole the heate of the position. Now there bee other Farriers which take of *Paunces*, *Long wort*, *Mayden-haire*, the crops of nettles, *Carduus benedictus*, hearbe *Fluetin*, the rootes of dragons bruised, the roots of *Elecampana* bruised, of water hempe, of peniriall, of light wort, of *Angelica*, of each of these a good handfull, or so many of these as you can conueniently get; bruise them, and lay them all night in two or three gallons of water, and giue it a boyle in the morning, and let the horse drinke thereof as much luke warme as hee will; then after this drink, giue him a pretty quantity of sodden wheat: vse this dyet for a weeke or more at the least: and then if the season be fit, put him to grasse. This cure is of great reputation, and thought to helpe when all other faileth: for mine owne part I with euery man to iudge it by the practise.

There be others which onely for nine or ten dayes together, will giue their horse water, wherein licoras hath bene sodden, mixt with wine, and hold it a most soueraigne helpe. There be others which will onely giue new milke from the cow; but I despaire in that cure, because milke being onely flegmatike, flegme is the onely substance of this disease. Other Farriers vse to keep the horse fasting foure & twenty howres, then take a quart of ale, a quarter of an ounce of Fenugreeke, halfe a quarter of bayes, of the greene barke of Elder trees, of sugarcandy, of water cresses, of redde mints, of redde fennell, of haw-tree leaues, and of prin-rose leaues, of each halfe an ounce, the whites of sixe egges; beate these in a mortar and seeth them
in

in the ale, giue it him to drinke : then let him fast after twelue howres : then giue him meate and prouender inough, yet but little drinke. Others vse to giue him wet hay and moderate trauell : then take twenty egges, and steepe them in vinegar foure and twenty howres, giuing the horse two euery morning, and after the egges are spent, a pottell of new milke from the cow. Now there be other Farriers which onely will dissolue in vinegar fiftene egges, and giue the horse the first day three, the second day fise, and the third seuen, and hold it a good helpe. Others will take an ounce of frankinsence, two ounces of brimstone, & mixe it with a pint of wine, and halfe a pint of hony. Others will take *Sal-niter*, burnt with the powder of pitch, and giue it with the same quantity of wine and hony. Others will onely giue *Sal-niter* mingled with his meate, provided alwayes, that in euery cure you keepe your horse from cold and labour; and dayly chafe his head with oyle and wine.

CHAP. 49.

Of the dry Malady or Consumption.

THis disease of the dry malady, or as the ancient Farriers terme it, a generall consumption, is nothing but a meere exulceration of the lungs, proceeding from a cankerous, fretting and gnawing humour ingendred by cold and surfaite, which descending from the head, sickneth & corrodeeth the lungs. Some of our ignorant Farriers will call it the mourning of the chine; but they are thus farre forth deceiued: that the mourning of the chine doth euer cast some filthy matter at the nose, and the dry malady neuer casteth forth

forth any thing. The signes to know this dry malady or consumption are these: his flesh and strong estate of body will consume and waste away, his belly will be gaunt, his backe bone hidde, and his skin so stretched or shrunke vp, that if you strike on him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a tabor; his haire will hardly shed; and either he will vtterly forsake his meate, or the meate he eateth will not digest, prosper, or breede any flesh on his backe; he will offer to cough but cannot, except in a weake maner, as though he had eaten small bones; & truly according to the opinion of others, so I find by practise, that it is incurable; yet that a horse may be long preserued to do much seruice, I haue found it by these helpes. First, to purge his head with such fumes and pills as are good for the glaunders, which you may finde in the chapter of purgations: then to giue him cole-worts small chopt, with his prouender, & now & then the blood of a sucking pigge warme. There be others that instead of the blood, will giue either the iuyce of leekes mixt' with oyle and wine, or else wine and frankincense, or sallet oyle and the iuice of rue mixt together; but in my conceit, the best cure is to purge his body cleane with comfortable and gentle scourings; and then to be suffered to runne to grasse, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no question but he must necessarily end or mend; for languish long he cannot.

CHAP. 50.

Of the Consumption of the flesh.

THis disease which we call the Consumption of the flesh, is an vnnaturall or generall dislike or falling away of the whole body, or, as we terme it, the wasting of the flesh; which proceedeth from diuers grounds, as namely, from inward surfaits, either by naughty foode, or ill dyet, or from vncleane, moist and stinking lodging; but especially from disorderly labour, as by taking great and sudden colds after violent heate, or such likes; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signes whereof are these: first, an vnnaturall and causelesse leanness, a dry and hard skinne cleauing fast to his sides, want of stomacke, or appetite to his meate, a falling away of his fillets, and a generall consumption both of his buttockes and shoulders. The cure whereof, according to the ancients, is to take a sheeps head vnfleayed, and boyle it in a gallon and a halfe of ale, or running water, vntill the flesh be consumed from the bones; then straine it through a cloath, and put thereto of sugar halfe a pound, of cinamon one ounce, of conserue of roses, of barbaries, & of cherries, of each one ounces; mingle them together, and giue the horse every morning a quart thereof luke warme, till two sheeps heades bee spent; and after euery time he drinketh, let him be gently walked or ridden vp and downe according to his strength, that is, if the weather be warme, abroad; if it be cold and windy, then in the stable or some close house, suffering him neither to eate nor drinke, for two howres after his medicine;

P

and

and from cold water you shall keepe him the space of fiftene dayes. Now for his ordinary foode or prouender, you shall repute that best which he eateth best whatsoeuer it be; and that you shall giue by little and little, and not any grosse, or great quantity at once, because the abundance and glut of food taketh away both the appetite and nutriment which should proceede from wholesome feeding.

CHAP. XI.

How to make a leane Horse fat.

BESIDES this generall consumption of a horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether proceedeth from sicknesse, there is also another consumption or want of flesh which proceedeth from neltnesse, tendernesse, freenesse of spirit, and the clymate vnder which the horse is bred; as namely when a horse that is bred in a warme clymate, comes to liue in a cold, or when a horse that is bred vpon a fruitfull & rich soile, comes to liue in a barren and dry place. In any of these cases the horse will be leane without any apparant signe of griefe or disease, which to recouer there be many receits and medicines, as namely: the ancient Farriers did vse when a horse either grew leane without sicknesse or wound, or any knowne distemperature, to take a quarter of a pecke of beanes, and boyle them in two gallons of water till they swell or burst, then to mixe with them a pecke of wheate branne, and so to giue it the horse in maner of a mash: or in stead of prouender: for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take cole-worts, and hauing sodden them, mixe them with wheat bran
and

and salt, and giue them in stead of prouender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoyse being well sodden, (their heades, tayles, bones, and feete, being reiected) and giuing it the horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly: or if you mixe the flesha of the Tortoyse so sodden with your horses prouender, that is good also; But as the simples are *Italian*, and not English, so for mine owne part, I referre the vse rather to them then to my country men. There be others which vse to fat vp their horses by giuing them a certaine graine which we call bucke, in the same manner as we giue oates or pease. There be others which to fat a horse, will giue him onely parched wheat, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary prouender alwayes some wheate branne; and be exceeding carefull that the horse be cleane drest, well rubbed, & soft littered: for without such cleanly keeping there is no meate will enioy or do good vpon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once and not surfaited. There be other Farriers which to feede vp a leane horse, will take *Sage*, *Sauin*, *Bay-berries*, *Earth-nuts*, *Beares grease* to drinke with a quart of wine. Others will giue the entrailes of a Barbel or a Tench with white wine. Others will giue new hot drasse, and new branne, and twenty hard roasted egges, the shels being pulled off, then bruisse them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of salt; then mixe all together, and giue a good quantity thereof to the horse at morne, noone, and euening for his prouender; and once a day, (which would be at high noone) giue him a quart or three pints of strong ale; and when the horse beginneth to be gluttet vpon this meate, then giue him dryed oates:

if he be gluttet vpon that, then giue him bread, if he leaue his bread, giue him malt or any graine that he will eate with a good appetite, obseruing euer to keepe the horse very warme; and with this dyet in foureteene dayes, the leanest horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other Farriers which to make a horse fat, wil take a quart of wine, and halfe an ounce of brimstone finely beaten with a raw egge, and a peny waight of the powder of *Myrre*; mixe all together and giue it the horse to drinke many mornings together. Others will take three-leaued grasse, halfe greene and halfe dry, and giue it to the horse in stead of hay, by little at once; and it will fat suddenly, onely it will breed much ranke bloud. Other Farriers vse to take two peny worth of pepper, and as much saffron, anise seeds, and turmericke, a peny worth of long pepper, two peny worth of treacle, a peny worth of licoras, a good quantity of peniryall and archangell; giue the horse these with the yolks of egges in milke to drinke. Others take wheat made cleane, and sod with salt and lard dried in the sunne, & giue it twice a day before each watering. Others giue a pint of good wine with a raw egge beaten, & a quantity of brimstone & *Mirre* beaten to powder. Others strong ale, *Myrre*, sallet oyle and twenty graines of white pepper; and in stead of the ale, you may take the decoction, that is, the water wherein sage & rue hath bene sodden, & it will soone make the horse fat. Others take sodden beanes well bruised and sprinkled with salt, adding to the water foure times so much beane flowre or wheat bran, and giue that to the horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the bloud of a sucking pigge, made luke warme, or wine with the iuyce of featherseaw,

or an ounce of sulphur, and a peny waight of *Myrr*, well made into powder, together with a new layed egge, will raise vp a horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or barley boyled till it burst, either will fat a horse. But the best way of fasting a horse (for most of the wayes before prescribed, are not to breede fat that will continue) is first to giue your horse three mornings together, a pint of sweete wine, and two spoonefull of *Diapente* brewed together: for that drinke will take away all infection and sicknesse from the inward parts: then to feed him well with prouender at least foure times a day, that is, after his water in the morning, after his water at noone, after his water in the euening, and after his water at nine of the clocke at night. Now you shall not let his prouender be all of one sort, but euery meale, if it may be, change, as thus: if in the morning you giue him oates, at noone you shall giue him bread, at euening beanes or pease mixt with wheat branne, and at night sodden barley, and so forth; and euer obserue of what food he eateth best, of that let him haue the greatest plenty, and there is no question but he will in very short space grow fat, sound, and full of spirit without either mislike or sicknesse.

CHAP. 52.

Of the Breast-paine, or griesse in the breast.

THOUGH most of our Farriers are not curious to vnderstand of this disease, because it is not so common as others; yet both my selfe and others find, it is a disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the horse with death. The *Italians* call it *Graxeza di petto*,

P 3.

and

and it proceedeth from the superfluity of blood, and other grosse humors, which being dissolved by some extreme and disorderly heate, resorteth downward to the breast, and paineth the horse extremely that he can hardly go. The signes are a stiffe, staggering and weake going with his forelegges; and he can very hardly, or not at al, bow down his head to the ground, either to eate or to drink, and will groane much when he doth either the one or the other. The cure is first to bathe all his breast and forebootes with the oyle of *Peter*; and if that do not help him, within three or foure dayes, then to let him blood on both his breast veines in the ordinary place, and then put in a rowell either of haire, corke, horne, or leather, of all which, and the maner of rowelling, you shall reade in a more particular chapter hereafter in the booke of Surgery. Now there be other Farriers which for this sicknesse will first giue the horse an inward drench, as namely, a pint of sweet wine, and two spoonfull of diapente: then bathe all his breast and legges with wine and oyle mingled together, and in some tenne or twelue dayes it will take away the griefe.

CHAP. 53.

Of the sicknesse of the heart, called the Anticor.

THis sicknesse of the heart, which by the ancient Farriers is called *Anticor*, as much as to say, against or contrary to the heart, is a dangerous & mortall sicknesse, proceeding from the great abundance of blood which is bredde by too curious and proud keeping, where the horse hath much meate, and little
or

or no labor, as for the most part, your geldings of price haue, which running all the Summer at grasse, do nothing but gather their own food, and such like, where the maisters too much loue and tenderneffe, is the meanes to bring the horse to his death, as we find daily in our practise: for when such naughty and corrupt blood is gathered, it resorteth to the inward parts, and so suffocateth the heart. The signes whereof are, the horse will many times haue a small swelling rise at the bottome of the breast, which swelling will encrease and rise vpward, euen to the top of the necke of the horse, and then most assuredly it kills the horse; he will also hang his head either downe to the manger, or downe to the ground, forsaking his food, and groaning with much painfullnesse. This disease is of many ignorant Smiths, taken somtimes for the yellowes, and sometimes for the staggers; but you shall know that it is not so by these obseruations. First, neither about the whites of his eyes, nor the inside of his lips, shall you perceiue any apparant yellowes, and so then it cannot be the yellowes; nor will he haue any great swelling about his eyes, nor dizzinesse in his head before he be at the poynt of death; and so consequently it cannot be the staggers. The cure thereof is twofold: the first a preuention or preseruatiue before the disease come: the second a remedy after the disease is apparant. For the preuention or preseruatiue, you shall obserue that if your horse liue idly, either at grasse or in the stable, and withall grow very fat, which fattenesse is neuer vnaccompanied with corruptnesse, that then you sayle not to let him blood in the necke veine before you turn him to grasse, or before you put him to feede in the stable; and likewise let him blood

two or three moneths after, when you see he is seddey and at each time of letting blood, you must make your quantity according to the goodnesse of the blood: for if the blood be blacke and thicke, which is a signe of inflammation and corruption, you shal take the more; if it be pure, red, and thin, which is a signe of strength and healthfulnesse, you shall take little, or none at all. There be others which vse for this prevention, to giue the horse a scouring or purgation of malmsey, oyle, and sugarcandy, the making and vse whereof you shal reade in the chapter of purgation; & this would be giuen immediatly when you put your horse to feede, and as soone as you see his skin full swolne with fatnesse.

Now for the remedy, when this disease shall be apparant, you shall let him blood on both his plat veines, or if the Smiths skill will not extend so farre, then you shall let the horse blood on the necke veine, and that he bleede abundantly: then you shall giue him this drinke. Take a quart of malmsey, and put thereunto halfe a quarterne of sugar, and two ounces of cinamon beaten to powder, and being made luke warme, giue it the horse to drinke: then keepe him very warme in the stable, stuffing him round about with soft wisps very close, especially about the stomacke, least any winde do annoy him: and let his ordinary drinke be warme mashes of malt and water, & his foode only that, whatsoeuer it be, which he eateth with the best stomacke. Now if you see any swelling to appeare, whether it be soft or hard, then besides letting him blood, you shall strike the swelling in diuers places with a fleame or launcet, that the corruption may issue forth; and then annoynt it with hogges grease

grease made warme: for that will either expell it, or bring it to a head, especially if the swelling be kept exceeding warme. There be other Farriers which for this dis ease, vse first to let the horse blood, as is aforesayd, and then to giue him a quart of malmsey, well brewed with three spoonfull of the powder called *Diapente*; and if the swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but hay well sodden in old vrine; and then to keepe the same dyet as is aforesayd. Others vse after the letting of blood, to giue the horse no drinke, but onely tenne or twelue spoonefull of that water which is called Doctor *Stephens* water, and is not vnknown to any Apothecary; and then for the rest of the cure to proceede in all things as is before specified, & questionlesse I haue seene strange effects of this practise.

CHAP. 54.
Of tired Horses.

SINCE wee are thus farre proceeded into the inward and vitall parts of a horses body, it is not amisse to speake something of the tiring of horses, and of the remedies for the same; because when a horse is truly tyred (as by ouer extreme labour) it is questionlesse that all his vitall parts are made sicke and feebled. For to tell you in more plainesse what tiring is, it is when a horse by extreme & vncessant labour, hath all his inward and vitall powers which should accompany & reioyce the heart, expelled and driuen outward to the outward parts, & lesse deseruing members, leauing the heart forlorne and sicke, insomuch that a generall and cold faintnesse

Q

spreadeth

spreadeth ouer the whole body and weakneth it, in such sort that it can endure no further trauell, till those lively heates, faculties, and powers, be brought vnto their naturall and true places backe againe, and made to giue comfort to the heart whom their losse sickned. Now for the tiring of horses, though in truth it proceedeth from no other cause but this before spoken; yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, we say euery horse that giueth ouer his labour is tyred, you shall vnderstand that such giuing ouer may proceede from foure causes: the first from inward sicknesse, the second from some wound receiued, either of body or limbe; the third from dulnesse of spirit, cowardlinesse or restinesse; and the fourth from most extreme labour and trauell, which is true tirednesse indeede. Now for the first, which is inward sicknesse, you shall looke into the generall signes of euery disease, and if you finde any of those signes to be apparant, you shall straight conclude vpon that disease, & taking away the cause thereof, haue no doubt but the effects of his tiring will vanish with the same. For the second, which is by some wound receiued, as by cutting or dismembring the sinewes, ligaments, or muscles, or by straining or stooming any bone or ioynt, or by pricking in shooing, or striking nayle, yron, stub, or thorne into the sole of the horses foote, and such like. Sith the first is apparant to the eye, by disioyning the skinne, the other by halting, you shall take a suruey of your horse, and finding any of them apparant, looke what the grieve is, repaire to the latter part of this booke, which intreateth of surgery; and finding it there, vse the meanes prescribed, and the tiring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which

is dulnesse of spirit, cowardlinesse or restinesse, you shall finde them by these signes : if he haue no apparant signe either of inward sicknes or outward grieve, neither sweateth much, nor sheweth any great alteration of countenance; yet notwithstanding tirth and refuseth reasonable labour, then such tiring proceedeth from dulnesse of spirite; but if after indifferent long trauell the horse tire, and then the man descending from his backe, the horse runne or trot away, as though he were not tired; the man then mounting againe, the horse viterly refuse to go forward, such tiring proceedeth from cowardlinesse; but if a horse within one, two, or three miles riding, being temperately vsed, and being neither put to any tryall of his strength, nor, as it were, scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tire, it proceedeth onely from restinesse and ill conditions. Then for the cure of any of all these, proceeding from dulnesse, fearefulnesse, and vnwillingnesse, you shall take ordinary window glasse, and beate it into fine powder: then take vp the skinne of each side the spurre veine betweene your finger and your thumbe, and with a fine naule or bodkin, make diuers small holes through the skinne, then rubbe glasse powder very hard into those holes; which done, mount his backe, and do but offer to touch his sides with your heeles, and be sure if he haue life in him, he will go forward, the greatest feare being that he will still but go too fast: but after your journey is ended, and your allighted, you must not faile (because this powder of glasse will corrode and rot his sides) to annoynt both the sore places with the powder of Iet and turpentine mixt together: for that will draw out the venom, and heale

his sides againe. There be others which vse when a horse tireth thus through dull cowardlinesse or restinesse, to thrust a burning brand or yron into his buttockes, or to bring bottels of blazing straw about his eares; there is neither of the cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tired horse, which tireth through a naturall faintnesse, drawne from exceeding labour: the signes to know it being long trauel, much sweat, and willingnesse of courage during his strength: the cure thereof according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to powre oyle and vinegar into his nostrhels, and to giue him the drinke of the pes beades mentioned in the chapter of the consumption of the flesh, being the fiftieth chapter of this booke; and to bathe his legges with a comfortable bath, of which you shal finde choyce in the chapter of bathes: or else charge them with this charge. Take of bole armony, and of wheate flowre, of each halfe a pound, and a little rosen beaten into fine powder, and a quart of strong vinegar; mingle them well together, and couer all his legs therewith; & then if it be in Summer, turne him to grasse, and he will recouer his wearinesse. Others vse to take a slice of fresh beefe, hauing steeped it in vinegar, lappe it about your bit or snaffe, and hauing made it fast with a threed, ride your horse therewith and he will hardly tire; yet after your journey is ended, be sure to giue your horse rest, much warmth and good feeding, that is, warme mashes and store of prouender, or else he will be the worse whilest he liueth.

Now if it be so that your horse tire in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before

before the value of your horse, and that you must seeke vnnaturall meanes to controlle nature. In this case you shall take (where the powder of glasse before spoken of cannot be had) three or foure round pibble stones, and put them into one of his eares; and then knit the eare that the stones fall not out, and the noyse of thole stones will make the horse go after he is vtterly tyred; but if that faile, you shal with a knife make a hole in the flappe of the horses eare, and thrust a long rough sticke full of nicks through the same; and euer as the horse slackes his pace, so saw and fret the sticke vp and downe in the hole, and be sure whilest he hath any lite he will not leaue going. Many other torments there are which be needlesse to rehearse, onely this is my most generall aduice, if at any time you tire your horse, to take of old vrine a quart, of salt peter three ounces, boile them well together, and bathe all the horses foure legges in the same, and without question it will bring to the sinewes their naturall strength and nimblenese; and for other defects warme and good keeping will cure them. And although some of our Northerne Farriers do hold that oaten dough will preuent tiring, yet I haue not approued it so, because I neuer could get any horse that would eate it, the dough would so sticke and clambe in the horses mouth: therefore I hold the cures already recited to be fully sufficient.

CHAP. 55.

*Of the diseases of the stomacke, and first of
the loathing of meate.*

THIS disease of the loathing of meate, is taken two wayes, the one a forsaking of meate, as when a horses mouth either through the inflammation of his stomacke, doth break out into blisters, or such like venemous sores: or when he hath the lampas, gigges, woolfes teeth, and such like. The cure of all which you shall readily find in the second part of this booke which treateth of surgery: the other a dislike of his meate through the intemperature of his stomacke, being either too hot, as proceeding either from ranknesse of blood, or extremity of trauell; as you may perceiue by dayly experience, when a horse is set vp in the stable very hot, and meate instantly giuen him, it is all thing to nothing but he will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I did euer hate the noone-tide bayting of horses, because mens iourneys commonly crauing haste, the horse cannot take such an naturall cooling as he ought before his meate, and thereby breeds much sicknesse & disease: for meate giuen presently after trauell when a horse is hot, is the mother of all infirmity: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the stomacke being too cold, as being caused by some naturall defect. Now if it proceede from heate onely, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his meate, or the extreme heate of his mouth and breath: then to coole his stomacke againe, you shall either wash his tongue with vinegar, or giue him to drinke cold water mingled with oyle
and

and vinegar. There be other Farriers which vse to giue this drinke: take of milke and wine, of each one pint, & put therunto of *Mel Rosatum* 3. ounces, and hauing washed his mouth with vinegar & salt, giue him the drink luke warme with a horne. But if the loathing of his meate proceede from the coldnesse of his stomacke, which onely is knowne by the standing vp and staring of his haire: then by the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall giue him wine & oyle mixt together diuers mornings to drinke; but others of our late Farriers giue wine, oyle, rue, and sage boyled together by a quart at a time to drinke. Others to the former compounds will adde white pepper & *Myrre*. Others vse to giue the horse onions pild and chopt, and *Rocket* seede bruised and boyled in wine. Others vse to mixe wine with the bloud of a sow pigge. Now to conclude, for the generall forsaking or loathing of meate, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the stomacke, there is nothing better then the greene blades of corne (especially wheate) being giuen in a good quantiry, and that the time of the year serue for the gathering thereof. Others in stead thereof, will giue the horse sweet wine and the seedes of *Gith* mixt together, or else sweet wine and garlike well pild and stamp, being a long time brewd together.

CHAP. 56.

Of the casting out of a Horses drinke.

THE ancient Farriers, especially the *Italians*, constantly do affirme, that a horse may haue such a paulsey, proceeding from the coldnesse of his stomacke, and may make him vnable to retaine and keepe

keepe his drinke, but that many times he will vomit and cast it vp againe: for mine owne part, from those causes I haue not seene such effects, yet from other causes, as from cold in the head, where the rheume binding about the roots and kirkels of the tongue, hath, as it were, strangled and made straight the passages to the stomacke; there I haue many times seene a horse cast his water that he drunke, in very abundant sort backe againe through his nostrils, & sometimes strue with great earnestnesse to drinke, but could not at all. The signes of both (from which cause sooner it proceede) is onely the casting vp of his drinke or water; and the cure thereof is onely to giue him cordiall and warme drinckes, as is malmsey, cinamon, anise seedes, and cloues, well brewd and mixt together, and to annoynt his breast and vnder his shoulders, with either the oyle of Cypresse, oyle of Spike, or the oyle of pepper; and to purge his head with fumes or pilles, such as will force him to neede, of which you may see store in a chapter following: for such fumigation ioyning with these hot oyles, will soone dissolue the tumors.

CHAP. 57.

Of surfaiting with glut of prouender.

THere is not any disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horse, then this surfaite which is taken by the glut of prouender; it cometh most commonly by keeping the horse extreme sharpe or hungry, as either by long trauell or long standing empty; & then in his height of greedinesse, giuing him such superabundance of meate, that his

his stomacke wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driuen into an infinite great paine and extremity. The signes are great weaknesse and feeblenesse in the horses limbes, so that he can hardly stand, but lyeth downe oft, and being downe, walloweth and tumbleth vp and downe as if he had the bots.

The cure thereof according to the ordinary practise of our common Farriers, is to take a halfe penny worth of blacke sope, and a quart of new milke, and as much sweete butter as sope; and hauing on a chafing dish and coales, mixt them together, giue it the horse to drinke: this will cleanse the horses stomacke, and bring it to its strength againe.

But the ancient Farriers did vse first, to let the horse blood in the necke veine, (because euery surfeit breedes distemperature in the blood) then trot the horse vp and downe an howre or more; and if he cannot stale draw out his yard and wash it with white wine made luke warme, and thrust into his yard either a clove of garlick or a little oyle of camomill, with a peece of small waxe candle. If he cannot dung, first with your hand rake his fundament, and then giue him a glister, of which you shall read hereafter: when his glister is receiued you shall walke him vp and downe till hee haue emptyed his belly, then set him vp and keepe him hungry the space of two or three dayes, obseruing euer to sprinkle the hay hee eateth with a little water, and let his drinke be warme water and branne made mash-wise; after he hath drunke the drinke let him eate the branne if he please, but from other prouender keep him fasting

at least tenne dayes. There be other Farriers that in this case, vse onely to take a quart of beere or ale, and two peny worth of sallet oyle, and as much dragon water, a peny worth of treacles make all these warme vpon the coales, then put in an ounce of cinnamon, anise seedes, and eloues, all beaten together, and so giue it the horse luke warme to drinke. All these receipts are exceeding good: yet for mine owne part, and many of the best Farriers confirme the same, there is nothing better for this dis ease, then moderate exercise, much fasting, and once in foure or fise dayes a pint of sweete wine, with two spoonfull of the powder Diapente.

CHAP. 58.

*Of foundring in the body, being a surfaite
got either by Meate, Drinke, or
Labour.*

THIS disease of foundring in the body, is of all surfaits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident vnto horses that are dayly trauelled; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much prouender suddenly after labour, the horse being then, as it were, panting hot (as we may dayly see vnskillfull horsemen do at this day) whereby the meate which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth euill and grosse humours, which by little & little spreading themselves through the members, do at the length oppresse, & almost confound the whole body, absolutely taking away from him al his strength, insomuch that he can neither go nor bow his ioynts, nor being layd, is able to rise againe: besides, it taketh
away

away from him his instrumentall powers, as the office both of vrine and excrements, which cannot be performed but with extreme paine. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather leane, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to drinke too much in his trauell being very hot, whereby the grease being suddenly cooled, it doth clappe about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulnesse, that without speedy euacuation, there can be no hope but of death onely. Now whereas some Farriers do hold that this foundring in the body, should be no other then the foundring in the legges, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of humours which resort downeward, they are much deceiued: for it is not as they hold a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of corporall and substantiall euils, which by an vnnaturall accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name Foundring, as if it were drawne from the French word *Fundu*, signifying melting, truly I thinke it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to entitle the disease, then any coherence it hath with the name it beareth. For mine owne part, I am of opinion that this disease which we call foundring in the body, doth not onely proceede from the causes aforelayd, but also and most oftest by sudden washing horses in the winter season, when they are extreme fat and hot with instant trauell, where the cold vapour of the water striking into the body, doth not onely astonish the inward and vitall parts, but also freezeth vp the skin, and maketh the blood to leese his office. Now the signes to know this disease, are holding downe of

his head, staring vp of his haire, coughing, staggering behinde, trembling after water, dislike of his meate; leannesse, stiffe going, disability to rise when he is downe: and to conclude, which is the chiefeft signe of all other, his belly will be clung vp to his backe, and his backe rising vp like a Camell. The cure according to the opinion of the Farriers, is first to rake his fundament, and then to giue him a glister: which done, and that the horses belly is emptyed, then take of malmsey a quart, of sugar halfe a quarterne, of cinnamon halfe an ounce, of licoras and anise seedes, of each two spoonefull beaten into fine powder, which being put into the malmsey, warme them together at the fire so that the hony may be molten, then giue it the horse luke warme to drinke: which done, walke him vp and downe either in the warme stable or some warme roade the space of an howre; then let him stand on the bit fasting two howres more, onely let him be warme clothed, slopt, and littered; & when you giue him hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and let his prouender be very cleane sifted from dust, and giuen by a little at once; and let his drinke be warme mashes of malt and water. Now when you see him recouer and get a little strength, you shall then let him bloud in the necke veine, and once a day perfume him with Frankinsence to make him neese, and vse to giue him exercise abroad when the wether is warme, and in the house when the weather is stormy.

Now there be other Farriers which vse for this disease to take a halfe peny worth of garlick, two peny worth of the powder of pepper, two peny worth of the powder of ginger, two peny worth of graines

graines bruised, and put all these into a pottell of strong ale, and giue it the horse to drinke by a quart at a time, dyetting and ordering him as is aforesayd; and when he getteth strength either let him bloud in the necke veine, or the spurre veines, or on both; to conclude, there is no drinke nor dyet which is comfortable, but is most soueraigne and good for this infirmity.

CHAP. 59.

*Of the greedy Worme or hungry Euill
in Horses.*

THIS hungry Euill is a disease more common then found out by our Farriers, because the most of our horse-maisters out of great ignorance, hold it a speciall vertue to see a horse eat eagerly, whereas indeede this ouer-hasty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and sicknesse of the inward parts; and this disease is none other then an insatiate and greedy eating, contrary to nature and old custome; and for the most part, it followeth some extreme great emptinesse or want of foode, the beast being euen at the pinch, and ready to bee chappe-falne. There bee some Farriers which suppose that it proceedeth from some extreame cold, outwardly taken by traueling in cold and barraine places, as in the frost and snow, where the outward cold maketh the stomacke cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The signes are onely an alteration or change in the horses feeding, hauing lost all temperance; and

R. 3 snatching.

snatching and chopping at his meate as if he would deuoure the manger. The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first to comfort his stomacke by giuing him great slices of white bread toasted at the fire and steeped in muscadine, or else bread vntoasted & steeped in wine, & then to let him drink wheat flowre and wine brewed together. There be others which vse to knead stiffe cakes of wheate flowre and wine, and to feede the horse therewith. Others vse to make him bread of pine-tree nuts and wine knoden together: or else common earth and wine mingled together; but for mine owne part, I hold nothing better then moderately feeding the horse many times in the day with wholesome beane bread, well baked, or oates well dried and sifted.

CHAP. 60.

Of the diseases of the Liuer in generall, and first of the inflammation thereof.

THere is no question but the liuer of a horse is subiect to as many diseases as either the liuer of a man or any other creature, onely through the ignorance of our common Farriers (who make all inward diseases one sicknesse) the true ground, and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let passe, and many times poysoned with false potions; but truth it is, that the liuer sometimes by the intemperatenesse thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by meanes of euill humors, as choler or fleame ouerflowing in the same, heate ingendring choler, and coldnesse fleame, the liuer is subiect to many sicknesses, and is diuersly payned, as
by

by inflammation, apostumation or vicer, or by obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs; or lastly, by the consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signes to know if the disease proceede from hot causes, is leanness of body, the loathing of meate, voyding dung of a strong sent, great thirst, and loosnesse of belly. The signes to know if the disease proceed from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite to meate, dung not stincking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceede to the particular diseases of the liuer, and first of the inflammation; you shall vnderstand that it cometh by meanes that the blood through the abundance, thinnesse, boyling heate or sharpnesse thereof, or through the violence of some outward cause, breaketh out of the veines & floweth into the body or substance of the liuer; and so being dispossessed of his proper vessels, doth immediately putrifie & is inflamed, corrupting so much of the fleshy substance of the liuer, as is either touched or imbrowed with the same; whence it cometh, that for the most part, the hollow side of the liuer is first consumed, yet sometimes the full side also: this inflammation by a naturall heate, is sometimes turned to putrification, & then it is called an apostumation, which when either by the strength of nature or art, it doth breake and runne, then it is called an vicer or filthy fore. Now the signes of an inflammation on the hollow side of the liuer (which is least hurtfull) is loathing of meate, great thirst, loosnesse of belly, and a continuall vnwillingnesse to lye on the left side; but if the inflammation be on the full side of the liuer, then the signes be short breathing, a dry cough, much paine when you handle the horse about the wind-

wind-pipe, and an vnwillingnesse to lye on the right side. The signes of apostumation is great heate, long fetching of breath, and a continuall looking to his side. The signes of vlceration, is continuall coldnesse, staring vp of the haire, and much feeblenesse & fainting, because the filthy matter casting euill vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart, and occasion death. Now for the cure of these inflammations, some Farriers vse to take a quart of ale, an ounce of myrre, and an ounce of Frankinsence, and brewing them well together, giue it the horse diuers mornings to drinke. Others vse to take three ounces of the seedes of smallage, and three ounces of Hyssop, and as much Sutherwort, and boyle them wel in oyle and wine mingled together, and giue it the horse to drinke; keepe the horse warme, and let him neither drinke cold water, nor eate dry dusty hay.

CHAP. 61.

*Of Obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs
on the Liuer.*

THese obstructions, or stoppings of a horses liuer, do come most commonly by traueilling or labouring on a full stomacke, whereby the meate not being perfectly digested, breedeth grosse and tough humours, which humours by the extremity of trauell are violently driuen into the small veines, through which the liuer ought to receiue good nutriment, and so by that meanes breedeth obstructions & stoppings. Now from these obstructions (when they haue continued any long time) especially if the humours be cholericke, breedeth many times hard knobs on the liuer,

liuer, which knobbes maketh the horse continually lye on his right side, and neuer on the left; because if he should lye on the left side, the waight of the knob would oppresse the stomacke, and euen sicken all the vitall parts in him. The signes of these obstructions or stoppings, are heauineffe of countenance, distention or swelling, great dulnesse and sloth in the horse when he beginneth his trauell, and a continuall looking backe to his short ribbes, where remaineth his greatest paine and torment. Now the cure thereof is to seeth continually in the water which hee drinketh, *Agrimony, Fumitory, Camomill, Wormewood, Licoras, Anise seedes, Smallage, Persley, Spickeward, Gentian, Succory, Endyue, and Lupyn*, the vertues whereof are most comfortable to the liuer. But for as much as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smithes, whose capacities are vnable to diue into these seuerall distinctions; and that this worke (or maister peece) is intended for the weakest braine whatsoever, you shall vnderstand that there bee certaine generall signes to know when the liuer of a horse is grieued with any grieffe, of what nature or condition soeuer it be; and so likewise generall receipts, to cure all the grieues without distinguishing or knowing their natures : you shall know then if a horse haue any grieffe or paine in his liuer by these signes. First, by a loathing of his meate, next, by the wasting of his flesh, drynesse of his mouth, and roughnesse of his tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lye on the side grieued; and lastly, a continuall looking backward. Now the generall cures for the sicknesse of the liuer, is, according to the

S

opinion

opinion of the ancient Farriers, to giue the horse a loes dissolued in sweet wine : for it both purgeth and comforteth the liuer. Others vse to giue him to drink *Ireos* stampd and mixt with wine and water together, or in stead of *Ireos*, to giue him *Calamint*, called of the Latines *Pollimonia*. Others giue *Sanery* with oyle & wine mixt together. Others vse liuer-wort and agrimony with wine and oyle. Others vse comfortable frictions, and to steepe his prouender in warme water, and to mixe with his prouender a little *Nitrum*, not forgetting to let him stand warme and lye soft; but that which is generally praised about all medicines, is to giue the horse a Wolfes liuer, beaten to powder, and mixt either with wine, water, oyle, or any other medicine.

Now for a conclusion of this chapter, if the Farriers skill be so good that he can distinguish the nature of each seuerall infirmity about the liuer, then I would haue him to vnderstand that for inflammations (which are the first beginners of all diseales) would be vsed simples that mollifie and disperse humors, as be these, *Linseed*, *Fenegreeke*, *Camomil*, *Anise seeds*, *Mellilot*, and such like; to which mollifying simples would be euer added some simples that are astringent or binding, as are these : red *Rose leaues*, *Bramble leaues*, *Wormewod*, *Plantaine*, *Myrre*, *Masticke*, *Storax*, and such like. Now for apostumes, they are to be ripened and voyded, & vlcers must be cleansed and scoured downeward either by excrement or vrine; and therefore the vse of such simples as prouoke either the one or the other (of which you shall find plenty in other chapters) is most necessary.

OF this consumption of the liuer, I haue spoken something in the chapter of the mourning of the chine; yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diuersly taken, I will shew you their diuers opinions. First, some hold it cometh onely from sudden cold after heate, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it cometh of any humour, especially of cholericke matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the liuer, which rotting by leasurable degrees, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the liuer, proceeding as they thinke, from corrupt meates, and sweet drinckes: and the last thinke it cometh by extreme heate gotten in trauell, which inflaming the blood doth afterward putrifie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole substance of the liuer: because the liuer is spongius like the lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or suddaine death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity: for the liuer being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the body for want of good nutriment, doth in time consume. The signes of this disease is a loathing of meate, and a stretching forth of the horses body at length as he standeth; hee will seldome or neuer lye downe, his breath will stink maruellously, and he will continually cast exceeding foule matter either at one nostrill or at both, according as one side or both sides of the liuer is consumed; and on that side which hee casteth, hee will euer haue betwixt his nether iawes, about the midst of them, a hard knobbe or kinnell about the bignesse

of a wal-nut. Now the preferuatiue for this diseale, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take halfe a pint of malmsey, and as much of the bloud of a young pigge, and to giue it the horse luke warme to drinke. Other Farriers vse to giue the horse no other food for the space of three dayes, then warme wort, and oates baked in an ouen, being sure that the horse be kept fasting the first night before he receiue his medicine. Others suppose that if into the wort which he drinketh, you do put euery morning two or three spoonfull of the powder made of *Agrimony*, red rose leaues, *Saccharum*, *Rosaceum*, *Diarchadon*, *Abbatis*, *Di-santalon*, *Licoras*, and of the liuer of a Wolfe, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder giuen with goates milke luke warme, is very good: Others hold that malmsey and the iuyce of feather. few giuen to drinke is also good. Others vse (and I hold it equall with the best) to take an ounce of *Sulphur vine*, beaten into fine powder, and a peny waight of *Myrre*, beaten to very fine powder; mixe them together with a new layed egge, and giue them to drinke with halfe a pint of Malmsey: vse this diuers times, and keep the horse warme; yet separate him from other horses, for this diseale is infectious.

CHAP. 63.

Of the diseases in the Gall.

AS is the liuer, euen so the gall of a horse is subiect to diuers and many infirmities, as to obstructions, from whence floweth the fulnesse and emptinesse of the bladder, and stone in the gall; and these obstru-

obstructions do chance two seuerall waies : first when the passage by which choler should passe from the liuer vnto the bladder of the gall, as vnto his proper receptacle is stopped, and so the bladder of the gall remaineth empty : for you are to vnderstand that the gall is none other thing then a long, slender, little greenish bladder fixed vnderneath the liuer, which doth receiue all the cholericke bitter moysture, which would otherwise offend not onely the liuer, but the whole body also. Now if the passage vnto this necessary vessell be stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities, as either vomiting, the laxe, or the bloody fluxe.

Secondly, when the way whereby such choler should issue forth of the bladder of the gall downe into the guts and excrements, is closed vp, and so superaboundeth with too much choler; from whence springeth dulnesse of spirit, suffocating, belching, heate, thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truly to any beast there is not a more dangerous disease then the ouerflowing of the gall. The signes of both these kindes of euils or obstructions, are yellownesse of the skinne infected with yellow iauundise, and a continuall colliueneſſe of the body: and the cure of them are, according to the most ancient Farriers, to giue the horse milke and great store of saffron, boyled together, or in stead of milke to giue ale, saffron, and anise seedes mixed together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I much more do agree, which hold that felladine roots and leaues chopt and bruised, & boyled in beere, or for want of felladine, rue or hearbe of grace, and giuen the horse luke warme to drinke, is most soueraigne.

Now for the stone in the gall, which is of a blackish color, it cometh from the obstruction of the conduits of the bladder, whereby the choler being too long kept in, becommeth dry, and so conuerteth first into grauell, and after into a follide and hard stone, of which both the signes and the cure, are those last before rehearsed.

CHAP. 64.

Of all such diseases as are incident to the Spleene.

THe Spleene is a long, narrow, flat, spongy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, ioyning with the liuer & the gall; it is the receptacle of melancholy and the dregges of the bloud, and is as subiect to infirmity as any inward member whatsoeuer, as to inflammations, obstructions, knobbes and swellings; it through the sponginess is apt to sucke in all manner of filth, and to dilate and spread the same ouer the whole body: the appearance thereof, is on the left side vnder the short ribs, where you shall perceiue some small swelling, which swelling giues great griefe to the midriffe, especially after a full stomacke, taking away much more of the horses digestion then his appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and growes in the end to a hard knob, or stony substance.

This disease or diseases of the spleene, are incident to horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the surfaite or greedy eating of greene meates: The signe of which diseases are these, heauiness, dullness, paine on the left side, and hard swellings, short breath,

breath, much groaning, and an ouer hasty desire to his meate. The cure according to the opinion of our best Farriers, is to make the horse sweate either by labour or cloathes, then to giue him to drinke a quart of white wine, wherein hath bene boyled the leaues of *Tamariske* bruised, and a good quantity of comin seede beaten to powder, and giue it luke warme. Others vse after the horse hath sweate, to powre into his left nostrhell euery day the iuyce of *Mirobalans*, mixt with wine and water to the quantity of a pint. Others take of comin seede and hony, of each fixe ounces, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, of vinegar a pint, & put all these into three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night, and giue the horse a quart thereof next morning, hauing fasted all night. Others make the horse a drinke of garlick, nitrum, hore-hound, and wormewood, sodden in sharpe wine, and to bathe all the horses left side with warme water, and to rubbe it hard. There be others which vse to cauterize or scarifie the horses left side with a hot yron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no iudgement in the practise.

CHAP. 65.

Of the Yellowes or Iauundise.

AS before I sayd, from the obstructions or ouerflowings of the gall and spleene doth spring this disease which our common Smiths call the yellowes, and our better Farriers the iauundise; and you shall vnderstand, that of this yellowes or iauundise there are two kinds, the first an ouerflowing of choler proceeding from the sicknesse of the gall, and it is called simply

ply the yellowes, or yellow iaudises because the outward parts of the body, as eyes, skinne, mouth, inside of the lips, and such like, are dried, and coloured yellow: the other an ouerflowing of melancholy proceeding from the sicknesse of the spleene, & is called the blacke yellows or blacke iaudise, because all the outward parts are blacke. Now both these iaudises or yellowes haue their beginnings from the euils of the liuer; the yellow iaudise when the liuer by inflammation, hath all his blood conuerted into choler, and so ouerwhelmes the body: and the blacke iaudise when some obstruction in the liuer veine, which goeth to the spleene, hindreth the spleene from doing his office, and receiuing the dregges of blood from the liuer; or else when the spleene is surcharged with such dregges of the blood, and so sheddeth them back againe into the veines. Now although this distinction of the blacke iaudise or blacke yellowes, will appeare strange vnto our common Farriers; yet it is most certaine that whensoever a horse dyeth of the yellowes, he dyeth onely of the blacke yellowes: for when it cometh vnto the case of mortality, then are all the inward powers conuerted to blacknesse, and the yellow substance is cleane mastered; but whilest the matter is yellow, so long the horses body is in good state of recovery. Besides, these yellowes do euer follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got preheminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward diseases in a horse body, this is most common, ofttest in practise, and yet most mortal if it be not early prevented. The signes of this disease of yellow iaudise, are yellownesse of eyes, nostrhels, inside of lippes, the skinne, the yard and the vrine: his eares and
his

his flanks will sweate, and he will groane when he lyeth downe, and he will not onely be faint, but vterly forsake his meate also. The cures which are at this day in practise for this disease, are infinite, and a world of them corrupt and poysonous: euery Smith almost making a medicine of his owne inuention, God knowes weake and to little purpose; but for the best receipts which at this day are vsed by any good Farrier whatsoeuer, I will deliuer you the whole catalogue.

First, for the ancient Farriers, both Italian & French, they did vse to take of tyme and comin, of each like quantity, and stamping them together to mingle it with wine, hony, and water; and then to let him blood in the pasternes:

But now the Farriers of latter dayes vse, first to let the horse blood in the necke veine, suffering him to bleede till you perceiue the blood to grow pure; then to giue him this drinke: Take of white wine or ale a quart, and put thereunto of saffron, of turmericke, of each halfe an ounce, and the iuyce that is wrong out of a great handfull of selladine, and being luke warme giue it the horse to drinke; then keepe him warme the space of three or foure dayes, giuing him warme water with a little branne in it. Others vse after the horse is let blood in the necke veine: First to rake him then to gim him a suppositary made of Salt, Hony, and Marioram, and then giue him to drinke, halfe an ounce of myrre, dissolued in a quart of wine or ale. Others vse to giue after blood letting, onely cold water and nitrum mixt together. There be others which after blood letting, will onely stoppe his eares with

hills

T

sella.

selladine, and then bind them fast vp, and let him haue no exercise for twelue howres after. Others vse after the letting him bloud to giue him a glister; then to take saffron and turmericke, and mixing them with a quart of milke to giue it him to drinke luke warme. Others vse to let the horse bloud in the third barre of the roose of hismouth with a sharpe knife, and after he hath bled well, to take a halfe peny worth of English saffron, and a peny worth of turmericke, and a new layed egge, with the shell and all small broken, and mixe it in a quart of stale ale or beere; and so set him vp warme. Others vse to take after bloud letting of turmericke and of saffron a like quantity, and two or three cloues, and fixe spoonefull of vinegar or verdeg, and to put into each eare of the horse, three spoonefull thereof, and then stoppe his eares with black wolle, & so tye them vp for seuen or eight dayes after. Others take long pepper, graines, turmericke, and licoras, all beaten into fine powder; then brew them with a quart of strong beere or ale, and giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse after raking & bloud letting to take the iuyce of Iuy leaues, & mingling it with wine, to squirt it into the horses nostrrels; and to let him drinke only cold water mixt with vitrum, and let his foode be grasse, or new hay sprinkled with water. Thus you haue seene, I dare well affirme, all the best practises which are at this day knowne for this ditease; & where they all faile, there is no hope of cure; yet let me thus farre further informe you. This disease of the yellowes or iaundise, if the keeper or maister be not a great deale the more skilfull and carefull, will steale vpon you vnawares, and (as I haue often seene) when you are in the midst of your iourney, remote
and

and distant farre from any towne that can giue you succour, it may be your horse will fall downe vnder you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour, questionlesse hee will bee dead. In this extremity you haue no helpe but to draw out a sharpe poynted knife, dagger, or rapier for a neede, and as neare as you can (opening the horses mouth) strike him bloud about the third barre of the roose of his mouth; and so letting him eate and swallow his owne blood a good while, then raise him vp, and be sure he will goas fresh as euer he did; but after you come to place of rest, then bee sure to bloud him and drench him as aforesayd, or else there will a worse fit come vpon him. Now to conclude for the blacke iaundise, which of some Farriers is called the dry yellow, though for mine owne part I hold it to be incurable, yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary humour, and prescribe this physicke for the cure thereof: first, to giue the horse a glister made of oyle, water, and nitrum, after his fundament is raked; then to powre the decoction of mallowes, mingled with sweete wine, into his nostrrels, and let his meate be grasse, or hay sprinkled with water, and a little nitre, and his prouender dryed oates: hee must rest from labour, and be often rubbed. Now there be other Farriers, which for this disease would onely haue the horse drinke the decoction of wilde cole-worts sodden in wine; the effects of all which I onely referre to experience.

CHAP. 66.

Of the Dropsie, or euill habit of the body.

VHereas we haue spoken before of the consumption of the flesh, which proceedeth from suifaits, ill lodging, labour, colds, heates, and such like: you shall also now vnderstand, that there is another drinesse or consumption of the flesh, which hath no apparant cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a dropsie or euill habite of the body; which is most apparantly seene when the horse by dislike doth leese his true naturall colour, as when baynesse turnes to dunnesse, blackes to duskishnes, & whites to asshinesse; and when he leeseeth his spirit, strength, and alacrity. Now this cometh not from the want of nutriment, but from the want of good nutriment, in that the bloud is corrupted either with steame, choler, or melancholy, coming (according to the opinion of the best Farriers) either from the spleene, or the weaknes of the stomacke or liuer causing naughty digestion. Others thinke it cometh from fowle feeding, or much idlenesse; but for mine owne part, albeit I haue had as much tryall of this disease, as any one man; and that it becometh not me, to controll men of approued iudgements; yet this I dare auerre, that I neuer saw this disease of the euill habite or euill colour of the body, spring from any other groundes, then either disorderly and wilde riding: or from hunger, or barraine woody keeping. Betwixt it and the dropsie, there is small or no difference: for the dropsie being diuided into three kindes, this is the first thereof, as namely an vniuersall

fall swelling of the body, but especially the legges, through the aboundance of water lying betweene the skinne and the flesh. The second, a swelling in the couering or bottome of the belly, as if the horse were with foale; which is onely a whayish humour abiding betwixt the skinne and the rimme: and the third a swelling in the same place by the like humour, abiding betwixt the great bagge and the kell. The signes of this disease are shortnesse of breath, swelling of the body or legges, lesse of the horses naturall colour, no appetite vnto meate, and a continuall thirst; his backe, buttockes, and flanks, will be dry, and shrunk v^p to their bones; his veines will be hidde that you cannot see them; and wheresoeuer you shall presse your finger hard against his body, there you shall leaue the print thereof behind you, and the flesh will not rise of a good space after: when he lyeth downe, he will spreade out his limbes, and not draw them round together, and his haire will shedde with the smallest rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but onely two dropfies, that is, a wet dropfie, and a windy dropfie; but being examined, they are all one with those recited, haue all the same signes and the same cure, which according to the ancient Farriers is in this sort. First, to let him be warme couered with many cloathes, and either by exercise or otherwise driue him into a sweate; then let his backe and body be rubbed against the haire, and let his foode be for the most part, cole-worts, smallage, and Elming bowes, or what else will keepe his body soluble, or prouoke vrine: when you want this foode, let him eate grasse, or hay sprinckled with water, and sometimes

you may giue him a kinde of pulse called Ciche, steeped a day and a night in water, and then taken out and layed so as the water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which only would haue the horse to drinke parsley stampd and mixt with wine, or else the roote of the hearbe called *PANAX* stampd and mixt with wine. Now whereas some Farriers aduise to slit the belly a handfull behinde the nauell, that the winde and water may leasurely issue forth, of mine owne knowledge I know the cure to be most vile; nor can it be done, but to the vtter spoyle and killing of the horse: for a horse is a beast, & wanting knowledge of his owne good, will neuer be drest but by violence, and that violence will bring downe his kell, so as it will neuer be recouered. Now for these dropies in the belly, although I haue shewed you the signes and the cures, yet are they rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other dropie, which is the swelling of the legges, and the losse of the colour of the haire, it is very ordinary and in howrely practise: the best cure wherof, that euer I found, is this. Take of strong ale a gallon, & set it on the fire, & skum off the white froth which riseth: then take a handfull of wormwood without stalke, and as much rue in like manner without stalkes, and put them into the ale, and let them boyle till it be come almost to a quart, then take it off, and straine it exceedingly: then dissolve into it three ounces of the best treacle, and put in also an ounce and a halfe of long pepper, and graines beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it be no more but luke warme, and so giue it the horse to drinke; the next day let him bloud on the necke veine, and annoynt his fore-legges

legges with traine oyle, and so turne him into good graile, and feare not his recouery.

CHAP. 67.

*Of the diseases in the Guts of a horse, and
first of the Cholicke.*

THe guts of a horse are subiect to many and sundry infirmities, asnamely, to the winde cholike, fretting of the belly, costiuenesse, laxe, bloody fluxe, and wormes of diuers kinds. Now for the cholicke, it is a grieuous and tormenting paine in the great gut or bagge, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receiue diuers offencied matters, which do breede diuers infirmities, especially winde, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the body, as it were, swell, and offendeth both the stomacke & other inward members. This disease doth not so much appeare in the stable as abroad in trauell: and the signes are these: the horse will often offer to stale but cannot, he will strike at his belly with his hinder foote, and many times stampe, he will forsake his meate, and towards his flanke you shall see his belly appeare more full then ordinary, and he will desire to lye downe and wallow. The cure thereof according to the most ancient Farriers, is onely to giue him a glister made either of wild cowcumbers, or else of hens dung, nitrum, and strong vinegar, the manner whereof you shall see in the chapter of glisters; and after the glister labour him.

Others vse to giue the horse the vrine of a child to drinke, or a glister of sope and salt water. Others vse to giue him five drams of myrre in good wine, and then
gal-

gallop him gently thereupon. Others vse to giue him smallage and parsley with his prouender, & then to trauell him till he sweate; but for mine owne part, I hold it best to take a quart of malmsey, of cloues, pepper, cinamon, of each halfe an ounce; of sugar halfe a quarterne, & giue the horse luke warm, & then ride him at least an houre after; but before you ride him annoynt all his flanks with oyle de bay, or oyle of Spike. Now if whilest you ride him he will not dung, you shal then rake him, and if neede be, enforce him to dung, by thrusting into his fundament a pild onion iagged crosse-wayes, that the tickling of the iuice may enforce ordure; and by no meanes for foure or fiue dayes let him drinke no cold water, nor eate any grasse or greene corne, but keepe him vpon wholesome dry meate in a warme stable.

CHAP. 68.

Of Belly-ake, or fretting in the Belly.

Besides the cholike, there is also another grietous paine in the belly, which Farriers cal the belly-ake, or fretting in the belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of greene pulle when it growes on the ground, or raw vndryed pease, beanes or oates: or else when sharpe fretting humours, inflammations, or abundance of grosse matter, is gotten betweene the great gut and the panicle. The signes are much wallowing, great groaning, and often striking at his belly, and gnawing vpon the manger. The cure according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first, to annoynt your hand with sallet oile, or butter, or grease; & then thrusting it in at the horses fundament, pull out as much dung

dung as you can reach, which is called raking a horse; then giue him a glister of water and salt mixt together, or in stead thereof, giue him a suppositary of honny and salt, and then giue him to drinke the powder of centuary and wormwood brewd with a quart of malmsey. Others vse onely to giue the horse a suppositary of New-castle sope, and for mine owne part, I hold it onely the best.

CHAP. 69.

Of Costiuenesse, or Belly-bound.

Costiuenesse or belly-bound is when a horse is bound in his belly that he cannot dung; it is a disease of all other most incident to running horses, which are kept in a dry and hot dyet. Now my maisters, the great Farriers, affirme, that it proceedeth from glut of prouender, or ouer much feeding, and rests or from winde, grosse humours, or cold, causing obstructions and stoppings in the guts; but I suppose (& imagine that all the best keepers of hunting or running horses, will consent with me) that it rather proceedeth from much fasting, whereby the gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of it owne great heate bake and dry vp that little which it containeth: for it is a certaine rule that nothing can ouerflow before it be full. Or else it may proceede from eating too much hot and dry foode, which sucking vp the fleame and moysture of the body, leaues not sufficient whereby it may be digested; however, it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other euils. The signes are onely abstinence from the office of nature (I mean dunging)

which is most vsuall in all beasts. The cure whereof according to the opinion of the ancientest Farrier, is to take the water wherein mallowes haue bene long boyled to the quantity of a quart; and put thereto halfe a pint of oyle, or in stead thereof halfe a pint of butter very sweete, and one ounce of *Benedicte Laxative*, and powre that into his fundament glister-wise: then with a string fasten his tayle hard to his tuel, and then trot the horse vp and downe a pretty while, that the medicine may worke so much the better; then let his tayle loose, and suffer him to voyd all that is in his belly: then bring him into the stable, and hauing stood a while, giue him a little well clarified hony to drinke; then couer him and keepe him warme, and let him drinke for three or foure dayes, be nothing but sweete mashes of malt and water. Other Farriers vse to take eleuen leaues of Lorell, and stamping them in a mortar, giue it the horse to drinke with one quart of strong ale. Others vse to take an ounce of brimstone finely beaten to powder, and mixing it with spurge, to giue it the horse in a mash to drinke. Now for mine owne part, I would wish you, if the disease be not very extremely violent, onely but to take the horses fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloathes till he sweate, and then giue him a handfull or two of cleane rye, and a little brimstone mixt with it: for brimstone being giuen with prouender at any time, will scoure; but if the disease be raging and violent, take a quarter of a pound of white sope, and a handfull of spurge, bray them very well together, and giue it the horse to drinke with a quart of ale luke warme; then let him fast and exercise him more then halfe an howre after, and be sure to keepe him very warme,

warme, and let his drinke be onely warme mashes. A world of other scouring receipts there be; but you shall finde them more at large in the chapter of purgations, glisters and suppositaries.

CHAP. 70.

Of the Laxe, or too much scouring of Horses.

THe laxe, or open fluxe of a horses body, is a dangerous disease, and quickly bringeth a horse to great weaknes and faintnes: it proceedeth sometimes from the aboundance of cholericke humors, descending from the liuer or gall down into the guts: sometimes by drinking ouermuch cold water immediately after prouender, sometimes by sodaine traueilling vpon a full stomacke before his meate be digested, sometimes by hasty running or galloping presently after water; & sometimes by licking vp a feather, or eating hens dung: there is no disease that taketh more force vpon a horse in short time then this; and yet sith nature herselfe in this disease seemeth to be a Physitian to the horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to go about too suddenly to stop it; but if you finde that by the continuance, nature both leeseth her owne strength, and the horse the good estate of his body, then you shall seeke remedy, and the cure thereof according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, is this. Take of beane flowre and *Balarmony*, of each a quarterne; mixe them together in a quart of redde wine, and giue it the horse luke warme to drinke, & let him be kept very warme and haue much rest: also let the water that he drinketh be luke warme, and mixt with beane flowre; yet by no meanes let him drinke aboue once in foure and twenty howres; and then

not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pint of redde wine, the powder of one nutmegge, halfe an ounce of cinamon, and as much of the rinde of a pomegranat, and mixing them together, giue it the horse luke warme to drinke; and let him not drinke any other drinke, except it be once in foure and twenty howres, halfe a horses draught of warme water mixt with beane flowre. Others take a halfe peny worth of alum beaten into fine powder, and *Bole-armony* beaten small, and a quart of good milke; mingle them together till the milke be all on a curd, and then giue it the horse to drinke, obseruing the dyet before rehearsed; but if this disease shall happen to a sucking foale, as commonly it will, and I my selfe haue seene many that for want of experience haue perished thereby, you shall then onely giue it a pint of strong verdegges to drinke, and it is a present remedy: for the foale feeding only vpon milke, and that milke auoyding in as liquid forme as it was receiued, the verdegges will curdell it, & so make it auoyd in a grosser and more tougher substance.

CHAP. 71.

Of the Bloody fluxe in Horses.

IT is not to be doubted but that a horse may haue the bloody fluxe, for in my experience I haue seene it, besides the confirmation of all my maisters, the old Farriers. Now of the bloody fluxe they make diuers kindes: for somtimes the fat of the slimy filth which is voyded, is sprinkled with a little blood: somtimes the excrement is a watrish blood like the water wherein bloody flesh hath bene washed: sometimes
bloud

bloud mixed with melancholy, and sometimes pure bloud; but all these proceeding from one head, which is the exulceration of the gut, they may all very well be helped by one cure. Yet that you may know whether the exulceration bee in the inward small guts, or in the outward great guts, you shall obserue if the matter and bloud be perfectly mixt together, then it is in the inner small guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out seuerally, the bloud most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thicke outward guts. Now this bloody fluxe cometh most commonly of some sharp humors, ingendred either by naughty raw food, or vnreasonable trauell; which humours being violently driuen, and hauing to passe through many crooked & narrow wayes, do cleaue to the guts, and with their heate and sharpnesse fret them, & cause exulceration & grieuous paine. Sometimes this bloody fluxe may come from extreme cold, extreme heate, or extreme moistnesse, or through the violence of some extreme scouring formerly giuen, wherein some poysonous simple, as *Scamony*, *Stibium*, or such like, might be applyed in too great a quantity; or it may come from the weaknesse of the liuer, or the other members which serue for digestion. The signes of this disease, is onely the auoyding bloud with his excrements, or bloud in stead of excrements: and the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take saffron one ounce, of *Myrre* 2 ounces, of southernwood 3 ounces, of parsley 1 ounce, of rue 3 ounces, of spittlewort & hyssop of each 2 ounces, of cassia which is like cinamon, one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, & mingled with chalk & strong vinegar, wrought into paste; of which paste make little

cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dryed, dissolue some of them in a pint and a halfe of barley milke, or for want thereof, in that iuyce which is called *Cremor ptisana*, and giue it the horse to drinke: for it not onely cureth the bloody fluxe, but being giuen with a quart of warme water, it healeth all grieffe and paine either in the belly or bladder, which cometh for want of staling. Now for mine owne part, I haue euer vsed for the bloody fluxe but this medicine only. Take of red wine 3 pints, halfe a handfull of the hearbe called *Bursa Pastoris*, or shepheards purse, and as much Tanners barke taken out of the fat and dryed; boyle them in the wine till somewhat more then a pint be consumed, and then straining it very hard, giue it the horse luke warme to drinke: if you do adde vnto it a little cinamon, it is not amisse. There be other Farriers which vse to dissolue in a pint of red wine foure ounces of the sirrop of slowes, and giue it the horse to drinke; but either of the other medicines are fully sufficient.

CHAP. 72.

Of the falling downe of a horses Fundament.

HOrses sometimes by meanes of the disease formerly spoken of, which is the bloody fluxe, and sometimes by a naturall weaknesse in the inward bowels, coming through the resolution of the muscles sertuing to draw vp the fundament, will many times haue their fundaments fall downe in great length, both to the much paine of the horse, and great loathsomenesse to the beholders. Now the resolution or falling downe, may come partly by ouermuch straining

ning to dung when a horse is collicue, and partly by ouer great moysture, as it happens in young children : for then a horse, no creature hath a moyster body. Now the signe is the apparant hanging downe of the fundament, and the cure is this. First, you shall looke whether the fundament be inflamed, that is, whether it be much sweld or no; if it be not inflamed, then you shall annoynt it with oyle of roses warmed on a chafing dish and coales, or for want of such oyle, you shall wash it with warme red wine; but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft sponge dippt in the decoction of mallowes, camomill, linseed and fenegreke, and also you shall annoynt it well with oyle of camomill and dill mingled together, to assuage the swelling; and then with a gentle hand & warme linnen cloathes, thrust it faire and softly vp into his true place : that done, bathe all the tuell about with red wine, wherein hath beene sodden *Acatium*, galles, acorne cuppes, and the parings of quinces : then throw vpon it either the powder of *Bolearmanicke*, or of frankinsence, or *Sanguis Draconis*, *Myrre*, *Acatium*, or such like, & then giue him to drinke the dry pills of Pomegranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warme water; and be sure to keepe the horse very warme, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too collicue or hard bound, but of a meane and a soft temper : for the extremity of either is most hurtfull.

CHAP. 73.

Of the Bats, Truncheons and wormes in a horses body.

MY Maisters, the old Farriers, are of opinion that the guts of a horse do breede three sorts of wormes,

wormes, that is to say, little short wormes with great red heads, and long final white tayles, which we call bots; short & thick worms all of a bignesse like a mans finger, which we call Truncheons; and great long wormes as bigge as a mans finger, and at least sixe inches in length, which we call by the simple name of wormes onely.

Now for mine part, I am of opinion, that the first which are bots, are not bred in the guts but in the stomacke onely; because hauing cut vp many horses, I neuer could finde any one bot in the guts, yet great store of both the other wormes; nor euer cut vp the stomacke of a horse, but I found great aboundance of bots, and neither of the other wormes: whence I am confidently opiniated, that bots are euer bred in the stomacke, and both the other sorts of wormes in the guts: truth it is, that all three do proceede from one selfe cause, which is a raw, grosse, & flegmatike matter apt to putrification, and ingendred by foule & naughty feedings; and as they proceede from one selfe cause, so haue they all one signe and one cure. The signes then are, the horse will forsake his meate, and not stand vpon his legges, but wallow and tumble, and beate his belly with his feete; and sometimes the paine will be so extreme that he will beate his head against the ground; and truly the violence of these wormes are wonderfull: for I haue scene horses whose stomacks haue bene eaten quite through with them, so that the meate which they ate, could not abide in their stomacke, but fell vpon the swallowing into the body, making the body swell like a tun, and so haue dyed with huge torment. Now the cure, according to the ancientest Farriers, is to take a quart
of

offweete milke, of hony a quarterne, and giue it him luke warme; then walke him vp and downe for the space of an houre after, and so let him rest for that day with as little meate and drinke as may be; and by no meanes suffer him to lye downe. The next day when the horse is fasting, take of rue a handfull, of Sauin as much, and being well stamp, put thereunto a little brimstone, and a little foote of a chimney beaten into fine powder; put all these things together in a quart of wort or new ale, and there let them lye in sleepe the space of an howre or two, then straine it hard through a faire cloath, and giue it the horse to drinke luke warme: then bridle him and walke him abroad the space of an howre, then set him vp, and let him stand on the bit, two or three howres after, and then giue him a little hay. Other Farriers vse onely to giue the horse for this disease, the warme guts of a new slaine henne or chicken, being thrust downe the horses throate; and sure it is passing good, especially if a little salt be mixed with them: and this must be done three mornings together fasting, keeping the horse from drinking three or foure howres after. Others vse to take three ounces of the rootes of Caphers beaten with halfe so much vinegar, and put it downe the horses throate: or else a pint of milke, & a spoonfull of sope giuen the horse to drinke, or brimstone and milke giuen to drinke, all be very so- ueraigne. Others vse to binde about the snafle or bit mans dung new made, and so ride him therewith. Others take of *Gentian*, *Aloes*, and *Sauin*, of each halfe an ounce, and brew them together with hony and strong ale. Others vse to take onely a quart of cold sweete wort. Others take *Sauin* & *Southerwort*, or else

wormewood, and the tops of broome small chopt, and mixe it with the horses prouender. Others vse to giue the horse to drinke luke warme, elder berries foddren in milke. Others vse to giue the horse with his prouender, his owne haire chopt small, and mixt with bay salt. Others put hot embers in water, and presently straine it and giue it the horse to drinke. Others make little round balles of honey, and the fine powder of chalke, and putting them into ale make the horse swallow them. Others vse to take, especially for the long wormes, a halfe peny worth of Fene-greeke, of anise seedes, a quarter of a pound, a halfe-peny worth of bay berries, as much licoras, and as much turmericke, and a little quantity of brimstones beate them into powder, put them into a quart of ale, and giue it the horse fasting luke warme to drinke; then ride him an howre after, then set him vp warme foure and twenty howres after. Others vse, especially for the Truncheons, to take two spoonfull of the powder of wormewood, finely searst, and put it in a pint of good malmsey, and after it is brewd a while, let it stand and soake all night; then giue it the horse in the morning fasting, then keepe him without meate or drinke foure houres after. Others vse to giue the horse to drinke, two spoonfull of wormeseede, & as much brimstone or powder of Sauin, with a quart of malmsey, ale, or beere. Others vse to take as much blacke sope as a wal nut, and as much brimstone beaten to powder, and a heade or two of garlick pild & bruised, and put into a quart of good ale, and giue it the horse luke warme to drinke: This medicine also may be administred to a Mare great with foale if she be troubled with the bots or other wormes, so that the

the blacke sope be left out; for it is a violent purger, and may kill the foale in the mares belly, yet for mine owne part, I neuer giue any inward physicall medicine to a mare great with foale; but if I finde her to be troubled with wormes, as is easie to be done by the stinking of her breath, by the sliminesse of her mouth, and by the greatnesse of the worme veines vnder her lips: then presently I do nothing but let her bloud in the rooffe or palat of her mouth, and make her eate her owne bloud: for that I know, will both kill worms, and help most inward maladyes. But leauing mares with foale, let vs returne againe vnto horses. There be other Farriers which vse to take a handfull of new hens dung, & a quart of stale ale, and braying them well together, then take a handfull of bay-salt, and put two egges to it, and hauing mixt them all well together, giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to take a halfe-peny worth of saffron, and as much allum, and mixe them with a pint of milke, and giue it the horse to drinke: or else giue him greene willow and greene reede to eate. Others vse (and thinke it the best of all other medicines) to take the guttes of a young hen, or pidgeon, and rolle it first in a little blacke sope, then in bay-salt, and so force it downe the horses throat. Others vse (especially for the Truncheons) to let the horse drinke hennes dung, mints, sage, and rue, with beere or ale, and to let him bloud in the nostrhrels. To conclude, except you see the horse very much pained, you shall need to giue him nothing but rosen and brimstone mixt together, and blended with his prouender, hauing care that euer you giue it fasting, and long before the horse do drinke.

CHAP. 74.

Of paine in the horses Kidneyes.

There is no question but the same infirmities which do belong vnto the liuer or spleene of a horſe, do alſo belong vnto the kidneyes, as inflammations, obſtructions, apoſtumes and vlcers; and truly in opening of horſes, I haue found the kidney ſometimes waſted, which I imputed to ſome matter of inflammation: I haue likewiſe found much grauell, which was onely through obſtructions; and I haue ſeene the kidneyes as blacke as inke, which could not come without an vlcereous apoſtumatation: But forasmuch as a horſe is a beaſt, who cannot tell the manner of his paine, nor we ſo heedfull as we might haue bene, to obſerue the *Symptome* of euery griefe, we are enforſt to conclude all vnder one name, which is paine in the kidneyes, gotten either by ſome great ſtraine in leading, or by ſome great burthen bearing. The ſignes are, the horſe will go rolling and ſtaggering behind, his vrine will bee blackiſh and thicke, and his ſtones, if he haue any, will be ſhrunke vp into his body; if he haue none, you ſhall perceiue the ſheath of his yard to be drawne backward, and the great veine which runneth vp the inſide of his thigh, called the kidney veine, will ſlacke and beate continually. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is fiſt, to bathe his backe and loynes, with oyle, wine and *Nitrum*, warmed together; and after he is bathed couer him with warme clothes, and let him ſtand in litter vp to the belly; then giue him to drinke water wherein hath ben ſodden dill, fennell, anife

anise seedes, smallage, parsley, spicknard, myrre, and cassia, or as many as you can conueniently get of these simples. The next morning fasting giue him to drinke, a quart of ewes milke, or for want thereof, halfe so much sallet oyle, and Deeres suet molten together: or, if you can get it, the roote of daffadill boyled in wine, and let his prouender bee dried oates; and in this dyet keepe him about tenne dayes, and he will recouer.

CHAP. 75.

*Of the diseases belonging to the Bladder or Yrine,
and first of the Strangury*

ACcording to the determinate opinion of all the best & ancientest Horse-leaches, the bladder of a horse is subiect to three dangerous diseases, as first, the Strangury or Strangullion; the second, the Paine-pisse; & the third, the Stone, or Pissupprest. Now for the first, which is the strangury or strangullion, it is, when the horse is prouoked to stale often, and auoydeth nothing but a few droppes: it cometh questionlesse, either by the heate & sharpnesse of vrine, caused either by great traueil, or by sharpe and hot meates and drinckes, or else by the exulceration of the bladder, or by meanes of some apostume in the liuer and kidneyes, which apostume being broken, the matter resorteth downe into the bladder; & with the sharpnes thereof causeth a continuall prouocation of pissing. The signes are (as I sayd before) a continuall desire to pisse, yet auoiding nothing but a few drops, & those with such pain, that he will whiske, wry, and beate his taile as he pisseth.

The cure whereof, is to bathe the horses hinder loines with warme water, and then take bread and bayes of Laurell, and temper them together with May butter, and giue him two or three balles thereof downe his throate three dayes together. Others vse) and I haue euer found it the best) to take a quart of new milke, & a quarterne of sugar, aud brewing them well together, giue it the horse to drinke fixe mornings together, obseruing to keepe the horse from all sharpe meates, as mow-burnt hay, bran, and such like.

CHAP. 76.

Of the Paine-pisse or pissing with paine.

THIS disease of Paine-pisse, is when a horse cannot pisse but with great paine and labour, and doth proceede sometimes from the weaknesse of the bladder, and the cold intemperature thereof; and sometimes through the aboundance of fleame and grosse humors stopping the necke of the bladder: the signes whereof are, the horse will stretch himselfe out as though he would stale, and thrust out his yard a little, and with the paine clap his taile betwixt his thighes to his belly, and hauing stood so a good while, in the end stale a good quantity. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to take the iuyce of leekes, sweete wine and oyle, and mingling them together, to powre it into his right nostril, and walke him a little vp and downe vpon it: or else to giue him to drinke smallage seede, or else the roote of wilde fennell sodden with wine. Others vse to put fine sharpe onions cleane pild, and a little bruised into his fundament, and then to chafe him immediatly vpon

vpon it, either by riding him, or running him in a mans hand; or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses owne houes, beaten into powder, and mingled with wine, and powre it into his right nostrhell, and then ride him vpon it. Others vse to leade the horse to a sheepe-coate, or sheepe-pen, where great store of sheepe are wonted: and making the horse to smell of the dung and pisse of the sheepe, it will prouoke him to stale presently. Others vse to giue the horse white dogges-dung, dried and mingled with *Amoniacum*, salt, and wine, to drinke, or else hogges dung onely with wine, or the dregges of horse-pisse and wine.

CHAP. 77.

Of the Stone or Pissupprest in a Horse

THe stone or pissupprest in a horse, is when a horse would faine stale, but cannot at all; and therefore may well be called the suppression of of the vrine: it proceedeth according to the opinions of my masters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the weaknesse of the bladder, when the water conduit is stopped with grosse humours, or with matter descending from the liuer; or from some inflammation or hard knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit; or for that the sinewes of the bladder are numbed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horse in long trauell, and not suffering him to stale; but most commonly and ofttest it cometh from obstructions in the kidneies, where, by the causes aforesayd, a certaine redde grauell being bred and falling downe into the conduits, by the mixture of fleame and other grosse

grosse humours, is there brought to be a hard stone, and so stoppeth the passage of the vrine: for the signes there needeth no more but this, that he would faine pisse, but cannot. The cure according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, is first to draw out his yard and bethe it well with white wine, and pricke it and scoure it well, lest it be stopped with durt and filthinesse; then put a little oile of camomill into his yard with a waxe candle, and a bruised cloue of garlike; but if that will not force him to stale, then take of parsley two handfuls, of coriander one handful: stamp them and straine them with a quart of white wine, & dissolue therein one ounce of cake sope, and giue it luke warme vnto the horse to drinke; and see that you keepe him as warme as may be, and let him drinke no cold water for the space of fve or sixe dayes; and when you would haue him to stale, let it either bee vpon good plenty of straw, or vpon the grasse, or in a sheep-coate. Others (& those of the best esteeme for Horse-leach-craft at this day) vse onely to giue white wine, cake sope, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horse drinke it warme. Others vse to annoynt the horses belly first with warme water; then when it is dried, to annoynt it againe with sallet oyle, horse-grease and tarre mixt together and made warme, and to hold a hot yron against his belly whilest it is in annoynting, that the oyntment may the better enter the skin: but I hold this medicine to be much better for the strangury or any other paine in the belly then for the stone; yet it is approued good for all. Others vse to take a pint of white wine or ale, & mixe with it a little garlicke, and the whites of ten egges, & giue it the horse to drinke:

or

or else giue him the iuice of red cole-worts, mixt with white wine, or the roote of *Alexanders*, bruised & sodden in wine to drinke, & wash his yard with vinegar. Others vse to take either wormewood, southernewood, or galingale, or mallowes, or pimpernell; some of these, or any one of these, stampt and strained, and giue it the horse with ale to drinke. Others vse to take a pint of white wine, halfe a pint of burre seede beaten very small, two ounces of parsley seede, halfe a handfull of hyssop, halfe an ounce of blacke sope; mixe them all well together, and warme it, and giue it the horse to drinke: or else take vnset leekes, and stampe them small, and sope, milke and butter; and being mixt together, giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to take a nutmegge and a handfull of parsley seed, beate them to powder; then take as much butter and mixe them altogether in a quart of strong ale, and giue it the horse luke warme to drinke: or else take the seede of smallage, parsley, *Saxefrage*, the roots of *Philopendula*, cherry-stone kirkels, grummell seeds, and broome seedes, of each a like quantity; beat them into fine powder, and giue it the horse with a pint or a quart of white wine. Now albeit all these medicines before rehearsed, are in dayly practise, and approued very soueraigne, yet for mine owne part, I haue found none more soueraigne then this. Take a quart of strong ale, and put it into a pottle pot: then take as many keene radish rootes, cleane washed, being slit through and bruised, as will fill vp the pot: then stopping the pot very close that no ayre may come in, let it so stand foure and twenty howres; then straine the ale and the rootes very hard into a cleane vessell, and giue it the horse fasting in the morning to drinke:

Y

then

then ride him a little vp and downe, and so set him vp warme, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must do diuers mornings together.

CHAP. 78.

Of a Horse that pisseth blood.

THere is nothing more certaine then that a horse many times will piss blood in stead of vrine, the cause (as the most ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these grounds: either ouermuch labour, or too heauy a burthen, especially when the horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to breake some veine in his body, and then you shall see cleare blood come out, & no vrine at all; but if the blood be mixt with vrine, then they suppose it cometh from the kidneyes, hauing some ragged stone therein, which through great trauell doth fret the veines of the kidneyes, and makes them bleed, through which as the vrine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine owne part, I haue not found any greater cause for the pissing of blood then the taking vp of a horse from grasse in the strength of winter (as about Christmas) and presently without a dayes rest in the stable, to thrust him vnto a long and weary iourney: from this cause I haue seene many horses after two or three daies iourney to piss blood in most grieuous manner. The signes are needlesse. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is this: First, let the horse bleed in the palate of the mouth, to conuert the blood the contrary way; then take of *Tragagant* which hath bene steeped in wine halfe an ounce, & of poppy seed, one dramme

dramme, and one scruple, and of *Storax* as much, and twelue pine-apple kirkels; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and giue the horse thereof euery morning the space of seuen dayes the quantity of a wal-nut, infused in a quart of sweete wine. Other latter Farriers vse to let the horse blood in the necke, and boyle that blood with wheate, and with the powder of dried pomegranate pils; then straine it, and giue it him three or foure mornings together to drinke; and let him by no meanes trauell thereupon: or else giue him of husked beanes boyled with the huskes of acornes, beaten smal, and mixt together. Others vse to make him a drinke with the rootes of *Daffadill* mingled with wheate flowre, and *Sumach* sodden long in water, and so to be giuen to the horse with sweet wine: or else to make him a drink of goates milke and sallet oyle, straining thereunto a little frumenty: or else to giue him sodden beanes & Deeres suet in wine; each of these are of like force & goodnesse. Now there be others which for this disease do take barley, and seeth it in the iuyce of Gum-folly, and giue him the barley to eate, and the iuyce to drinke: or else take the powder of licoras and anise seeds, rold vp in hony, and make round balles thereof, and cast downe the horses throat two or three of them: or else licoras, anise seeds and garlick bruised together with a little sallet oyle and hony, and giuen in a quart of new milke to the horse to drinke, is very soueraigne also; and these two medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any cold or glanders.

THe colt euill by the most ancient Farriers, especially the Italians, whose hot country affordeth the beasts of more hot and strong natures then ours doth, is thought to be a continuall standing together with an vnnaturall swelling of the yard, proceeding either from some winde filling the arteries and hollow sinew, or pipe of the yard; or else through the abundance of seede prouoked by the naturall heate of the horse; but our Farriers, who haue not scene that experience, because our horses are of colder temper, say it is onely a swelling of the sheath of the yard, and of that part of the belly about the yard, together with the codde also, proceeding from corrupt seede which commeth out of the yard, and remaining within the sheath, there putrifieth: and this iudgement we finde by experience to be most true. Now you shall vnderstand that Geldings as well as horses are subiect thereunto, because they want naturall heat to expell their seed any further. The signes are onely the outward swelling of the sheath and codde, and none other: and the best cure is first to wash the sheath cleane with luke warme vinegar; then draw out the yard and wash that also: which done, ride the horse twice euery day, that is, morning and euening, into some deepe running water vp to the belly, tossing him to and fro, to allay the heate of members till the swelling be vanished; and if you swim him now & then, it will not do amisse. Others vse to bath his cods and yard with the iuice of houslicke, or with the water wherein kinholme hath beene sod. Now this colt

colt euill will sometimes stoppe the horses vrine that he cannot pisse : then you shall take new ale, and a little blacke sope, and giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to wash the horses coddles and sheath with butter and vinegar made warme. Others vse to wash his yard and coddles with the iuyce of hemlocke, or else take beane flowre, vinegar and *Bolcarmonicke*, and mixing them together, lay it plaister-wise to his sheath and coddles. Others make him a plaister of wine-lees, houslicke and branne mixt together, and layd to his sheath and coddles; but if the first receipt will serue, I would not wish you to vse any other medicine.

CHAP. 80.

Of the Mattering of the Yard.

THIS disease of the mattering of the yard, is seldom seene but amongst the hot races or breedes of horses, as is the *Jenet*, the *Barbary*, and such like; and it happeneth euer at couering time, when the horse and mare both being too hot, do burne themselves, by which meanes there issueth forth of the horses yard much filthy matter. The signes are the falling downe of the matter, and a swelling at the end of the yard; and the horse can by no meanes draw vp his yard, or couer it within his sheath. The cure is to take a pint of white wine, & boyle therein a quarterne of roch allum; & with a large ferring or squirt, squirt in three or foure squirtfull into his yard one after another, and be sure that your squirt go home vnto the bottome, that the liquor or lorion may scoure the bloody matter away : this do fve or sixe times euery day till the horse be whole.

CHAP. 81.

Of the shedding of the Seede.

THe shedding of the seed, or the falling away of the sperme in horses, is none other then that which we call in men, the running of the reines: it cometh as our old Farriers say, either by aboundance & ranknesse of seed, or by the weaknesse of the stones and seede vessels, not able to retaine the seede vntill it be digested and thickned; but truly for mine owne part, I thinke it cometh oftner (especially amongst our English horses) by some great straine in leaping, or by teaching a horse to bound, and making him bound the compasse of his naturall strength. The signes are onely the shedding of his seede, which will be white, thinne, and waterish. The cure according to the ancient experiments, is first to ride the horse into some cold water vp to the belly, insomuch that his stones may be couered with water: which done, bathe his fundament with water and oyle; then couer him exceeding warme, and giue him euery day to drinke, red wine and hogges dung till the fluxe of his seede stay; but latter experience hath found this receipt better. Take of red wine a quart, and put therein a little *Acatium*, the iuyce of plantan, and a little masticke, and giue it him to drinke; and then bath all his backe with red wine, and oyle of roses mixt together; but other Farriers take *Venice* Turpentine, and being washt, beate it well with halfe so much sugar, & then make round balles as bigge as wal-nuts, and giue the horse fiue euery morning till the fluxe stay.

THe falling downe of the yard is when a horse hath not strength to draw vp his yard within the sheath but lets it hang downe betweene his legges ill fauouredly: it cometh (as our best Farriers suppose) either through the weaknesse of the member, by meanes of some resolution in the muscles and sinewes seruing the same, caused by some great straine or stripe on the backe: or else through extreme wearinesse and tiring. The signe is only the apparant hanging downe of the member: and the cure is (according to some opinions) to wash the horses yard in salt water from the sea, or for want thereof with water and salt; but if that do not preuaile, then pricke all the outmost skinne of the yard with a sharp needle, but yet as sleightly as may be, & not deep; and then wash all the pricks with strong vinegar, & this will not onely make him draw vp his yard againe, but also if at any time his fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it vp againe.

There be other Farriers which for this disease, will put into the pipe of the horses yard, hony and salt boyled together and made liquid, or else a quick flye, or a graine of Franckinsence, or a cloue of garlick cleane pilled and bruised, and bathe his backe with oyle, wine, and *Nitre*, made warme, and mingled together. But the best cure according to our English practise, is first, to wash all the yard with white wine warmed, and then annoynt it with oyle of roses and hony mixt together, and so put it vp into the sheath, & with a little bolster of canuase keep it from falling downe; and dresse him thus once in foure

four and twenty howres, vntill he be recovered, and in any case let his backe be kept as warme as is possible, both with cloth and a charge or plaister made of *Bolearmonicke*, egges, wheat-flower, *Sanguis Draconis*, Turpentine and vinegar, or else lay next his backe a wet sacke, or wet hay, and a dry cloth ouer it, and that will keepe his backe exceeding warme.

CHAP. 83.

Of diseases incident to Mares, and first of the barrennesse of the wombe.

THE onely disease incident to the wombe of a Mare (as farre fourth as our Farriers are experienced) is barrennesse, which may proceed from diuers causes, as through the vntemperatnesse of the matrix, being either too hot and fierie, or too cold and moist, or too dry, or else too shorte, or too narrow, or hauing the necke thereof turned awry, or by meanes of some obstruction, or stopping in the matrixe, or in that the Mare is too fat, or too leane, and diuers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof according to the old Farriers, is to take a good handfull of leeks, and stampe them in a mortar, with foure or fise spoonefull of wine, then put thereunto twelue flies called *Cantharides*, then straine them altogether with a sufficient quantity of water to serue the Mare therewith two daies together, by powring the same into her nature with a glister-pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three daies next following, offer the horse vnto her that should couer her, and after she is couered, wash her nature twice together with cold water. There be others which vse to take of *Nitrum*,
of

of sparrowes dung, and of Turpentine, of each like quantity well wrought together, and made like a suppositary; and put that into her nature, and it will cause her both to desire the horse, and also to conceiue. There be some of opinion, that it is good to put a nettle into the horses mouth that should couer her. Of all which let onely experience be your warrantise.

CHAP. 84.

Of the pestilent Consumption in Mares.

THere is a certaine pestilent consumption incident to mares when they are with foale, proceeding from cold fleame, gathered by raw foggy food in the winter season, which descending from the kidneyes doth oppresse the matrixe, and makes the mare consume & pine away, so that if she be not holpen, she will want strength to foale her foale. The signes are a sudden leanness, and a drooping of spirit, with much dislike of meate, and a continuall desire to be layed. The cure is to powre into her nosthrels three pints of fish brine, called *Garume*, three or foure mornings together, and if the grieve be very great, then to take fwe pints; and it will make her vent all fleame at her nosthrels.

CHAP. 85:

Of the rage of Lone in Mares.

IT is reported by some of our English Farriers, that mares being proudly & high kept, will at the spring of the year, when their bloud begins to waxe warme,

Z

if

if they chance when they go to the water, to see their own shadowes therein, that presently they will fall into an extreme loue therewith, and from that loue into such a hot rage, that they will forget either to eate or drinke, and neuer cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft both about and behinde them. The cure of this folly is presently to leade the mare to the water againe, and there to let her see herselfe as before; and that second sight will vtterly extinguish the memory of the first, and to take away her folly.

CHAP. 86.

Of Mares which cast their Foales.

THe occasions why Mares cast their Foales, that is, to foale them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as straines, stroakes, intemperate ridings, rushings, hard wintring, or too great fatnesse, and such like. Now you shall vnderstand that this aborsment, or vntimely casting of a foale, is most dangerous to the life of the mare: for nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect custome, which is the preferuation of health, cannot chuse but giue way to the contrary, which is death and mortality, and the body and pores being set open to the aire before it be able to defend the cold, cannot chuse but be suffocated with vnwholesome vapours. If therefore you haue a mare at any time which doth cast her foale, and withall falleth sicke vpon the same, you shall presently take her into the house, and set her vp very warme; then giue her two spoonful of the powder *Dyspente*, well brewd in a pint of strong sacke, and
feed

feede her with sweete hay and warme mashes for at least a weeke after.

CHAP. 87.

Of Mares that are hard of foaling.

If it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduites, which leade from the matrix, be so straitned that the mare cannot foale, and so be in danger of her life: then it shall be good that you helpe her by holding and stopping her nosthrels with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not haue passage, and she will foale with a great deale more ease, and much sooner: and sure the paine is nothing, because a mare alwaies foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your mare hath foaled, she cannot auoyd her secundine, which is the skinne wherein the foale is wrapped, in that naturall maner as she ought, you shall then take a good handfull or two of fennell, and boyle it in water: then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pint of old wine, and put thereto a fourth part of oyle, and mingle them altogether ouer the fire, and being but luke-warme, powre it into the mares nosthrels, and hold her nosthrels close with your hand to keep it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will voyd her secundine presently.

CHAP. 88.

Of making a Mare to cast her Foale.

IF at any time you would haue your mare to cast her foale, as hauing present occasion to vse her, or

in that the foale is not worthily inought begot, you shall take a pottle of new milke, and two handfuls of sauin chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boyle them till one halfe bee consumed; then straine it very hard, and giue it the mare luke warme to drinke; then presently gallop her a good pace, then set her vp; do thus two mornings, and before the third she will haue cast her foale. Other vse with their hand to kill the foale in the mares belly, but it is dangerous, and the former medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of mares. Now let vs returne againe to horses and mares in generall.

CHAP. 89.

Of the drinking of Horse-leaches by Horses.

IF a horse at any time drinke downe horse-leaches, they will sucke his bloud, and kill him. The signes are, the horse will hang downe his heade to the ground, and abundance of filthy slauer will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some bloud also. The cure is presently to giue him a pint of sallet oyle to drinke, and that will make them fall away and kill them.

CHAP. 90.

Of swallowing downe Hens dung, or eating any venomous thing whatsoeuer.

IF a horse chance to swallow downe any hens dung with his hay, it will fret his guts, and make him to auoyd most filthy matter at his fundament. The cure

cure whereof is to take a pint of wine, halfe a pint of hony, and two spoonefulls of finallage feede bruised, and mixing them well together, to giue it the horse to drinke; and then to walke him well vpon the same, that he may empty his belly. But if the horse chance to lick vp any other venemous thing, as neute, or such like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members; then the cure is first, to put him into a sweate, either by cloathes or exercise; then to let him bloud in the palate of the mouth, and looke how much hee bleedeth, so much let him swallow downe hot: or else giue him strong wine and salt mixt together: or else take the roote and leaues and fruite of bryony, which being burnt to ashes, giue the horse a good spoonefull thereof, with a pint of sweete wine to drinke. Now for mine owne part, I haue euer vsed to take a pint of faller oyle, and two spoonefull of sugarcandy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder *Diapente*, and brewing them together, giue it the horse to drinke: or for want of *Diapente*, so much of the shauings either of Iuory, or of an old Stagges horn, especially the tippes thereof.

CHAP. 91.

*Of Purging Medicines in generall, and first
of the Suppositary.*

PVrging is sayd of our most ancientest Farriers, to bee an emptying and discharging of all superfluous humours which distemper the body with their euill qualities: for such humours breede euill

nutriment, which when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good dyet, alteration, nor the benefite of nature and kindly heate, then must it of force either be taken away by Purgation, Glister, or Suppositary. Now forasmuch as a horse is troubled with many diseases in the guts, and that nothing can purge the guts with that gentlenesse which a suppositary doth, I will here first begin to speake of suppositaries.

Vnderstand then that a horse being surfaited and full of euill humors, needing to be purged, it is best first to giue him a suppositary; lest if you should come to apply a glister, the great gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the medicine not able to worke beyond it, leese both labour and vertue; so that I make account the suppositary is but onely a preparatiue to the glister, and but onely to cleanse and make loose the great gut, which cometh to the tuell. The gentlest suppositary then, and that which purgeth cleame in the best manner, is to take a square peece of cake sope, or white New-castle sope, about fīue or sixe inches long, and shauing it round till it be not about three inches about in the midst, & a little smaller at each end then in the midst; then annoynt it ouer with sallet oyle, & so with your hand thrust it vp more then a full spanne into his fundament; then suddenly clappe his taile to his tuell, and hold it hard and close more then halfe an howre, in which space the most part of the suppositary will be wasted; then gently take away your hand, and let him voyd the suppositary at his pleasure. The next suppositary to this, and which purgeth choler abundantly, is to take *Sauin* stamp't small, staues-aker and salt, and boyle them in hony till it be thicke; then take

take and knead it, and rolle it of a pretty thicke long rolle, as before you were taught for the hard tope, and administer it at his tuell. The next to this, and that which purgeth melancholy, is to take a keene onion, and pilling off the skinne, iagge it a little crosse-wise with your knife; and so thrust it vp into the horks fundament. There is besides these suppositaries, one other suppositary, which is to take a quart of hony, and boyle it vpon the fire till it come to be thicke like a salue, then powre it forth vpon a table and knead it like a peece of dough: then when it begins to harden or grow stiffe (as it will do when it begins to coole) then rolle it vp vnder your hand, and make it in the forme of a suppositary, as is before shewed, and administer it in the same maner. This suppositary is good to purge the gut off any foule humour, and therewithall is comfortable vnto the body.

Now you must also vnderstand, that as these suppositaries are preparatiues before glisters, so they are likewise to be vsed simply of themselues, where the sickness of the horse carrieth no great danger: for vpon euery sleight occasion, or small drynesse which is to be dissolved with the most gentle medicine, to administer a glistre, were to bring the horses body to such an intemperate loosnes as would proue much worse then the contrary drynesse. Therefore I wish euery careful Farrier (because the body of a horse would not be tampered withal with too much physicke) first, in the case of costiuenesse, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approue a suppositary, which if it worke effectually, and keepe the horses body soluble, then to proceede no further; but in case it do not, but that the offensiue matter still increaseth, then to administer

ster a glister; and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this generall rule, and neuer to faile in the performance, which is, neuer to administer either suppositary or glister, but first immediatly before you giue it, to rake your horse, which raking is in this maner. First, you shall annoynt all your hand and arme ouer either with sallet oyle, sweete butter, or fresh grease; and then thrust it into the horses fundament, and draw out all the dung, fleame, and filthy matter that you can feele, euen as high vp as the great bagge: which done, then administer either your suppositary or glister, which you please, at your pleasure; and in any case, whilest the horse is thus in physicke, keepe him exceeding warme.

CHAP. 92.

Of Glisters and their uses.

THE natures and properties of glisters are diuers, and therefore it is necessary that euery carefull Farrier learne to know to what end they serue, and with what drugs or simples they ought to be compounded: for euery glister is to be made according to the disease. Now of glisters, some are to ease griefes, and to allay the sharpnesse of the humours, some to binde, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heale vlcers. These glisters by cleansing the guts, refresh the vitall parts, and prepare the way before for euery inward and stronger purgation. Therefore whensoever a horse through the grosnesse of humors, corruption of blood, or abouondance of fleame, choler, or melancholy, is brought vnto that euill habite
of

of body, that of necessity he must be purged, and that especially his paine is in his guts and body, you shall then as before I sayd (hauing made a probation of a suppositary) first of all administer a glister; lest by purging suddenly with any purgation or potion, you stirre vp a multitude of euill humours, which finding no passage downeward (because the guts be stopped with winde and dregges) do strike vpwards, and so perhaps put the horse into much greater danger.

Now for the composition of glisters, you shall vnderstand that they be made of foure things, that is, of decoctions, of drugges, of oyle, or such like vnctuous matters, as butter, or soft grease; and fourthly of diuers salts, to prouoke the vertue expulsive. A decoction is the broth of certaine hearbs and simples boyled together in water vntill the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such decoctions, you may if you please, vse some fat beefe broth, or the broth of a sheeps head, or such like, or milke or whay, or some such like liquor, mingled sometimes either with hony or with sugar, according to the quality of the disease; the glister being either lenitiue, that is to say, easing of paine; or glutinatiue, which is, ioyning of things together; or else abstersiue, which is, wiping away or cleansing of filthy matter. Now of this decoction or broth being cleane strained, you shall neuer take aboute three pints at the most, and many times but a quart, into which you shall put such drugges as are needfull, exceeding not at the most, aboute three or foure ounces, according as the simples be more or lesse violent: of oyle you shall neuer vse in a glister aboute halfe a pint, and of salt not aboute three or foure drams. You shall also continually administer your

glister luke warme, either with some long horne, or a large glister pipe made for the purpose, and fixed to the largest bladder you can get; and this glister pipe is of all the best, and doth least loose labour. When you do administer a glister, you shall set the horses hinder parts somewhat higher then his foreparts, and then you shall put the glister pipe in at his tuell into his fundament vp to the head, and hauing the confecti- on within the bladder, wring it with good strength into his body. A glister would be administred to a horse when he is rather empty then full paunched, whether it be in the forenoone or after noone. Now for the retaining or holding of the glister in the horses body, three quarters of an howre is sufficient of what quality soeuer it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as soone as the glister is administred into the horses body, you must draw out the pipe with all the gentlenesse that may be, and suddenly clappe his taile to his tuell, and so hold it with your hand, without any mouing or stirring of the horse till the medicine haue had his full time of working. Now to come vnto particular glisters, that you may know which glister is for which purpose, the first is: take of the pulpe of *Cohquintida* halfe an ounce, of *Dragantium* 3 quarters of an ounce, of *Centuary* & of wormewod, of each halfe a handfull, of *Castoreum* a quarter of an ounce; boyle them in three pints of water, then being strained you shall dissolue therein of *Gerologundinum* three ounces, of salt three quarters of an ounce, and of oyle oliue halfe a pint, and so luke warme administer it glister wise, as hath bene before expressed: this glister is exceeding soueraigne for the pestilence in horses, or for any feuer of what nature soeuer.

The

The next is to take the decoction of mallowes, and to mixe therewithall, either fresh butter, or sallet oyle, and so luke warme administer it: this is of all glisters the most gentlest, and as the former glisters is abstersiue or cleansing, so this is lenitiue and a great easer of paine; it is most ioueraigne for a horse that is taken, or that hath any contraction or convulsion, and generally for any costiuenesse in a horse whatsoeuer, proceeding from inward surfaite or sicknesse, as from the surfaite by prouender, foundring in the body, and such like. The next is to take of salt water, or cleane brine a quart, and dissolue therein a pretty quantity of soper, and then luke warme administer it: this glisters is good for the cholicke or any sicknesse of the guts or belly. And thus from these three glisters you may compound many glisters; but in mine opinion, if you vse no more but them onely, they will be fully sufficient.

CHAP. 93.

Of Purgations and their vses.

THE purging of horses is euer by one of these two wayes, either by pills or by potion: pills are any solid and substantiall stuffe fixed together in one body, and being made into round balles, are cast downe the horses throat: and potion, is when you giue the horse any liquid purging matter to drinke, whether it be purging powders dissolued in wine or ale: or that it be any other liquid stuffe. Now for pills they onely purge and make cleane the head and braine, bringing fleame and other grosse humours downe into the excrements; and potions cleanse the stomacke, guts, and

euery other inward member. Now the art of the carefull Farrier is in choosing the simples, whereof these pills or potions are to be compounded, and in aptly or artificially applying the same. First then, it is needfull that euery Farrier (before he go about to purge his horse) know with what ill humour a horse is oppressed, as whether it proceede from choler, sicame, or melancholy, and where the humours do most abound; and then what simples are best to purge those humors, and with what property, quality and temperament they bee indued; for some simples are most violent, and next cousins to strong paysons, as *Scamony*, or *Coloquintida*: some againe are gentle, and rather nourishing then medicinall, as *Manna*, *Cassia*, whay, prunes, and such like: and some are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a meane, as *Rewbarbe*, *Agaricke*, *Sene*, & *Aloes*. Now the ancient Farriers did vse to purge their horses with the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, somtimes with the rootes of wild cowcumbers, and somtimes with the broth of a sodden whelpe mixt with *Nitrum*, and such like; but at this day they are not of our practise, and therefore I wish him that for his experience will make a tryall of strong medicines, or know the workings of euery seuerall simple (which is a most praiseworthy ambition,) first, to make his proofes vpon iades whose losse he respecteth not, and so by that working to aduenture on better horses. But to return to my purpose, the Farrier who goeth about to purge a horse by purgation, must consider the nature of the horses disease, and the strength of the horse, and with them ioyne the nature, strength, and quantity of the medicine; he must also consider the climate vnder which the horse is bred, the time of the disease, the
time

time of the yeare, and the time of the day: for as the diseases, and the humours which cause the diseases, are sundry, so they must be auoyded by sundry medicines, sundry wayes compounded, according as experience from a continuall practise shall instruct you; wherein you are to obserue, that weake, delicate, and tender horses are not to be purged with that violence which strong, stubborne, and sturdy horses are; and therefore in such cases, the quality and quantity is to be looked into of euery simple. The climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the disease: for some diseases must be purged at the beginning, as feuers, pestilence, yellowes, staggers, & all violent inward diseases; and some not till the matter be thoroughly digested, as colds, strangles, and apostumations. Now albeit the sicknesse proceed from cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot simples in summer as in winter, nor in the contrary case, so cold things in winter as in the summer; whereby you see the season of the yeare is to be respected. Then touching respect of the day, you are to obserue that day to be best which is most temperate, sith too much heate maketh a horse faint, and too much cold doth hinder the medicine from working. A little regard is to be had to the wind & weather: for a moyst day with a South winde, is to be preferred before a North winde with a dry day. Now the best howre of receiuing any potion, is euer in the morning after he hath fasted from meate and drinke all the night before. As soone as your horse hath receiued any pill or potion, let him be walked or gently ridden vp and downe one howre at the least; and then set vp, and suffered to stand on the bit two howres after, wel litte-

red, cloathed and stopped; but if you perceiue that he beginneth to grow sicke (as most commonly horses will) then you shall suffer him to lye downe, & as soone as his sicknesse is past, you shall offer him a mashe of malt and water luke warme: for any other meate keep him fasting till his medicine haue done working.

Now to come to particular receipts and medicines themselves, you shall vnderstand that although the ancient Farriers do make but two kindes, that is to say, pills and purgations, yet I diuide them into three, that is to say, scourings, pills, and purgations. Scourings are those wholesome naturall and gentle purging medicines, which stirring vp no great fluxe of humours, do onely keepe the body cleane from such euils as would grow, being euery way as wholesome in health as in sicknesse, and may most properly be termed preparatiues or preparers of the body to entertaine more stronger medicines. To speake then first of the most gentlest and naturall scouring, it is onely grasse being giuen to a horse only fifteene dayes together, and no more; for after that it fattereth and not scoureth. Next vnto grasse is forrage, which is onely the blades of greene corne, as wheat, rye, barley, and such like, being giuen seuen dayes and no more. Next is greene thistles, being cut vp, and giuen the horse to cate the space of fise daies and no more: and the last of this nature is the mash made in this manner: take a pecke of ground malt, and put it into a peale, then take a gallon and a halfe of water boyling hot from the fire, and put it to the malt: then with a staffe mash and stirre them together at least halfe an howre, till tastig the water you feele it as sweete as hony, then being luke warme, giue it the horse to drinke. All these

these scourings do onely but cleanse the guts and coole the body, adding comfort to the spirits, and ingendring strength, onely the mash is to be vsed after labour, or in stead of drinke in the time of any great sicknesse. Scourings of a little stronger nature are these: first, when you giue your horse any prouender, to mixe with halfe a pecke of oates, a handfull or two of cleane drest hemp-seede: or else to take a good quantity of boxe leaues, and put them into a pewter dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leasurely till they be so hard that you may crush them to powder; then take as much of the powder of brimstone as there is powder of boxe, and mixe them together, and amongst halfe a pecke of oates mixe a handfull of this powder, and giue it the horse to eate; both these scourings are to be vsed after labour, especially when the horse hath sweat much. These two scourings worke vpon no matter but what nature is willing to expell, they purge the stomacke, head, and in trailes, they kill all manner of wormes, and dry vp fleame. Scourings of the strongest nature, are to take of sallet oyle halfe a pint, and of new milke from the cow a pint, brew it together, and giue it the horse luke warme: or else take a pint of muscadine, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle, and being mixed together, giue it the horse to drinke: or else halfe a pint of oyle, and a pint of sacke mixt together, and giuen the horse to drinke luke warme. These scourings cleanse the head, body, and guts, of all fleame or molten grease, which any violent labour hath dissolued: they are exceeding good for any manner of cold or stoppings in the winde-pipes. Now for pills, you shall vnderstand that the first and easiest are these, either to take twenty cloues

cloues of garlike cleane pild and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweete butters and so rolle vp the garlick in foure or fise balles or pellets, as big as two wal-nuts a peece: and so taking out the horses tongue thrust them downe his throate one after another; or else to take a quarter of a pound of butter, and as much red saunders; beat them well together in a morter, & then make it into foure or fise balles, and put them downe the horses throat. Pils of a somewhat stronger nature, are to take a handfull of rosemary leaues, and chopping them small, mixe them with a quarter of a pound of sweet butter; and then making it into round bals, giue them vnto the horse: or else take round peeces of raw mellons, and thrust them downe the horses throate: or else to take fise greene figges, and put them downe the horses throat. The strongest pill is this: take of lard two pound, layd in water 2 howres, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the cleane fat thereof, and stampe it in a mortar, & thereto put of licoras, of anise seedes, and of fenugreeke, of each beaten into powder, one ounce and a halfe; of aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of *Agaricke* halfe an ounce; knead all these together like paste, and make thereof foure or fise balles, and giue it to the horse. This last recited pill is singular good for the dry cough, and all the other pils are most soueraigne for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from fleame, melancholy, or any other cold or moist cause whatsoeuer. Now for purgations which are the strongest cleansers of the body, they be these: Take two ounces of *Myrre*, and mixe it with a pint of wine, and it wil purge all sicknesse which proceedeth of choller: the signes whereof are, his belly will swell, be
very

very hot, and he can neither dung nor breake winde. Take a pint of wine, and beate a raw egge therein, and adde to it a quarter of an ounce of brimstone, & halfe an ounce of *Myrre* beaten to powder, and giue it the horse luke warme, and it will purge all inward diseases proceeding of melancholy. Two spoonefull of the powder *Diapente*, giuen with halfe a pint of swines grease, purgeth all diseases proceeding of fleame. Take as much blacke sope as a wal-nut, a quart of new milke, and a quarter of a pint of sallet oyle, and giue it the horse luke warme, and it purgeth all cold infirmities. Take the guts of a Tench or Barbell, being cut into little small peeces, and giue it the horse in a quart of white wine, and it will purge the horse from all constiuenesse or paine in the guts. Rye being boyled, so that it burst not, then dried againe, and giuen the horse in stead of prouender, purgeth and killeth all manner of wormes. Take of radish rootes one ounce, of the roote called *Panax*, and of *Scamony*, of each halfe an ounce; beate all these together, and boyle them in a quart of hony, then giue the horse two spoonefull of this in a quart of ale luke warme to drinke, and it will purge all grosse humours, from whence proceedeth either the falling euill or any disease of the braine. Take and boyle *Elscampanam* roots in milke till they be so soft that you may bruise them to pappe, and then adding thereto halfe a pint of sallet oyle, giue it the horse to drinke luke warme, and this will purge and cleanse any glanders. Take of sweete sope a quarter of a pound, and make it into three balles, and giue them to the horse, & it wil purge all euill humors whatsoever, both violently and most abundantly.

CHAP. 94.

Of Neefing or Fumigation, and the vse thereof.

THere is also another maner of purging of a horse, and especially his head, and that is, by forcing him to neefe or snurt violently at his nose, casting forth all filthy and grosse matter, which otherwise would offend and oppresse the braine; and this neefing is wrought sometimes by fumes or smoakes, sometimes by powders, and sometimes by oyles; the sharpnesse of which tickling the tender and quicke parts of the head, do compell this snurting and neefing: surely there is no purgation more wholesome, for as it cleanseth and separateth grosse matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the braine. Now to come vnto the particular medicines which do procure this neefing, they be these: Squirt into an horses nostrhels, either mans vrine which is old, or the vrine of an oxe which hath had much rest, and it will force a horse to neefe, and is most wholesome for any quotidian feuer. Take the powder of gumdragant, Ensens, and damaske roses, well mixt together, and blow it with a quill into the horses nostrhels, and it is good either against the feuer in sommer or winter. Take warme vinegar and squirt it into his nostrhels, & it is comfortable against the feuer which cometh by raw digestion. Take of garlick stalkes a handfull, being broke into little peeces, and a good quantity of frankinsence, and being put vpon a chafing dish and coles, hold the chafing dish vnder the horses nostrhels, so that the fume may ascend vp into his head; and this is most excellent against

gainst the head-ache. Take feathers and brimstone, & burne them on a chafing dish and coales vnder the horses nose; or blow pepper and *Perithre* beaten to powder vp into his nostrhels; either of both these are most excellent against the sleeping euill. Take the powder of motherwort, and blow it vp into a horses nostrhels, and it is good against the falling euill. Take two goose feathers annoynted ouer with oyle de bay, and thrust them vp and downe in the horses nostrhels: or else to take sage, penyriall, and wheate, long sodden together, and put into a bagge as hot as may be, which bagge would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the smoake and fauour thereof may ascend vp into his nostrhels: or take a clout annoynted with sope or oyle de bay, and rub it vp and downe his nostrhels as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together, are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstruction in the head. Take orpiment and sulphure, and burn them on the coales, and hold it vnder the horses nose: or take oyle de bay, *Enforbium*, and white *Ellebere*, and annointing two feathers therewith, thrust them vp into the horses nostrhels; both these are good against the glaunders. Take of the stalkes of bryony or wilde vine, two handfuls, and bruisse them betwixt two stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bagge, and fasten the bagge so to the horses head, that the sent may go vp into his nostrhels without touching the hearbe with his mouth: and this is excellent against the mourning of the chine, or any inward cough. Take of rosemary, of narde, and of sage, dried and beaten into fine powder, of each like waight, and with a quill blow them vp into the horses nostrhels: or take the

powder of white pepper, or of *Sal-niter*, or of *Iris Illirica*, or blacke *Eleboris*, and blow them with a quill vp into the horses nosthrels : or take linnen cloth dipt in the dregs of oyle; & setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out againe, and let the smoake ascend vp into the horses nosthrels : or squirt into his nosthrels *Aristolochia* mixt with wine : or *Sal-niter* mixt with water : or salt and roche allum mixt with wine : or take ground luy beaten small, and thrust vp into his nose : or bay-berry beaten small, and burnt on the coales vnder the horses nose : or a coale of fire put into a lump of wet hay, making a smothering smoke, and held vnder the horses nose. Any of all these are most excellent against any disease of the head, especially staggers, colds, glaunders, strangle, and such like.

CHAP. 95.

Of Frictions or Bathes, and of their severall uses.

FRictions or Bathes, are a certaine rubbing, annointing or bathing of a horses body all ouer, especially against the haire, because the medicine may sinke in so much the better with comfortable and soueraigne vnguents, whose vertues do loosen the skinne, cheare vp the inward spirits, and spread a liuely heate and feeling ouer the whole body : and of frictions, both according to the opinion of the old Farriers, & also all the best of this present age, these are the most soueraigne. Take of damaske roses one pound, of old oyle a pint, of strong vinegar a pint and an halfe, of mints and rew, beaten into powder, of each one ounce and a halfe, together with one old dry nut; beate them, and mingle them well together : then being

being strained and made luke warme, if it be in the sommer time, and that the Sunne shine hot, take the horse abroad; but if otherwise, keepe him in the stable, and heating a barre of yron exceeding hot, hold it ouer and on each side the horse, and with the oyntment, rubbe and chafe the horse all ouer against the haire, vntill the horse beginne to sweate; then cloathe the horse very warme, and let him stand. This friction is excellent against all winter feuers, or any inward sicknesse that cometh of cold. Take of blacke *Elleborus* two or three handfuls, and boyle it in a sufficient quantity of strong vinegar; and with that rubbe and chafe all the horses head and body quite ouer once or twice a day; and it is most excellent against frenzy, madnesse, or any drynesse or scallynesse of the skinne. Take oyle de bay, or *Dialthea*, and annoynt all the horses body all ouer therewith, holding a panne of coales, or a hot panne of coales neare the oyntment to make it sinke in; or else make him a bathe of running water, wherein is boyled rew, wormewood, sage, Iuniper, bay leaues, and hyssope, and bathe all his body therewith: either of these are most soueraigne for the mourning of the chine, or any disease of the liuer, lungs, or spleene. Take wine and oyle, and hauing mixt them together, chafe and rubbe the horses body therewith, and it is most soueraigne for any inward sicknesse especially of the liuer. To bathe a horse in salt water is very wholesome, both for the horses skinne, and also for any disease of the stomacke. Lastly, take of mallowes, of sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a rose cake; boyle them together in water, then being boyled till the water

be all consumed, then adde a good quantity of butter or sallet oyle, and mixing them together, bathe all the horses foure legges therewith, and all the parts of his body also; and there is nothing more soueraigne for a horse that hath bene tyred or ouer-travelled. To let blood, and with that blood and oyle and vinegar, presently to annoynt his body, helpeth most sorts of infirmities.

CHAP. 96.

Generall Drenches, or Medicines for all the inward diseases or surfaits in Horses.

There is no medicine more soueraigne for all diseases which breede in a horses body, then to take two spoonefull of the powder called *Diapente*, and brew it with a pint either of sacke or muscadine, and so giue it the horse to drinke fasting in a morning; and do this at least three mornings together, especially when the horse beginneth first to droope. The next to this, is to take of selladine two handfuls, both root and leaues, choppe them and bruisse them: then take of rewe as much, of redde sage and of mints as much, and of aloes halfe an ounce; boyle these in a pottle of beare or ale till the one halfe be consumed; and then giue it the horse luke warme to drinke. Take foure ounces of *Diapente*, and mixe it with foure ounces of clarified hony, and keepe it in a close glasse, and giue halfe an ounce thereof with a pint of sweete wine to the horse to drinke, and it is an excellent drench. Take of licorice an ounce, of anise seedes, of comin seedes, of each halfe an ounce, of *Blicampanam* rootes as much; of turmericke and bayes, of each a quarter of an

an ounce, of long pepper and fenugreeke of each two drammes; beate these small and searse them, and put fve spoonefull thereof into a quart of ale warmed with a little butter or oyle, & it is very soueraigne for any diseale coming of cold causes. Take a quart of good ale or wine, a raw egge beaten & mingled with twelue scruples of quicke sulphure, and foure scruples of *Myrre* made into powder, and giue it the horse to drinke; it is a good drench. The powder of brimstone mixt with sweete wine is a good drench also. The roote of the sea onion, the rootes of popler called in Greeke *Rhamnos*, mingled with common salt, giuen in water, keepeth the horse long in health. Take fve pound of fenugreeke and bruise it, seeth it in water till it waxe thicke, adde a pound of sweete butter, an ounce of linseede oyle, and as much of the oyle of nuts; mingle them well together, and giue it the horse in three or foure dayes to drinke, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it selfe, or rew simply of it selfe, boyled in beere or ale, and as much brimstone as a wal-nut, is an excellent drench for any long taken surfaite. Garlicke and housleeke beaten together in a mortar, and then boyled in beere or ale from a pottle to a quart; then mixt with licorras, anise seedes, and sugarcandy, and a pretty quantity of oyle, is an excellent drench for any inward sickness which doth proceede from hot causes, as is the Frenzy, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of generall drenches and their vses.

CHAP. 97.

How to make the powder called Diapente.

THis word *Diapente* is as much as to say, a composition of five simples: for the receipt is thus compounded. Take of *Genian*, of *Aristolochia*, of *Bay berries*, of *Myrre*, and of the shavings of *Iuery*, of each like quantity; beate them into very fine powder, and then searce it. This powder is praised to be a soueraigne preseruatiue or medicine against all inward diseases: and therefore I would wish euery Farrier, and all such as are the maisters of good horses, neuer to be without it.

CHAP. 98.

A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench, and a singular Oyntment.

TAke of *Enforbium* halfe an ounce, of *Castoreum* one ounce, of *Adarces* halfe a quarter of a pound, of *Bdelium* halfe an ounce and halfe a quarter, of pepper a quarter of a pound, Foxe-greace halfe an ounce, *Opoponax*, one ounce, *Lacerpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Amoniacum* halfe a quarter of a pound, pidgions dung as much, *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce, one quarter, *Spuma nitri* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a quarter of a pound, *Perethrum* & bay berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardamum* two ounces, seede of rew, halfe a quarter of a pound, seede of *Agnus Castus* one ounce, parsley halfe an ounce, dried rootes of *Irees* or flower-deluce one ounce, one quarter, hyssop & *Carpobalsamum* a quarter of

of a pound, oyle of newer-deluce a quarter of a pound and halfe a quarter, oyle de bay as much, oyle of *Spikenard* three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprium* three quarters of a pound and halfe a quarter, the oldest oyle oliue one pound and a halfe, pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound; melt euery one of these that will melt, seuerally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the simples beaten to fine powder; and after that they haue bene a little boyled on the fire take it off, and straine it into a faire vessell; and whensoever you will giue your horse any thereof, giue it him with wine, or foure or fise spoonefull with a pint of sacke or muscadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth hard, then soften it with the oyle of *Cypresse*, so that it may bee good and thicke. This confection is both a medicine and an oyntment, if you put it in the horses nostrils, it will draw out all noysome humours, and discharge his head of all grieve: if you annoynt his body therewith, it healeth all convulsions, colds, and drynesse, or withering of the body; and if you bathe his limbes therewith, it driueth away all wearinesse and tiring; and if you giue it him with wine to drinke, it cureth all kinde of inward maladies.

CHAP. 99.

How to make the oyle of Oates.

TAke of milke two gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt allum, which will make it runne of curds; then take

Cc

out

out the curd, and cast it away; then straine the whay through a course cloath into a cleane vessell, then take a quarter of a pecke of cleane husked oates that were neuer dryed, and put them into the whay, and set them on the fire till the oates burst, and be soft; then take them off, and powre them into a collander that is full of holes, so that the whay may goe gently from them without any pressing (for you must keepe the oats as moist as may be:) this done put the oats into a frying pan, and set them ouer the fire, stirring them continually till you see the vapour or smoake of them not ascend vpwards, but as it were runne about the pan; then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what cometh frō them, is onely the oyle of them, which you must saue in a close glasse. Now there are other more artificiall and curious waies, to distill and extract this oyle, but this of all is the most easiest, and surest for euery meane capacity. This oyle of oates is of all medicins & simples whatsoeuer, the most excellent and soueraigne for a horses bodie, as being extracted from the most naturall, wholsome and best food which doth belong vnto a horses body. This oyle being giuen by foure or fise spoonefull in a pinte of sweete wine, or a quarte of strong ale, and some of the whay powred into the horses nosthrels, doth cure the glaunders before all other medicines. It is also (giuen in the same manner) the best of all purgations; for it purgeth away all those venemous and filthy humors, which seedeth the most incurable farcy whatsoeuer. And for mine own part as long as I can conueniently come by this oyle of oates, so long I will neuer in any medicine whatsoeuer, vse any oyle or vnctions
matter

matter then it onely; I hauing found by experience, that it is the soueraigne of al simples of that kind, whar-
soeuer they be.

CHAP. ICO.

*Certaine brieue Observations to be obserued at home and a-
broad whilst the horse is in health.*

THEse obseruations following are gathered from the most exact principles, and vnfallible grounds of all the best and surest approued horsemen, either of this kingdome, or of any other nation within Christendome. First then for the generall feeding of your horse, when he is in health you shall feed him with straw, hay, oates, fine little wheat, beanes, barley, bread made of beanes, pease, or fitches, or any other meate that swels not in the horses body.

It is the opinion of *CAMELIARIVS* first to giue prouender, then hay, and lastly water; but our English custome is, first hay, then water, and lastly prouender.

In your trauell feed your horse betimes for all night, that thereby the horse may sooner take his rest.

The quantity of prouender which you shall giue your horse at one time, shall be as much as you can hold in the palmes of both your hands at fixe times.

Horsebread which is made of cleane beanes, cleane pease, or cleane fitches feedeth exceedingly.

Let your horses meate and drinke be exceeding sweete and cleane, yet his water by no meanes extreme cold running water from the rocke; for it pearceth to much.

To rubbe your horses mouth with salte and wine, will make him both eate and drinke with a much better

ter appetite.

Let your horse neither eate when he is hot, nor drinke when he is hot, neither presently after his trauell.

Labour your horse moderately when the weather is either extreme hot or extreme cold, that so you may auoide extreme heats or suddaine colds.

Trauell not your horse too late, that your owne eye may see him well dried and well fed before you take your owne rest.

Neuer take the saddle from your horses backe suddenly.

Lend not your horse, least your selfe walke on foot.

Let your horse lye cleane and dry, keepe your stable sweete, let no swine lye neere it, nor let any pullen come whithin it.

Let your horse euer be tyed with two reines.

Let the light of your stable be euer towards South and North, yet so as the North windowes may in the winter be shut vp close at pleasure, and opened in the sommer to giue fresh aire,

Ride your horse oft a little on stony waies, that he may the better feeble his feete, and harden his houes.

Haue euer neere your stable some close plaine greene, that your horse being let loose, he may oft tumble himselfe thereon.

Let your horses bed be of soft sweete straw somewhat aboue his knees, of which rie straw is the best; for though barley straw be the softest, yet a horse wil couet to eate it, and it is vnwholesome; and wheat straw though it be not vnwholsome to eate, yet it is hard to lye vpon: as for oate straw it is the best in the surperlatiue

superlatiue; for it is both wholsome to eate, and soft to lye vpon.

Curry or dresse your horse twise a day before water, and when he is curried, rubbe him with your hand and with a rubber, his head would be rubbed with a wet cloth, and his coddles made cleane with a dry cloth; his foretop, his maine, and his taile, would be oft wet with a wet maine combe, and euer where the horses haire is thinnest there curry the gentlest.

Let the plaunchers of your stable lye euen and leuell, that your horse may stand at his ease, and not proue lame, by too much oppressing his hinder partes.

Let not any mud wal be within your horses reach; for he will naturally couet to eate of it, and nothing is more vnwholesome.

Giue your horse plenty of garbadge (which is chopt wheat straw) both with his prouender, and without.

Let your hay bottles be very little, and tyed very hard: for so your horse shall eate with the best stomacke, and make least waste.

To sprinkle water vpon your hay, is most wholesome, and to sprinkle fenugreeke vpon your prouender, is as soueraigne; the first is good for the winde, the latter for wormes.

Giue your horse dayly exercise: for that gets the best stomacke to his meate.

Purge your horse once a yeare with grasse, or with greene blades of corne, called forrage, for fiftene daies together; yet before you so purge him, in any case let him bloud, and whilest he is in purging, by no meanes let him haue any prouender.

A horse after trauell hath euer more bloud then any beaſt whatſoeuer.

Greene graſſe or forrage cleaſeth the bloud, encreaſeth ſtrength, healeth diſeaſes, auoydeth melancholy, helpeth the horſes growth, and maketh the ſkin ſmooth; whileſt the horſe is at ſoile, by no meanes let him take cold.

The Northerne man watereth two howres before he rideth at the leaſt: then lets the horſe eate a little hay, then giues prouender, but not much, and bridleth the horſe vp a quarter of an howre before he rideth: at night he watereth two miles before he taketh his lodging, then rideth eaſily; he neither walketh his horſe, nor ſtuffeth him, nor looſeth any gyth, but only rubbeth him very cleane, & ſo lets him bite vpon his bridle halfe an howre after, with good ſtore of litter vnder him; then he giues the horſe hay, and after prouender; before he goeth to bed, he watereth againe, (yet but a little) then ſees the horſe thoroughly well dreſt and rubbed, well littered, and moſt ſufficiently meated.

There be others which walke after labour, then rubbes well, littereth and vnbridleth; both which be good, ſo that the one haue not too much walking, nor the other too cold a ſtable. But howſoeuer, ſtuffe not your horſe backward, but betwixt his forelegges, and formoſt gyth: for backward ſtuffing is perillous, leſt drawing his yard when he would ſtale, he draw backe into his ſheath any of the litter that ſtoppes him. The Northerne mans uſe agreeth with the French principles, which ſaith, Vſe no other walking then your ſelfe on your horſes back, by riding him gently till you come to your Inne; and

and so make him cold; then shake litter vnder him, rub his legges, his belly, and euery parte of his body well till he be dry, then vnbridle him, rub his head wel, and giue him hay, slacke no girth till it be night that the windowes be shut, suffer the horse to drinke but a litle at once to auoyd suddaine cooling of the stomacke, or driuing the horse into a shaking feuer: at night rub and curry well, and feede according to the horses stomacke.

Other good horsemen ride gently till the horses sinewes be chafed, and neuer water in trauell till the horse haue staled, and forbear to trauell him fast before he haue drunke, that he may not drinke in his great heat, and they hold the standing water the best; after water for a mile they ride softly till his water be warmed in his belly, and before they come to their Inne they do not water, nor of an howre after they haue vnbridled; then they clothe well, and giue pro-uender, hauing a care that their horses stand not in the wind, and that they haue ben rubbed dry and cleane. Now all these principles are exceeding good; yet I would wish euery traeller to learne how his horse hath bene vsed, and that custome (if it be not too much against reason) still to follow.

If you come late to your Inne, and that your iourney be greate and hasty, so that your horse will not eate till he haue drunke, and yet is hote notwithstanding, then let his drinke be milke giuen in the darke, lest the whitenesse make him refuse it; this is both cordiall and pleasant; if you cannot get milke enough, then mingle milke with water luke warme, for no drinke would be giuen to a horse hotter.

If your horse either by labour or surfaits be brought
low

low, leane, and weake, you shall giue him mares milke to drinke many daies together, and it will make him strong.

It is not good to wash your horse, if he be either very hot or very fat; otherwise you may wash his legges about the knees, so that in no case you wash his belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his washing; then by no meanes walke him, but set him vp and dresse him: the purer the water is where in you wash your horse, the more wholesome it is, so that it be not too extreme cold.

The best howres to water your horse in (when he liues at rest) is betwixt seauen and eight in the morning, and foure and fiue in the euening.

When you trauell, at euery steepe hill light, both to refresh your horse and your selfe.

Let a fat or hot horse haue his water at foure times, and not as much as he will drinke at once; giue him prouender twise at night, & but once in the morning; let his cloth neither be too hot, nor with straw too much stuffed; when he eateh good hay, let him haue lesse prouender then when he eateth straw: giue his meate by a little at once to auoyd glutting of him, and let him stand two howers euery day wirhout meate.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profite, preserue, and doth keepe both strength of body and legges: for in rubbing and combing, a horse doth take much delight, and it is better then much meate.

To feede with barley (according to the opinion of the ancient Italians) ingendreth good bloud, encreaseth strength and courage, and maintaineth health; but with vs here in England, we finde oates to be a much better feeding.

In

In the dogge daies it is not wholesome to ride your horse oft into the water, to allay his naturall heate.

The maisters eye to see his horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the stable sweete and cleane kept, preserueth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horse.

Cleanse and picke the soales and bottoms of your horses feet oft, and stuffe them with Oxe dung, and annoynt his houes with fresh grease, tarre, or Turpentine.

Much rest is the mother of many diseases.

When you ride, looke often to your saddle & your horses shooes, and you shall finde much more ease in your iourney.

CHAP. IOI.

Certaine speciall Principles in Foales and in Horses.

THe Foales whose legges be long wil euer be talle: for of all beasts their legges in length euer grow the least, and by the bignesse of their legges, you shall gesse the strength and greatnesse of their bodies.

Let your colts if you can possible, neuer be housed till they be past three yeares old.

The Greeke horse (which we call the Turkey horse) is a most excellent horse, swift, bold, well headed, tall and strong, many of them be white, some bay, some sorrell, and some blacke.

The *Arabian* horse is most swift, and most beautiful.

The horse of *Affrica*, which we call the Barbary horse, is of good courage, swift and nimble; & therefore both the Turkey horse and he must be vsed with

all lenity and gentlenesse, and not with beating.

The Freeland horse is fry, yet the worst of any.

The Flemish horse is better then the Freeland.

The *Spanish lenet* is good, swift, and light.

The *Neapolitan* courser for all vses is most excellent and beautifull.

And the English horse is best both for great burthen or long trauell.

Obserue euer to winne your horse by patience and gentlenesse, and neuer be angry or madde with your horse, if he be of great mettall, onely the dull horse must with much beating be quickned and inflamed.

Annoint your bit when you put it first into your horses mouth, with hony, and the powder of licoras, or else with hony and salt; and at no time put any bit or snasse into your horses mouth before you haue washt.

Neuer take your horse backes before you haue the bridle reynes fast in your hand; and when you walke downe any hill, by no meanes driue your horse loose before you.

If your horse haue a long backe, let him haue a large saddle, if he haue a low backe, let the saddle haue a high seate; and if his backe be short, let the saddle bouldsters stand the nearer and closer together.

If your horse be dull, you must spurre him soundly, and after such spurring, rub his sides with salt.

CHAP. 102.

Certaine generall Observations concerning Mares.

IN length and height, a mare groweth till she be five yeares old, and a horse till he be sixe.

When

When a mare is past two yeares old she may be couered, but the best time is after foure yeare old.

Common mares may bring foales euery yeare; but let your best mares bring but euery second yeare, especially if they bring horse colts.

After couering by no meanes trauell your mares.

To get horse colts, couer before the full of the moone; and to get mare colts couer after the full.

To make a mare stand to her horsing, set her by the horse two or three dayes, that he may much desire & be acquainted before he couer her: after bring them out, and let him serue her, and haue ready a pale of water, which when the horse shrinketh from her, powre vpon the ridge of the mares backe; then set them so farre asunder as that the one may not heare the other: do this three mornings & three euenings together, then let her not come neare the horse after, till she be knit, lest the desire of him againe, make her to shoot out that which he kept before.

To know whether your mare be with foale about Christmas or no, powre a little water into her eare, and if she onely shake her head, she is then with foale, both if she shake both head and body also, she is not with foale.

When you weane your foales, take them from the mares foure dayes before the full of the moone; and after the foales haue so remained foure and twenty howres, let them againe sucke till they wax very full; then remoue them for altogether, and the next morning giue euery one three slippes of Sauin, and so after let them haue till they be three yeares old, all plenty of meate abroad, rather then in the stable.

Let your stallion for trotters be either *Neapolitan*

courser, or *Arabian*, *Turke*, or *Barbary*; and for amblers, either the *Spanish* Ienet, or the *Irish* Hobby.

Put your mares to the horse from midde March till midde May or midde Iune, the moone hauing newly changed.

It is good to put the horse and the mare for three or foure nights together in some vast empty house, and in the morning take the horse away and feede him well; but feede your mare sparingly, especially giue her little water.

At the end of sixe moneths, by no meanes chafe your mares: for then they are in quickning, and may easily be made to cast their foales.

The walle eye either in mare or in horse, doth neuer see perfectly, especially when there is any snow on the ground.

A mare goeth with foale, eleuen moneths and ten daies.

Let your mares be of a meane stature, large and broad, and of good shape; and the Stallion of like shape, but somewhat taller; and temper their natures thus: Put vnto the hote horse the coole mare, and to the hote mare the coole horse; and let your grounds wherein you breede, be dry, hilly, and with running streames in it.

CHAP. 103.

Certaine speciall Notes to be obserued in the buying of a horse.

First, marke his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an out-looking eye, good well raised shoulders, and a thicke large

large breast, broad brawne, large and broad flatte legges, short pasternes, and little feete : for long pasternes shew weaknesse, and broad feete shew dullnesse ; feele if he haue no Iglauanders, betweene his chappes, no splents, cuibe nor spauen ; looke he be not purficke or broken winded, put your hand before his eyes, to know if he see well: looke into his mouth for his age, if he be past eight yeares old; feele all downe the strunte of his taile with your hand, and if you feele that it be smooth, then the horse is not very old ; but if it haue any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good dayes are past. Let him runne at the halters end: for if he be lame, (hauing that liberty) he will fauour that legge which is amisse, and leane vpon it. If he turne vp the white of his eye, or lay his eare to his necke when he is ridden, he is a sullen iade, and full of naughty qualities ; if when you stirre him in the stable, he stare and looke backe vpon you with a stout countenance, it is a token of a good stomacke in him, and great aptnesse to be taught ; if he stirre the end of his taile as he passeth out and is ridden, and yet doth not whiske it, it sheweth that his pace is vnperfect; be sure to see him turne as short as may be, that you may know whether he be swayed in the backe or no ; the middle stature is the best, and the short knit horse is the strongest. The wall eye euer seeth the worst. The horse that is of nature gentle, swift, light, nimble, of easie pace, good colour, strong feete, good loynes, speedy in eating, and good at his prouender, is euer the best for vse, and the readiest money in the market. See if the haire in the spurring place be white : for it argueth slownesse

and spur-galling. The horse that will paw and beate the ground with his foote when he is stayed from going forwards, is euer likely to be good and durable in trauell. Many other notes there are, which by the obseruing of these, will easily come into your memory.

CHAP. 104.

Generall Notes concerning some simples already spoken of.

ALL manner of marrowes or pitches, of what kinde soeuer they be, must be kept by themselves in a dry coole place, and preserved from all filth or vncleannesse, and from the annoyance either of winde or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole yeare.

You shall keepe no Sirrops, nor sweete *Electuaries*, nor pilles, nor Powders, nor conserues of flowres, nor any oyntments, Sewets, or emplaster, about one whole yeare; onely bitter *electuaries*, or conserues of fruites or rootes will last fully out two yeares.

Of oyle some will last long, some must bee new made: oyles extract out of wood or mettals will last long.

Gather rootes in *Autumne*, but take the small sprigs from them and make them cleane and dry.

Dry small rootes in the shade and winde, and great rootes either in the winde and Sunne, or by the fire, lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keepe long, provided that neither Sun nor moysture hurt them.

Gather all manner of hearbes when they do most flourish,

flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole yeare.

Gather seedes and fruites when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole yeare.

Gather the rinde or barke of any simple when the hearbe is ripe; dry them and they will last many yeares.

The end of the first Booke.



THE
SECOND BOOKE

Containing all cures Chyrurgicall,
or such infirmities as being onely outward,
craue the vse of Surgery, and are called in
Horse-leach-craft, Horses
SOYRANCES.

Written by *Iarvis Markham.*



LONDON,
Printed by NICHOLAS OKES, for
ARTHUR IONSON.
1610.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION
1009 BROADWAY
NEW YORK, N. Y.





THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

What proportion of measure is required in euery member of a well shapen Horse.



EORASMVCH as the great substance of this Art of Surgery, or second part of Horse-leachcraft, applyed onely vnto outward infirmities, consisteth of incisions, cauterizings, corrodings, and dismembrings, as well as of comforting, incarnating, cleansing, conglutinating, and binding vp members in their true forme; and that all iointly together, go but about to make a true and well formed body: I thinke it meetest that I begin with the true proportion and measure which is required in euery member of a well shaped horse, that the carefull Farrier thereby vnderstanding how, and in what fashion euery lineament should be placed, or what proportion & quantity they do containe, he may at no time through ignorance either dismember or disgrace the same; as I haue many times scene simple Farriers do, when contrary to all art and rule they haue cut in sunder the rtaine cords, sinewes, and tendants, by which a horses limbes are gouerned. To begin then, you shal vnderstand that according to the description of the most

ancient & worthy Farriers) there are in a horses palate of his mouth, 12 barres or degrees like steps, one aboue another, standing (when his mouth is turned vpward) like a paire of staires; his tongue would be halfe a foote long, his vpper lippe sixe inches, and his neather lippe five inches long, each of his iawes would be ten inches long, his head from his eie downward full twelue inches long, his eares five inches long, the circuit or compasse of his eie, foure inches about, his necke from the nape of his head vnto the withers would be seuen handfuls, from the withers to the fillets twelue handfuls, and from the fillers to the setting on of the taile sixe handfuls: the length of the shoulder would be twelue inches, and the length of his shanke sixe inches; the length of his hinder hough would be twelue inches, and his canibrell five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the taile would be one hundred inches. Now as horses are bigger or lesser, so these measures either excede or are lesse, neither do I confidently build vpon these inch quantities of the ancient Farriers, because I hauing my selfe measured many horses, I neuer yet could finde any certainty in the proportions; onely this is the most certaintest rule that euer I could finde, that looke what quantity is betweene the nape of the horses necke, and the vitermost part of the withers, there must euer bee twice so much betweene the withers and the setting on of the taile; and looke what quantity is betweene the toppe of the shoulder-blade, or toppe of the withers to the elbow of the horse, it must be twice so much from the elbow to the setting on of the hoofe; and looke how much it is from the toppe

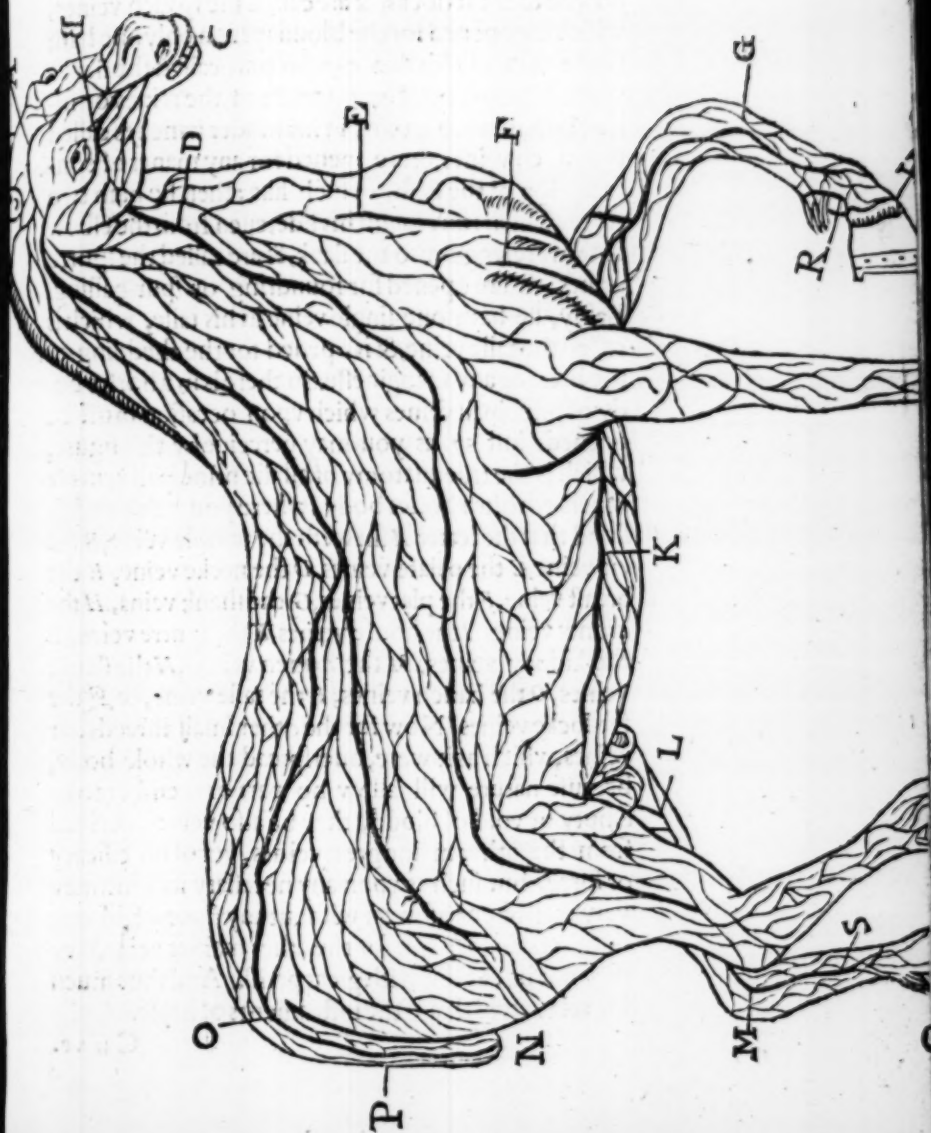
toppe of the hippe to the stifling place, it must bee twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on of the hinder noofe: and this is the certainest rule that euer I could finde for a horses truest proportion. And therefore for your better satisfaction, behold this picture, which is the true anatomy of a most perfect horse, with lines drawne from euery member, directing and shewing all the outward diseases or for-rances belonging to a horses body.

C H A P. 2.

*Of the Veines belonging to a Horse, and
how many there be.*

IT is most necessary that euery carefull Farrier know all the principall veines in a horses body, especially those which in the time of neede, or in sicknesse, are to be opened: and therefore to begin you shall know that from the liuer which is the fountaine of bloud, both in man and beasts, doth arise one maine great conduit or large veine, which ascending into the body, doth diuide it selfe into thus many seuerall branches or lesser riuers. First, within the palate of the mouth, aboue the first and third barres, are two notable veines which the best Farriers do touch or strike when the horse hath any disease in his head, braine, or stomacke: he hath also other two which descend down from the lower part of his eies vnto his nostrhels, & are euer opened for any griefe in the eies: he hath two others which are aboue his eies, and run crosse the temples of his head, & are called the temple veines, which are likewise opened for all maner of cold diseases in the head; he hath also

two great maine veines running alongst each side of his wind-pipe, euen from the vppermost ioint of his neather chap downe to the breast, which are called the necke veines; and are those which are ordinarily opened for any disease whatsoeuer. He hath then two veines which arise vpward from betweene his forelegs to the top of his breast, & are called the breast veines; & they are opened when the horse hath any feuer, or is sicke at the heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from betweene the forelegs, but do not mount so high as the breast veines, but rest vpon the formost bought of the forelegge: and they be called the palate veines, and they be opened either for foundring, or other grieue in the limbs. He hath other 2 veines which run downe from the elbow of the foreshoulder, down all along the inside of the forelegs, and are called the shanke veines, which are opened for splents, mallanders, or such like. He hath then foure veins which run alongst the fetlocks of the horse, & are called the shakell veines; which albeir they are but smal, yet they are many times opened for stiffnesse in the ioints, or for tiring: then he hath foure veines about the cronets of his hooves, & are called the cronet veins, and are opened for foundring in the feet, or for ring-bones: then he hath foure veines within his foure hooves, running about his toes, & are called the feet veins, and are only opened for foundring or frettizing in the feet: he hath then two maine great veines which descend downe from his stons alongst the inside of his thighs to his cambrell; & are called the kidney veines, which only are opened for diseases in the kidneyes: he hath then two other veines which descend from about the hinder cambrel, all alongst the inside of the hinder legges downe



downe to the fetlocks, & are called the spauen veines, which are opened for the blood spauen only: he hath then 2 veines in his flanks, which are called the flanke veins, & are opened for any griefe in the reins or fillets: he hath then 2 veins in his hinder hanches called the hanch veins, & are opened for any manner of consumption of the flesh, or such like: then he hath two veins which run alongst his side, even from the elbow of the forelegge vnto the flank, & are called the spurre veins, & are opened for foundring or spur-galling. Lastly, he hath one single veine in his taile, which is called the taile veine, & is opened for the shedding of the haire or any manginess. So there is in a horses body of principall veins which vpon occasion must be opened, iust 37. as you may perceiue by this figure, which is the true anatomy of all the principall veins & others within a horses body; where you are to vnderstand that the letter *A* sheweth the temple veine, *B* the cie veine, *C* the palate veins, *D* the necke veine, *E* the breast veine, *F* the plat veins, *G* the shank veins, *H* the cronet veins, *I* the hoofe veins, *K* the spurre veins, *L* the kidney veins, *M* the spauen veins, *N* the flanke veins, *O* the hanch veins, *P* the taile veine, & *Q* the fet-locke veins. Now for the other small threeds, or veins, which as it were, ouerspread the whole body, because nature will allow no part or member to be empty or void of blood, they be also veins, deriued from the other maine great veins, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as vpon any necessary incision may very well be cut asunder without any fluxe of blood, or other danger; but for the other maister veins, they may not be cut but with great perill. And thus much for veins, which are the instruments of heate.

The second Booke.

217

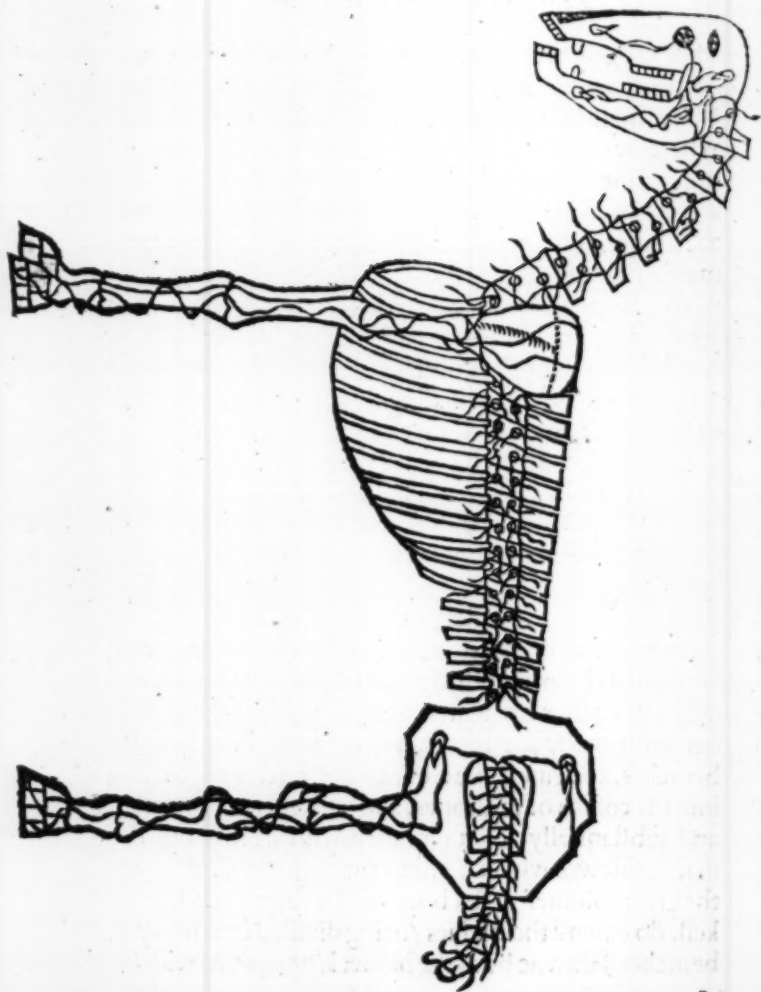
CHAP. 3.

Of the Sinewes in a Horses body.

TOuching the sinewes within a horses body, you shall vnderstand that from the braine, which is the principall fountaine or well spring of sinewes whatsoeuer, there is deriued one great maine sinew or tendant, which passing through the hollownesse of the necke and backe bone, doth extend it selfe euen to the nethermost ioynt in the horses strunt: from this maine sinew is deriued two smaller branches, which passing through certaine holes in the top of the horses skull, runne downe alongst the horses cheekes, euen to the point of his nostrhrels: then hath he two other branches, which passing through certaine holes in his nether chap, knit that and the vpper together, and so run downe by his great teeth, and meete iust below his nether lippe: then hath he twenty eight small threeds, which running through so many small holes in the seuen bones of his necke, knit them fast together: so likewise hath he small threeds which running through small holes, knit all his chine euen to the nether end of his strunt fast together; the number whereof is infinite and vncertaine: then hath he two maine great sinewes which extending themselues ouer both the spade bones, are deuided into many branches, and runne downe into the forelegges, euen into the coffin of the hoes, and knit every ioint fast and substantially together: then hath he two other maine sinewes which coming through two holes in the great columell or flat bone of the hippes or huc-kell, do extend themselues (being diuided into many branches) downe both the hinder legges, euen with-

Ff

in

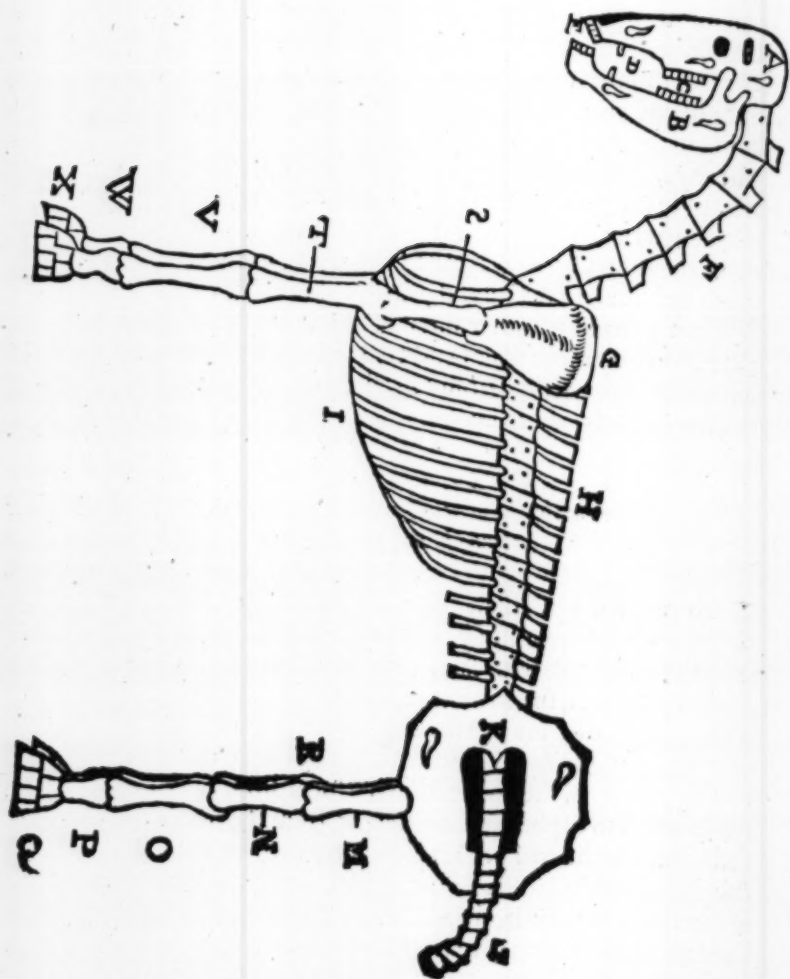


in the coffin of the hoofe also, and bind all these seuerall ioints fast and strongly together. Now lastly you shall vnderstand, that from the setting on of the horses necke, vnto the flat columell or huckell bone, doth extend one great broad sinew of three inches broad, being of one only thicke and smooth substance, without any one threed or branch deriued from it, which not only holdeth together the shoulder blades, but also couereth all the horses chine quite ouer; and this of the common Farriers is called pax-waxe: so that a horse hath in all of maine and principal sinewes, from whence a world of other sinewes are deriued, iust 38. as you may more plainly perceiue by this picture, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the sinewes within a horses body, and how they are diuided.

CHAP. 4.

*Of the number and situation of Bones in
a Horses body.*

First you shall vnderstand, that euery Horse or Oxe hath in his whole body, iust 170 seuerall bones, and no more; that is to say, in the vpper part of his head two bones, from the forehead to the nose two bones, his nether iawes two bones, of foreteeth 12. of tushes 4. of grinders 24. from the nape of the necke to the points of the spade-bones, seuen; from the spade-bones to the huckel bones eight, from the huckell bones to the end of the taile seuen: then is there the great broade hinder bone, which hath twelue seames or ioints in it; then is there the two spade-bones, and from thence to the forcels or canel bones other 2 bones called the marrow-bones; & from thence



to the first ioynt about the legges other two bones, and from thence to the knees two called the thigh bones, and from thence to the pasternes other two called the shanke bones, and from thence downward into the hoves be in all 16. little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horses breast whereunto are fastened 36. ribbes great and small, and to the colume behind be two bones, and from the molairs to the ioynts other two bones; and also two bones towards the ribbes, from the bending of the houghe vnto the legge, are two small bones, and from the legges to the two focils of the legge other two little bones, and from the pasternes into the hoofe, sixteene little bones; all which and their seuerall situations you shall more plainly behold in this picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together, that can be made by demonstration.

CHAP. 5.

How and when a Horse should be let blood, the end whereof, and the signes of the necessity.

THe ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at great difference touching the letting of a horse blood: for some would haue him let blood foure times in the yeare, that is to say, in the spring, in sommer, in Autumne and in winter. Others would haue him onely let blood three times in the yeare, namely in May when he is turned to grasse; because then the blood beginneth to encrease: secondly in September, that blood if it be inflamed may then euacuate and breathe forth: and thirdly in Decem-

ber, to let go the grosse and knotty blood which is bred by labor or careles keeping. Others would haue a horse to be let blood but once in the yeare, namely in the beginning of May onely when he is to be put to grasse, alledging this reason, that if the horse be not let blood in the spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be inflamed, and so draw vpon the horse some grieuous sickness. Others would haue the horse to be let blood in the necke veine not aboue once in the yeare, namely at the beginning of May; but in the palate of the mouth they would haue him let blood at the least once euery moneth, alledging that it wil cleare the sight, comfort the braine, & giue him good appetite to his meate; but to conclude, there is not any of these opinions, but are sound & good, so the horse be yong & in strength, his blood encreasing; but if he be old & his blood in the eb, then you cannot let blood too seldome. Now that it is fit a yong horse should be let blood, is proued by the daily experience of the *Polander* horses, who being at liberty out of a naturall instinct in themselves, faile not once a yeare to let themselves blood; yet we haue diuers of our best Farriers who would not haue a horse let blood before there be vrgent necessity, lest the vse of letting blood bring a horse to an euill custome, and draw on sickness vnexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to preuent a danger before it come, then to driue it away being present. Now that oft letting of blood breedeth in a horse weaknesse, and maketh the blood to resort to the inward parts, cloying the heart & intrails, & making the outward parts fat & vnweldy, there is no question but that the letting a horse blood

blood twice in the yeare, namely at the beginning of May, & the end of December (at which times onely I would haue a horse let blood & no other) should be accounted oft, I see no reason. Now for stallions, the ancient Farriers would by no meanes haue them let blood, because, say they, the couering of mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of seed doth counteruaile five ounces of blood, & truly I am of that opinion to; but whereas they likewise aduise by no means to let geldings blood, because the losse of their stones is the losse of their naturall heat; to that I am much contrary, because I haue found it by continuall experience, that geldings do as oft dy through the corruption & abundance of blood as horses; nay & much more oft, in as much as they want the helpes which horses haue for purging their bloods from vncleannesse. Now in the letting of horses blood, euery carefull Farrier is first to respect the climate vnder which the horse is bred, knowing that those horses which are bred in cold countries, haue euier more blood then those which are bred in the hot; then he must consider the time of the yeare, which would euier be the spring, or the fall of the lease, both those times being most temperat, neither exceeding in heate nor in cold. Next he must regard the time of the day, which would euier be in the morning fasting, so it be not at the horses awaking from sleepe, but at least an houre or two after: then he must look vnto the state of the moone, that the signe be not in that part of the body where he intendeth to let blood: next he must looke to the horses age, for if he be yong & not come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing; & if he be old and come to decrepidnes, his blood had more neede

neede be repaired then wasted. Lastly he shall looke to the horses strength and ancient custome, and accordingly he shall deale with him, obseruing that some horses may better spare two or three pound of blood then other some one pound. Now thus much I haue spoken touching ordinary & natural letting of blood without compulsion of any sicknesse or disease; but in case where sicknesse or infirmity craueth this office of letting blood, there you shall neither respect climate, season of the yeare, time of the day, signe, age, strength nor custome, but setting all aside, apply your selfe onely to the remouing of the infirmity. Now the signes to know if a horse stand in neede to be let blood, are these: his eyes will looke redde, and his veines will swell more then ordinary; also hee will haue a certaine itch about his maine and his taile, and will be continually rubbing them, and sometimes will shed some of his haire also; he will now and then pill about the roots of his eares, or in those places where the head-stale of the bridle lies: his vrine will be red and high coloured, and his dung will be blacke and hard: also if he hath redde inflammations, or little bubbles on his backe, or doth not digest his meate well, it is a signe the horse would be let blood: or if he haue any apparant signe of yellowes in the whites of his eyes, or in the inside of his lippes, either vpper or nether, it is a signe he would be let blood: for after any of these signes doth most commonly follow some one or other grieuous sicknes, which to preuent is the true art of a skilfull Farrier. Now it is meete that when you intend to let a horse blood (hauing leasure to do the same) that you suffer him to be thinly dyetted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end that

that his body may be quiet & not troubled with digestion. Now for the maner of letting a horse blood, you shall as neare as you can, let him stand vpon euen ground, & if it be the necke veine which you would strike, you shall take a small long cord with a noose, and putting it ouer the horses necke, as close to the setting on of the shoulder as you can, there draw it as straite as is possible, and then fasten it with a running knot, and straight you shall see the veines to appeare as bigge as a mans little finger, euen from the nether chap down the neck. Now you are to obserue that the place where you are to strike the veine in, is euer within 3 fingers or 4 fingers at the most, of the nether chap; as thus, if your horse haue a long, fine, thin necke and skin, then you may strike the veine within three fingers or lesse of the chap (sith the higher is euer the better;) but if he haue a short chub neck, with a thicke skin, and many wreathes, or rolles, about the setting on of his chaps, then you shall strike the veine at least foure fingers from the chap, lest those wreaths together with the thicknesse of the skinne, do so defend the veine that your fleame cannot reach it. When you haue thus raised the veine vp, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary side the horse, and with his fist to thrust the veine forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wette sponge, or with a little spetle, wette that part of the veine which you meane to strike, and then separating the haire, set your fleame euen and directly vpon the veine; and then with a good smart blow, strike it into the veine: which done, you shall cause one to put his finger into the horses mouth, and tickling him in the roose thereof, make him chaw and moue his

Gg

chappes,

chappes, for that will force the blood to spinne forth, Now the blood which you take from the horse, it is very necessary that you saue in diuers vessels for diuers causes, as first, that you may see when all the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is growne pure, and so remaineth being cold, that then you suffer the horse to bleed no mores; or else that you saue it to bath the horses body therewith, which is most wholsome: or else to make a medicine therewithall by mingling with the blood vinegar and oyle, and so bathe the horses body therewith, especially that place which was let blood; for the ancient Farriers hold an opinion that it is indued with a certaine naturall vertue and power to comfort the weak and feeble members of a horse, and to dry vp all euill humors. Now as soone as your horse hath bled sufficiently, you shall let loose the cord, & immediatly the veine will stoppe; then with that cord you shal stroake down the veine iust ouer the orrefire twise or thrice, which wil both close vp the hole & also turn the course of the blood: this done set the horse vp in the stable, & let him stand fasting 2. or 3. howres after, and then after diet him according as in your discretion you shall thinke meete, that is to say, if he be a sicke horse, then like a sicke horse with good prouender & warme mashes; but if he be a sound horse, then like a sound horse, either turne him to grasse, or keep him in the stable after his ancient custome. Now if you would let your horse blood either in the temple veins or the eie veins, you shal then cord him hard about the midst of the necke, and not neare his shoulders, hauing care that you touch not his wind-pipe, & so throttell him: for it will make both those veins shew most apparantly.

ly. If you intend to let the horse blood in the breast veines or plat veines, of some called the fore-thigh veines, you shall then cord him behind the shoulders close to the elbowes of the horse, and ouerthwart his withers, & that will make those two veines shew. Now you shall vnderstand, that not any of these veins last spoken of, as about the head or the breast, must be let blood by striking them with a fleame, (though it be the manner of our common Smithes,) for it is most beastly and butcherly, and also full of much danger by striking through the veine; but you shall with a fine sharpe lancet open the veine, euen in such sort as you see a skillfull Chirurgicalian open a veine in a mans arme. Now for the letting of a horse blood in the palate of the mouth, you shall but onely with a sharpe pointed knife, pricke the horse betweene the second and third barre, as deepe as a barley corne is long, and he will bleede sufficiently: as for all other veines in a horses body whatsoeuer, which are to be opened, you shall vnderstand that whensoever it is needfull that they bleede, that then they must bee taken vp and not corded at all. Now touching the taking vp of veines, and the manner how to do it you shall reade more at large in a particular chapter towards the end of this booke.

CHAP. 6.

Of outward Sorrhances what they are, and of certaine generall obseruations in the cure of them.

Outward sorrhances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of waies, that is to say, either it is an euill state and composition of

the body, which is to be discerned either by the shape, number, quantity, or site of the member euil affected & diseased: or else it is the loosning and diuision of an vnity, which as it may chance diuersly, so it hath diuers names accordingly. For if such a diuision or loosning be in the bone, then it is called a fracture: if it be in any fleshy part, then it is called a wound, or an vlcer: if it be in the veines, then a rupture; if in the sinewes, then a convulsion or crampe; and if it be in the skinne, then it is called an excoriation: and of all these seuerally I intend to intreate in the following chapters. Now forasmuch as in this generall art of Surgery or Sorrances, there are certaine generall obseruations or caueats to be held inuiolate, I will before I proceede any further, giue you a little taste thereof. First therefore, you shall vnderstand that it is the duty of euery good Farrier, neuer to burne or cauterize with hot Iron or with oyle, nor to make any incision with knife where there be either veines, sinewes, or ioints, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

Item, You shall neuer apply to any ioynt or sinewie part, either *Resalger*, *Arsenicke*, *Mercury sublimat*, nor any such violent corrosiue.

Item, It is euer better to lance with a hot Iron then a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize then to incise.

Item, Bloud doth euer produce white and thicke matters: choler a waterish thin matter, but not much; salt steame great abundance of matter: and melancholy many dry scabs.

Item, when you let bloud, you must take but the fourth part from a colt, which you take from a growne horse.

Item, You must neuer let bloud, except it be either

to diuert sicknesse and preferue health, or to refresh and coole the blood, or else to diminish blood, or to purge bad humours.

Item, In all impostumes or swelling soares, called *Tumors*, you must obserue the 4 times of the sicknes, that is to say, the beginning of the griefe, the encrease of the griefe, the perfection and state of the griefe; and lastly, the declination and amending of the griefe.

Item, In the beginning of euery such swelling apostumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) vse repercussive medicines, if they be not neare some principall part of the body; but then not, for feare of endangering life in the augmentation, vse mollifying medicines, and suppling to ripe them; and when they are ripe lance them, and let them out, or dry them vp; and in the declination of them, vse cleansing and healing medicines.

Item, All swellings are either hard or soft; the hard commonly will corrode, the soft will continue long.

Item, If you thrust your finger vpon any swelling vpon a horses legges, then if it presently rise againe and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable; but if the dent do remaine and continue still behind, then is the hurt old, and cometh of cold humors, and askes great art in the healing.

Item, When soares begin to matter, then they heale, but if the putrifaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Item, All cauterizing or burning with hot Irons, straineth things enlarged, dryeth vp what is too much moistned, dissolueth things gathered together or hardened, draweth backe things which are dispersed, & helpeth old griefes: for it ripeneth, dissol-

ueth, and maketh them to runne and issue forth matter.

Item, You must sometimes burn vnder the loare, to diuert humors, and somtimes aboue, to defend and withhold humors.

Item, It is euer better to burne with copper then with yron, because yron is of a malignant nature; Steele is of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

Item, All actual burning is to burn with instrument, and potentiall burning is to burne with medicines, as are caustiks and corrosiues,

Item, If you vse oft to blow pouders into a horse eies, it will make him blind.

Item, By no meanes take vp any veines in the fore-legges, vnlesse great extremity compell you: for there is nothing that will sooner make a horse stiffe and lame. Many other obseruations there are, which because they are not so generall as these be, and that I shall haue occasion to speake of them in other particular chapters, I thinke it here meete to omit them, and the rather because I will not be tedious.

CHAP. 7.

Of the diseases in the Eyes, and first of the weeping and watering Eye.

THe eies of a horse are subiect to many infirmities, as first to bee rheumatike or watry, then to be bloud-shotten, to be dimme of sight, to haue the pinne and webbe, the haw, the wart in the eye, the inflammation of the eies, the canker in the eye, or a stroake in the eye; of all which, some come of inward causes, as of humours resorting to the eyes; and some of

of outward causes, as heate, cold, or else by some stripe or blow.

And first to begin with the rheumaticke or watry eye, you shall vnderstand that according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the fluxe of humours distilling from the braine, and sometimes from the anguish of some blow or stripe receiued. The signes are, a continuall watering of the eye, and a close holding of the liddes together, accompanied sometimes with a little swelling. The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to take of *Bole-armonicke*, of *Terra-sigillata*, and of *Sanguis Draconis*, of each a like quantity; make them into powder, and then adde vnto them as much of the white of an egge and viniger, as will make them moist; and then spread it plaister-wise vpon a cloth, and lay it to the horses temples of his head about his eyes; and do this three daies together. Others vse to let the horse blood in the veines vnder his eyes, then to wash the eye twice or thrice in the day with white wine, & then to blow into the soare eye with a quill, the powder of *Tartaz Salgam*, and curtell bone, of each like quantity: or else take the yolke of an egge roasted hard, and mixe therewith the powder of comen, and binde it hot to the eye, and so let it rest a night or more. Other Farriers vse to take of pitch and rosen, and of masticke a like quantity; melt them together: then with a little sticke, hauing a clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, annoynt the temple veines on both sides a handfull about the eyes, as broade as a tweluepence; and then clappe vnto it, immediatly a few flockes of like colour to the horse, holding them close to his head,
with

with your hand, vnill they sticke fast to his head; then let him bloud on both his eye veines, if both eies be sore; and then wash his eies with white wine. Others vse onely to take a pretty quantity of life honny, and to dissolue it in white wine, and to wash the horses eies therewith: and sure if it proceede from any blow, it is a medicine sufficient inough; but if it proceede from any rheume or inward causes, then you shall take ground Iuy, beaten in a mortar, and mixt with waxe, and so laied to the eyes like a plaster, or else boyle wormewood in white wine, and wash the horses eyes therewith: also to spurt beere or ale now and then into the horses eyes, will cleare the sight passing well.

C H A P. 8.

*Of the Bloud shotten eye, proceeding from any
cause whatsoeuer.*

FOr any bloud-shotten eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoeuer, either outward or inward, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) of rose water, of *Malmsey* and of fennell water, of each three spoonefull; of *Tutie* as much as you may easily take vp betweene your thumbe and your finger; of cloues a dozen beaten into fine powder; mingle them well together, and being luke warme, or cold, if you please, wash the inward parts of the eye with a feather dipt therein twise a day untill the eye be well: or in stead hereof, to wash the eye either with the white of an egge, or with the iuyce of *Selladine*. Others vse to take the toppes of hawthornes, and boyling them in white wine, wash the

the eye therewith. Other Farriers take a dramme of *Synoper*, and as much of life hony, and as much of wheate flowre; mixe them with faire running water, so that they may be liquid and thinne: then seeth them with a very soft fire vntill they be thicke like an oyntment, and therewithall annoynt the eye. But the best receipt that euer I found for this grieve, is to take the whites of two egges, and beate it till it come to an oyle; then put to it two spoonefull of rose water, and three spoonefull of the iuice of housleeke; mixe them well together: then dippe therein little round plegants of flat cakes, of soft tow as bigge as a horses eye, and lay them vpon the horses eyes, renuing them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the horses eyes found againe.

CHAP. 9.

Of Dimnesse of sight, or Blindnesse.

Dimnesse of sight, or blindnesse, may happen to a horse diuers wayes, as by some straine when the inward strings of the eyes are stretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labour, or by the supporting of a great burthen beyond the horses ability, or by some blow or wound: any of these are mortall enemies to the eyes and sight. The signe is the apparant want of sight, and an euill affected colour of the eye. Now for the cure it is thus: If the sight be gone, and yet the ball of the eye be found, then you shall take according to the opinion of some Farriers, a pretty quantity of May butter, with as much rosmary, & a little yellow rosen, with a like quantity of

Hh

fella.

belladine; then stamp them all together, & fry them with the May butter; then straine it, and keepe it in a close boxe (for it is a iewell for sore eyes) and annoint your horses eyes therewith at least twice a day: it is also good to heale any wound. Other Farriers vse to let the horse bloud in the eye veines, and then wash his eyes with red-rose water. Others vse to take the gall of a blacke sheepe, and beate it, and straine it; and then to wash the eyes therewith. Others vse to burne the horse vnder the eyes, that the ill humours may distill forth; and then to annoint his eyes either with the marrow of a sheepes shanke, and rose water mixt together, or else with the iuice of ground luy. Other Farriers vse to take a Mould-warpe, and lapping her all ouer in clay, burne her to ashes; and then to take of that powder, & blow it into the horses eyes. Other vse to take an empty egge shell, and fill it with bay salt; then burne it till it be blacke: then adde to it of burnt allome the quantity of your thumb; beate them together to fine powder; then mixe some of this powder with fresh butter, and wipe it into the horses eyes with a feather; then clappe the white of an egge dipt in flaxe, ouer his eyes: do this once a day for a leuennight, & after but once in two dayes: this is most excellent for any filme, and also for a pearle. Others vse to take two dry tile-stones, and rubbe them together, and blow the powder of it with a quill into the horses eyes three or foure dayes together.

CHAP. IO.

*Of the Pearle, Pinne, Webbe, or any spot in
the Horses eye.*

THe Pearle, the Pinne, the Webbe, or any vnna-
turall spot, or thicke filme ouer a horses eye, pro-
ceedeth, for the most part, from some stroake recei-
ued; yet the pearle, which is a litle round, thicke,
white spot like a pearle, growing on the sight of the
horses eye, comes many times from naturall causes,
and euen from descent of Sire and Damme, as I haue
often found by experience. The signe is, the appa-
rant sight of the infirmity; and the cure, according
to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is to take
fixe leaues of ground Iuy, and a branch of felladine,
and bray them in a mortar, with a spoonefull or two
of womans milke; and then straine it through a cleane
linnen cloth, and put it into a close glasse, and then
droppe of it as much into the horses eye at a time, as
will fill halfe a hazell nut shell: and it is the fittest to
be done at night onely: do thus thrice at the least,
and for three daies after, keepe the horse as much as
may be, from any light. Other Farriers vse to annoint
the horses eyes with the marrow of goates shankes, or
Deeres shankes, and rose water mixt together; or else
to wash his eyes with the iuice of the berries and
leaues of ground Iuy, or other Iuy mixt with white
wine; and to blow into his eyes the powder of blacke
flint, or of land oysters; but that powder must be made
so exceeding fine, as by art in searcing can any waies
be brought to passe. And then for the taking away of
any filme or pearle, there is no medicine more soue-

reigne. There be other Farriers which vse to take the leane of a gammon of bacon, & dry it, & therof make a powder, & blow it into the horses eye. Others vse to take white ginger made into very fine powder, & blow it into the horses eies; yet before you so do, if the web haue continued any long time, it shall not be amisse, first to annoint the horses eye with capons grease. Others vse to blow into the horses eye, the powder of elder leaues dried, or else the powder of mans dung dried, or the powder of a gray whetstone mixt with the oyle of hony, and put into the horses eie. Others vse to take the yolke of an egge, with salt burnt & beaten to powder, and blow it into the horses eye: or else the powder of the cuttell bone Others vse to take either elder leaues dried, or mans dung dried, & mixe it with the powder of the shel or bone of the crab-fish, and blow it into the horses eye. Others take *Tutty* beaten to powder, & with a quill blow it iust vpon the pearle. Other Farriers vse to take (and sure it is not inferior to any medicine whatsoeuer) a good quantity of white salt, & lapping it round vp in a wet cloth, put it into the fire, and burne it to a red coale: then taking it forth and breaking it open, you shall finde in the midst thereof, a white chore as bigge as a beane, or bigger: then picke out that chore, and beate it to powder, and mixe it with a little white wine: then after it hath stood a while, take the thicke thereof that lyeth in the bottome, and put it into the horses eye; and with the thin wash his eye: do thus once a day till the pearle be consumed. Others vse to take the iuice of rue, and put it into the horses eye: or else to make a hole in an egge, & put forth all that is within it, and fill the shell with pepper; and closing it in
an

an earthen pot, put it into a hot burning ouen till it be white hot : then take it forth, and beate the pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the horses eye. Others vse to take of pommis stone, of Tartarum, and of *Sal gemma*, of each like weight; and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a litle of that into the horses eye, continuing so to do till the eye be well. Others vse onely to blow the powder of *Sandenoire* into the horses eye, affirming that it alone hath sufficient force and vertue to breake any pearle or webbe in a very short space, without any other composition; but surely I haue found the powder of flint, and the powder of white salt burnt, to be much more stronger.

CHAP. II.

Of the Haw in the Horses eye,

THe haw is a gristle growing betwixt the neather eye lidde and the eye, and it couereth sometimes, more then the one halfe of the eye. It proceedes of grosse and tough steamy humours, which descending downe from the head, and knitting together, do in the end grow to a horne or hard gristle. The signes thereof, are a watering of the eye, and an vnwillling opening of the neather lidde; besides an apparant shew of the haw it selfe, if with your thumb you do but put downe the nether lidde of the horses eye. The cure is, first take a needle & a double threed, put it through the tippe of the horses eare, which done, put the needle likewise through the vpper eye lid of the horse vpwards, and so draw vp the eye lidde, and fasten it to the eare, then with your thumbe

Hh 3


put

put downe the neather lidde, and you shall plainly see the haw : then thrust your needle through the edge of the haw, and with the threed draw it out, so as you may lay it vpon your finger ; then fasten the threed about your little finger to hold it constantly ; and then with a very sharp knife cut crosse the gristle of the inside next the horses eye ; and so separating the skin & the fat from the gristle, cut the gristle quite out : then cutting your threedes, draw them cleane out, both of his eye liddes and out of the haw : then wash all the horses eye either with ale, beere, or white wine, and plucke away all the long haire from about the horses eyes, being sure to leaue no bloud within the horses eye. And in this manner of cure you must obserue, that by no meanes you cut away too much of the wash or fat about the haw ; nor any part of the blacke that groweth by the end of the haw ; for that will make the horse bleare eyed. There be other Farriers which vse after they haue cut out the haw, to annoint the eye sixe dayes after with sallet oyle, the marrow of sheeps shanks & salt mixt together. Others vse to take of the iuice of ground Iuy stamp in a mortar, with the iuice of Iuy berries, and mixe them either with water or white wine ; and so plaister-wise lay it to the horses eye, renewing it morning and euening, and it will cate away the haw. Others vse after the haw is cut away, to lay to the eye a plaister of camomill and of hony beaten together ; any of all which is sufficient enough. Now you are to note by the way, that the horse which hath one haw, commonly hath two : for they continually go together.

CHAP. 12.

Of Moone eyes or Lunaticke eyes.

THe moone eyes, or lunaticke eyes, are of all soare eyes the most dangerous and noylome, and do proceede from hot humours, descending from the head, and stirred vp by the extremity of ouer-riding, or compelling a horse to do more then nature will giue him leaue; as I haue seene a slothfull and heauy horse brought to be moone eyed by the folly of his rider, who would force him to stand, and trot contrary to the vigor of his spirit; so likewise I haue seene delicate mettald horses brought to be moone eyed, when their riders would not temper the freenesse of their natures, but haue giuen them leaue to runne into all violence. Now they be called moone eyes, because if the Farrier do obserue them, he shall perceiue that at some times of the moone, the horse will see very prettily, and at some times of the moone, he will see nothing at all. Now the signes hereof are, when the horses eyes are at the best, they will looke yellowish and dimme; and when they are at the worst, they will looke redde, fiery, and angry. The cure is to lay all ouer the temples of the horses head, the plaister of pitch, rosen, and masticke, mentioned in the chapter of watery eyes: then vnder each of his eyes with a sharp knife make a slit of an inch long, about foure fingers beneath his eyes, and at least an inch wide of the eye veines; then with a cornet loosen the skin about the breadth of a groat, and thrust therein a round peece of leather as broad as a two-pence with a hole in the midst, to keepe the hole open; and looke to it once

once a day, that the matter may not be stopped; but continually runne the space of ten dayes: then take the leather out, and heale the wound with a little flaxe dipt in this salve. Take of Turpentine, of hony, and of waxe, of each like quantity, and boyle them together; which being a little warmed will be liquid to serue your purpose; and take not away the plaisters which are vpon his temples, vntill of themselves they fall away; which being false, then with a small hot drawing Iron, make a starre in the midst of each temple veine, where the plaisters did lye, which starre would haue a hole in the midst, made with the butten end of your drawing Iron in this sort. 

Now there be other Farriers which in stead of the slits vnder the eye, and the peece of leather, which is a plaine rowell, onely do take a small blunt hot Iron, and about an inch and an halfe beneath the neather lidde, to burne some 5 holes all of a row, according to the compasse of the horses eye, and to burne those holes euen into the bone; and then once a day to annoynt them with fresh grease or sweet butter.

CHAP. 13.

Of the Canker in the eye.

A Canker in the eye commeth of a ranke and corrupt bloud, descending from the head into the eye, where it congealeth a little worne in manner, as it were the head of a pismyre, which groweth in the neather end of the horses eye, next to his noseward. It proceedeth many times in the gristle of the nose, which if it chance to eate through, it will then passe into the head, and so kill the horse. The signes there-
of

of are, you shall see redde pimples, some great & some small, both within and without the eie, vpon the eye lids, and all the eye it selfe will looke redde and be full of very corrupt matter. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is to take as much burnt allome as an hazell nut, and as much of greene copporas, and bake them both together vpon a tile-stone; and then grinde them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a spoonfull of hony, & mixe them all together; and then with a clout dipt therein, rubbe the sore, till it bleede: and do thus seuen daies together, and it will cure the canker. There be other Farriers, which for this canker in a horses eye, will first let the horse blood in the necke veine of the same side that the soare eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottell of blood: then take of roach allome, and of greene copporas, of each halfe a pound, of white copporas one ounce; and boyle them in three pints of running water, vntill the halfe be consumed: then take it from the fire, and once a day wash his eye with this water, being made luke warme with a fine linnen cloth, and cleanse the eye therewith, so as it may looke raw: and do this till the eye be whole.

CHAP. I4.

For a Stripe or Blow vpon a Horses eye.

IF a horse shall catch any stripe or blow vpon his eye, either with whippe, rodde, cudgel, or any such like mischance, or by one horses biting of another, when they either play or fight: then for the cure thereof, (if you take it when it is new done) you shall onely blow into his eye, either the powder of

Sandeuire, or the fine powder of white salt, after the eye hath bene washt with a little beere; but if the eye be more soare, and haue continued longer, then you shall take a small leafe of bread, and pull out all the crummes; then fill the leafe full of burning coals, vntill it be well burned within: then take of that crust and put it in white wine; and after it is well soaked, lay it to the soare eye; then take sope water, and cold water mixt together, and wash all the eye browes therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you shall let him bloud on the temple veines; and if he do rubbe or chafe his cie, you shall let him bloud of the veines vnder his eyes, & wash his eyes with cold sope water; but if his eyes do chance to looke redde with the blow, then you shall lay vnto them a plaister of redde lead and fall. royle beaten well together. Others vse to take the iuice of plantane, stamp and mixt with white wine, and so layed to the soare eye. Others vse both for this diseale, or any other soare eye, to stampe strong nettles with a little beere, and then straining it to squirt thereof into the horses eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of *Sandeuire* a little into his eye, and then be carefull to keepe the horses eye from winde or cold; but if you must needs ride him, then put a wollen cloath before the horses eyes; also it is not amisse to let him bloud on his eye veines, and the twice dressing will be sufficient. Other Farriers vse first to annoynt the soare cie three daies together with hennes or capons grease to mollifie it: then take a litle life hony, and warming it, wipe it into the horses eye with a feather. Others take the iuice of plantane mixt with hony, or else the iuice of tyme mixt with hony, and put it into the
horses

horses eye Others vse to take the ashes of an old shoos sole burnt in an oven, & put it into the horses eye: or else the powder of a gray whetstone blowne into the soire eye; both are speedy remedies. Others vse to take the iuice of smullage and of fennell, and mixing them with the white of an egge, put it into the horses eye once a day till the eye be whole.

CHAP. 15.

For a Wart in the Eye.

A Wart in a horses eye, is a fleshy excretion, or a fleshy knot growing either vpon the eye, or vpon the edge or inside of the eye liddes. It proceedeth from a thicke steame, which descendeth to the eye by meanes that the horse is too much kept in a darke stable without light; and this infirmity will make a horses eye consume and grow little. The cure is to take roach allome, and burne it on a tile-stone, and then put as much white copporas thereunto not burnt, and grinde them to powder; then lay some of that powder iust vpon the head of the wart; and do thus once a day till the wart be consumed away.

CHAP. 16.

For any Inflammation in a Horses eyes.

Horses may diuersly haue inflammations in the eyes, as by long standing in the stable, with fowle feeding and no exercise, or by moats falling into his eyes, or by ranknesse of blood and such like; any of which will breed an inflammation or sorenesse in the eyes. The signes are itching and rubbing of the eyes,

and a little swelling, with some loathnesse to open the eye liddes. The cure is, first to let him bloud vpon the temple veines, and vpon the eye veines; and then to wash his eyes with milke and hony mixt together. Others after bloud letting, will wash the horses eyes with hony and *Aloes epatica* mixt together: and others will wash his eyes with *Aloes* dissolued in white wine; any of which is approued to be most excellent for any soare eye.

CHAP. 17.

Of the Impostume in the eare of a Horse.

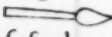
Impostumes which breed in the eare of a horse, proceede from diuers causes, as from some great blow about the head, or from wringings with a hard halter, or from some euill humours congealed in the eares by some extreme cold. The signes whereof appeare plainly by the burning and painfull swelling of the roots of the eares, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is first to ripe the impostume with this plaister: take of linseed beaten into powder, and of wheat flowre, of each halfe a pint, of hony a pint, of hoggesgrease, otherwise called barrowes grease, one pound; warme all these things together in an earthen pot, and stirre them continually with a flat sticke or slice, vntill they be thoroughly mingled and incorporated together; and then spread some of this plaister being warme, vpon a peece of linnen cloth or soft white leather, so broad as the swelling and no more, and lay it warme vnto it; and so let it remaine one whole day, and then renew it againe, continuing so to do vntill it either do breake, or else grow so ripe that

that you may lance it downeward, so that the matter may haue passage out; then taint it with a taint of flax dipped in this salve euen to the bottome, that is to say, take of *Metrosturm*, of sallet oyle and turpentine, of each two ounces, & mingle them together, & make the horse a biggen of canuase to close in the soare, so as the taint with the oyntment may abide within the soare, renewing the taint once a day vntill it be whole; but if the horse haue paine in his eares, without any great pain or inflammation, then thrust into his care a little blacke wolfe, dipt in the oyle of camomile, & that will ease him; but if the impostume be broken before you perceiue it, and that you see matter runne from the horses eares, then you shall take of oyle of roses, of *Venice* turpentine, and of hony, of each like quantity, and mixing them well together, warme it luke warme vpon a few coales, and then dipping blacke wolfe therein, thrust it downe into the horses care that runneth, renewing it once a day vntill the care leaue running.

CHAP. 18.
Of the Polle euill.

THE Polle euill is a great swelling inflammation or apostume in the nape of a horses necke iust betweene his care towards his maine, and proceedeth sometimes from the horses struggling or striding in his halter, especially if the halter be of hard new twound hempe; sometimes it proceedeth from euill humors, gathered together in that place, or else from some stripe or blow giuen to the horse by some rude keeper, carter, or man of little discretion: for that

part being the weakest and tenderest part about the head, is the soonest offended and grieved with for-
 rance. The signes of this disease is an apparant swell-
 ling betwene the horses eares, and on each side his
 necke, which in continuance of time, will breake of
 it owne accord, yet doth euer rot more inwardly then
 outwardly, from whence it comes that this disease is
 more commonly called of our common and ignorant
 Farriers, the fistula in the necke, then the polle-cuill;
 and in truth it is an ulcer, so hollow and so crooked,
 and so full of sharpe matter, like vnto lye, that it very
 little differeth from a fistula, and is of all impostumes,
 except the fistula it selfe, the most hardest to cure:
 therefore I would wish euery carefull Farrier to take
 this cure in hand so soone as is possible, that is to say,
 before it breake if it may be.

Now for the general cure (according to the opinion
 of the ancient Farriers) it is thus: First, if it be not bro-
 ken, ripe it with a plaister of hogs grease, layd vnto it so
 hot as may be, and make a biggen for the powle of his
 head to keep it from cold; which biggen would haue
 two holes open, so as his eares may stand out; and re-
 new the plaister euery day once vntill that it breake,
 keeping the soare place as warme as may be; and if
 that you see it will not breake so soone as you would
 haue it, then looke where it is softest, and most nee-
 test to be opened; take a round hot Iron, or a copper
 Iron (for that is the better) as bigge as a mans little
 finger, and sharpe at the point made in this figure;

 and then about two inches beneath the
 soft place, thrust it in a good deepnesse vpward, so as
 the point of your cauterizing Iron may come out at
 the ripest place, to the intent that the matter may de-
 scend

scend downeward, and come out at the neather hole, which would alwaies be kept open; and therefore taint it with a taint of flaxe dipt in hogs greafe warme, and lay also a plaister of hogges greafe vpon the same, renewing it euery day once for the space of foure dayes: which is done chiefly to kill the heate of the fire; then at the foure dayes end, take of Turpentine halfe a pound, cleane washed in nine sundry waters, and after that thoroughly dried, by thrusting out the water with a slice on the dishes side; then put thereunto two yolkes of egges, and a little saffron, and mingle them well together: that done, search the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a taint of a peece of dry sponge neuer wet, so long as it may reach neare the bottome, and so bigge as it may fill the wound; and annoint the taint with the foresaid oyntment, & thrust it into the wound either with that quill, or else by winding it vp with your finger and thumb by little and little, vntill you haue thrust it home; and then lay on the plaister of hogges greafe made luke warme, renewing it euery day once or twise vntill it be whole; but if the swelling ceasse, then you neede not to vse the plaister, but onely to taint it; and as the matter decreaseth, so make your taint euery day lesser and lesser vntill the wound be perfectly whole. Now if this disease of the pollecuill haue broken of it selfe, and by negligent looking vnto, haue continued so long that it is turned to a fistula, which you shall know both by the great and crooked hollownesse inwardly, and by a sharpe thin water which will issue out thereof outwardly: then you shall take (according to the opinion of other Farriers) of vnseckt lime, and of *Arsnicke*, of each like quantity

quantity; beate them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the iuice of garlick, of onions and of wal-woort, of each like quantity, & of holly as much as all the rest; boile them vpon a soft fire, & stirre them al well together vntill they be as thicke as an ointment; then wash the soare with very strong vinegar, & fil the hole full of the aforesaid ointment, by dipping a taint therein twice a day; then lay a plaister of hogs greafe vpon the rent to make it keep in, and vse this vntil the horse be whole. Other Farriers vse to take orpiment, vnleackt lime, and verdigreafe of each like quantity temper them with the iuice of pellitorie, blacke inke, hony and strong vinigar of each like quantity, boile them and stirre them well together, vntil they be very thicke, then make thereof smals rolles, and put them into the hollow place of the same forance: now you are to note that both this and the last recited salue before this are onely to kill the ranckerous and sharpe humor which brings the sore vnto a fistula, which so soone as you haue killed, which you shal know by the matter which will be white and thick, then you shall heale vp the sore either with the poudre of Sauin or the poudre of hony and lime backed together, or else by annointing it with tarre and sallet oyle or fresh hogges greafe mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this forance doe first open the sore with a hot yron, and then take redde lead or blacke sope, and mixing them very well with water till it be good and thicke, taint the horse therewith till he be whole. Others vse to take a quant of water, halfe a pound of roach allome, foure peny worth of *Mercury*, a quarter of a pound of verdigreafe, and mixing them well together, wash the horses soare with this water till it begin

gin to dry vp, and then heale it with the pouders before named.

CHAP. 19.

Of a Horse that is laue ear'd, and how to helpe him.

For a horse to be laue ear'd, is as foule a disgrace, and as much deformity to his beauty as to want the true proportion and vse of any outward member whatsoever. It proceedeth from a naturall infirmity, and is ingendred euen from the first conception; and although few of our Farriers either haue endeouored themselves, or know how to helpe it; yet there is nothing more certaine then that in this sort it may be cured. First take your horses eares and place them in such manner as you would haue them stand, and then with two little boords or peeces of trenchers three fingers broad, hauing long strings knit vnto them, bind the eares so fast in the places where they stand that by no meanes or motion they may stirre; then betwixt the head and the root of the eare, you shall see a great deale of empty wrinkled skinne, which with your finger and your thumb you shall pull vp, and then with a very sharpe paire of sizers you shall clip away all the empty skin close by the head: then with a needle and redde silke you shall stitch the two sides of the skinne close together, and then with a salue made of turpentine, Deeres suet and hony, of each like quantity melted together and made into an oyntment, heale vp the fore; which done, take away the splents which held vp his eares, and you shall see his eares will keepe the same place still as you set them, without any alteration, and this you shall euer find as certaine as the healing of a cut finger.

CHAP. 20.

*Of the Viues or hard Kirnells betweene the
chappes and the necke.*

THe viues are certaine great kirnells which grow from the roote of the horses eare, downe to the lower part of his neather iaw betweene the chappe and the necke; they are in proportion long, narrow, and round, and are naturall things proper and due to euery horse; but when either through ranke-nesse of blood, or aboundance of corrupt humours resorting to that place they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foule sovrances and impostumations most dangerous; they are inwardly very full of little white salt kirnells, and they breede great paine in the horses throât. This disease as farre forth as I can finde by any demonstration, is the disease which in men we call the squinancie or quinzy, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the strangle, for that hath no coherence with the infirmity. For the signes of the disease there needes small repetition, insomuch as the grieve is apparant to the eye; and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus: If you see the kirnelles to ranckle and swell, you shall take the horses eare, and laying it downe alongst the necke of the horse, at the very end or tippe of the eare, cut a hole through the skinne of the necke, the length of an almonde or better, and then with a crooked wire picke out all those kirnells which you finde inflamed; which done, fill the hole full of salt: then about the end of three dayes you shall finde the soare beginne to matter:

matter: then wash it either with barke water, or with the iuice of sage: then take of hony, of sweet butter, and of tarre, of each halfe a spoonesfull, and melte them together; and as soone as you haue washt the soare cleane, put into it of this oymntment the quantity of a beane, and so dresse the horse once a day vntil he be whole. There be others of our most ancient English Farriers, which for this sorranee vse first to draw the soare right downe in the midst with a hot Iron from the root of the eare, so farre as the tip of the eare wil reach; being pulled down, & vnder the root againe draw 2. strikes on each side like an arrow head in this forme: then in the midst of the first line, lance them with a lancet, and taking hold of the kirkels with a paire of fine thin pinsons, pull them so farre forward as you may cut the kirkels out without hurting the veine: that done, fill the hoale with salt, and heale it vp as aforesaid. Now the most of the Italian Farriers vse this cure: First, take a sponge steeped well in strong vinegar, and binde it vnto the seare place, renewing it twice a day vntill the kirkels bee retted: that done, lance it in the neathermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill vp the hole with salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warme water and a sponge; and then anoint the place with hony and fitch flowre mixt together; but in any case beware during this cure, that you touch not the kirkels with your bare finger, for feare of venoming the place, which is very apt for a fistula to breede in. Now there be other English Farriers, which vse either to ripen the soare by laying

to a plaister of hot hogges grease, or a plaister of barley meale, mixt with three ounces of raisins, sod well together in strong wine, or else they cut out the kirkels. Now whether you cut them out, burne them out, or rot them out (of all which I hold rotting the best) you shall euer fill the hole with nettles and salt being chopt and mixt together: or else taint it with tents dipt in water, and mixt with sallet oyle and salt. Others vse to burne them downeward with a hot Iron in the midst, from the eare to the iaw bone, drawing two crosse stroakes, and then lance it in the midst, and plucke out the kirkels, and fill the hole with bay salt, and the croppes of nettles well chopt together: or else put onely salt into the hole, and take the croppes of nettles well chopt and mixt with bay salt, and two spoonfull of strong vinegar, and straine it, & put in either eare a spoonfull thereof, and put some black wolle after it, & so bind vp his eares. Others vse to ripen them either by laying to the soare, wet hay, or hot horse litter; & as soone as they are ripe (which you shall know by the softnesse, to lance the skinne, and take out the kirkels, and then fill the hole with the powder of hony and vnsleckt lime mixt together and burnt. Others vse after the kirkels are ripened & taken out, to take of *Egrimony*, hony, and violet leaues, of each like quantity, & stamping them well together, to plaister the soare therewith, till it be whole. Others vse after the kirkels are taken out, to wash the soare with copporas water, and then to tent the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge; and after to heale it with waxe, Turpentine, and hogges grease molten well together.

CHAP. 21.
Of the Strangle.

THe strangle (howsoever our old Farriers make a long discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kinde of quincy, but a meane inflammation of the throat, proceeding from some cholericke or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the throat veines into those parts, and there breedeth some hot inflammation; being stirred vp either by some great cold in winter, or cold taken after labour: it is a great and a hard swelling betweene the horses neather chappes vpon the roots of the horses tongue, and about his throat; which swelling, if it be not prevented, will stoppe the horses wind-pipe, & so strangle or choake him; from which effect, and none other the name of the disease tooke his deriuation. The signes of this disease besides the apparant sight thereof, and the palpable feeling of the same, is, the horses temples of his head wil be hollow, & his tongue will hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes also will be swolne, and the passage of his throat so stopt, that he can neither eate nor drinke; and his breath will be exceeding short. The cure thereof according to the most ancient Farriers, is with a round small hot Iron to thrust a hole through the skinne on both sides the wessand; and then after it beginneth to matter, to mixe butter, Tanners water and salt together, and euery day annoynt the soare therewith till it be whole. Other of the ancient Farriers vse first to bathe the horses mouth and tongue with hot water; and then annoynt the soare place with the gall of a bull: that

done, giue him this drinke: take of old oyle two pounds, of old wine a quart, nine figges, and nine leekes heades well stamped and brayed together, and after you haue boiled these a while, before you straine them, put thereunto a little *Nitrum Alexandrinum*, and giue him a quart of this euery morning and evening: also you may if you will let him bloud in the palate of the mouth, and powre wine and oyle into his nostrils, & also giue him to drinke the decoction of figs & *Nitrum* sodden together, or else to annoint his throat within with *Nitre*, oyle & hony, or else with hony and hogges dung mixt together. Other Farriers vse to rowell the horse vnder the throat, and to draw the rowell twice or thrice a day, annointing it with fresh butter and keeping his head warme. Other of our latter and better experienced Farriers, vse first (if his yeares will permit it) to let the horse bloud in the necke veine: then to lay to the soare this ripening plaister: take of mallowes, linseed, rue, smal-lage, and ground Iuy, of each like quantity; boyle all these together in the grounds of beere: then put to a pretty quantity of oyle de bay, with a little *Dia Al-thea*: then take it from the fire, and therewith make your plaister, and lay it to the soare, suffering the horse by no means to drink any cold water: after the soare is broken, lay bran steept in wine vnto it, till it be whole. Others vse to cut the kirkels out betweene the iawes, & then to wash the soare with butter & beere, giuing the horse to drinke new milke & garlike, and iuyce of the leaues of birch; or in winter the baike of birch, or else to annoint it with tarre and oyle till it be whole. Now, for mine owne part, the best cure that cuer I found for the strangle was this: As soone as I found the

the swelling to arise betweene his chappes, to take a yaxe candie, and holding it vnder the the horses chappes close to the swelling, burne it so long till you see the skinne be burnt through, so that you may, as it were, raise it from the flesh: that done, you shall lay vnto it, either wet hay, or wet horse litter, and that will ripen it, and make it breake: then lay a plaister vnto it only of Shooe-makers waxe, and that will both draw, and heale it. Now if it breake inward, and will not breake outward, and so auoydeth onely at his nose, then you shall twice or thrice euery day, perfume his head by burning vnder his nostrils either Frankinsence or masticke, or else by putting a hote coale into wet hay, and so making the smoake thereof to ascend vp into the horses head.

C H A P. 22.

Of the Cankerous Vicer in the Nose.

THat which we cal the cankerous vicer in the nose, is onely a fretting humor eating and consuming the flesh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time, will eate through the gristell of the nose. It cometh of corrupt bloud, or else of a sharpe hunger ingendred by meanes of some extreme cold. The signes are, the horse will oft bleede at the nose, and all the flesh within his nose will be raw, and filthy stinking sauours and matter will come out at his nose. The cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers, is: take of greene copporas and of allome, of each one pound, of white copporas, one quarterne; and boile these in a pottell of running water, vntill a pinte be.

be consumed, then take it off and put thereunto halfe a pint of hony : then cause his head to be holden vp with a drenching staffe, and squirt into his nosthrels with a squirt of brasse or pewter, some of this water being luke warme, three or foure times one after another; but betwixt euery squirting giue him liberty to hold downe his head, and to snurt out the filthy matter; for otherwise perhaps you might choake him : and after this it shall be good also without holding vp his head any more, to wash and rubbe his nosthrels with a fine clowt bound to a stickes end, and dipt in the aforesaid water; and do thus once a day vntill the horse be whole. Other Farriers vse if they see this canker to be of great heate, and burning in the soare with exceeding great paine, then you shall take the iuice of purslaine, lettice, and night-shade, of each like quantity, and mixe them together, and wash the soare with a fine cloath dipt therein, or else squirt it vp into his nosthrels and it will allay the heate. Others take of hyssope, sage, and rue, of each a good handfull, and seeth them in vrine and water to the third part of them : then straine them out, and put in a little white copporas and hony, and aqua-vitæ, and so either wash or squirt the soare place with it : then when the canker is kild, make this water to heale it : Take of rib-woort, bettony, and daylies, of each a handfull : then seeth them well in wine and water, & wash the soare three or foure times a day therewith vntill it be whole. Others vse to take Chrystall, and beating it into fine powder, to strow it vpon the canker, and it will kill it.

MAny horses, (especially yong horses) are oft subiect to this bleeding at the nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the great abundance of blood, or that the veine which endeth in that place, is either broken, fretted, or opened. It is opened many times by meanes that blood aboundeth too much, or for that it is too fine or too subtil, and so pierceth through the veine. Againe, it may be broken by some violent straine, cut, or blow. And lastly, it may be fretted or gnawne through by the sharpnesse of the blood, or else by some other euill humour contained therein: The cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, to take the iuice of the rootes of nettles, and squirt it vp into the horses nosthrels, and lay vpon the nape of the horses necke, a wadde of hay dipt in cold water; and when it waxeth warme, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers vse to take a pint of redde wine, and to put therein a quarterne of *Bole-armoniacke* beaten into fine powder; and being made luke warme, to powre the one halfe thereof the first day into his nosthrell that bleedeth, causing his head to be holden vp, so as the wine may not fall out, and the next day to giue him the other halfe. Others vse to let the horse blood on the breast veine on the same side that he bleedeth at seuerall times: then take of frankinsence one ounce, of aloes halfe an ounce, and beate them into fine powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the whites of egges vntill it be as thicke as hony; and with soft Hares haire thrust it vp into his nosthrell, filling the hole so

full that it cannot fall out, or else fill his nostrhels full of ashes, dung or hogges dung, or horses dung mixt with chalke and vinegar. Now for mine owne part, when none of these will helpe (as all haue failed me at some times) then I take two small cords, and with them garter him exceeding hard, some ten inches aboue his knees of his forelegges, and iust beneath his elbowes; and then keepe the nape of his necke as cold as may be with wet clothes or wet hay, and it will staunch him presently.

CHAP. 24.

Of the boody rifts, or choppes in the palate of the horses mouth.

THese choppes, clefts or rifts, in the palate of a horses mouth, doe proceede (as some Farriers suppose) from the eating of rough hay, full of whims, thistels, or other pricking stuffe, or else prouender full of sharpe feedes, which by continuall pricking and fretting the furrowes of the mouth, do cause them to ranckle, swell, and breede corrupt and stinking matter; and without speedy preuention, that vlcer will turne to the foulest canker. The cure thereof is (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) to wash the soare places very cleane with salt and vinegar mixt together, and then to annoint it with hony. Other Farriers vse (especially if the palate be much swelled, to picke the roose of the mouth with an hot Iron, that the humour may issue out abundantly, and then to annoint the place with hony and onions boyled together till they be whole.

THese gigges, bladders, or flaps in a horses mouth, are little soft swellings, or rather pustules with blacke heads, growing in the inside of the horses lips, next vnto his great iaw teeth; they will sometimes be as great as a wal-nut, and are so painfull vnto him that they make him let his meate fall out of his mouth, or at least keepe it in his mouth vnchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper: they do proceede either of eating too much grasse, or naughty rough pricking hay or prouender: they are most apparantly to be felt, and the cure is (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers) first to draw out the horses tongue of the one side of his mouth, and then take a lancet and slit the swellings the length of a date; and then with a probe picke out all the kirkels like wheate cornes very cleane: then take the yolke of an egge, and as much salt as will temper it thicke like leauen; then make it into little balles, and thrust into euery hole one; and do so once a day vntill it be whole. Other Farriers vse after they haue slit them with an incision knife, and thrust out the corruption, onely to wash the soare places either with vinegar and salt, or else with allome water. Others vse with a small hot Iron to burn the swellings, and then wash them with beere and salt, or ale and salt, and it will heale them. Now that you may preuent this disease before it come, it shall be good to pull out the horses tongue often, and to wash it with wine, beere, and ale, and so shal no blisters breede thereon, nor any other diseale.

THe lampasse is a swelling or growing vp of the flesh, which ouergroweth the vpper teeth, which are the shearers in the vpper chappe, and so hindreth the horse from eating. They do proceede from abundance of bloud, resorting to the first furrow or bare of the mouth, I meane that which is next to the vpper foreteeth; it is most apparant to be seene, and therefore needeth no other signes. The cure is (according to the custome of the oldest Farriers, first with a lancet to let them bloud in diuers places of the swelled flesh: then take an Iron made at one end broad & thin, and turned vp according to this figure,



and heating it redde hot, burne out all that superfluous sweld flesh which ouergrowes the foreteeth; and then annoint the soare place with fresh butter till it be whole. Others vse after it is burnt out, onely to rub the soare place with salt onely, or wash it with salt and vinegar till it be whole. Others vse to take a hooked knife made very sharpe and very hot, and therewith cut the swolne places in two parts crosse against the teeth; but if they be little swelled, then cut but the third ranke from the teeth, and so let him bleede well: then rubbe it with a little salt, and the horse will be well; but if you finde afterwards that either through too much burning or cutting, or through the eating of rough meate, that the wound doth not heale, but rather ranckleth: then you shall take a saucer-full of hony, and twelue pepper cornes, and bray them together in a mortar, and temper

temper them vp with vinegar, and boyle them a while, and then once a day annoint the soare therewith till it be whole.

CHAP. 27.

Of the Camery or Frounce.

THE Camery or Frounce in horses, are small pimples or warts in the midst of the palate of the mouth aboue, and they are soft and soare; they will also sometimes breede both in his tongue and in his lippes: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen grasse, or by drawing frozen dust with the grasse into their mouthes; sometimes by eating of moist hay, that Rats and other vermine haue pist vpon; and sometimes by licking vp of venome. The signes are the apparant seeing of the pimples or whelkes, and a forsaking of his foode, both through the soarenesse of them, and through the vnsauourinesse of the food that he hath eaten before. The cure (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers) is first to let him bloud on the two greatest veines vnder his tongue; and then wash all the soare places with vinegar and salt: then get the horse new bread which is not hot, and giue it him to eate, and the horse will do well inough. Others vse with a hot Iron to burne the pimples on the head, and then wash them with wine and salt, or ale and salt vntill they bleede, and they will soone heale. Other Farriers vse to take out his tongue, and to pricke the veines thereof in feuen or eight places, and likewise vnder his vpper lippes also, and let him bleede well: then rub euery soare place with salt very much: then the next day

wash all the soare places with white wine warme, or else with strong vinegar, and rubbe it againe with salt: then for two or three dayes let the horse drinke no cold drinke and he will do well.

CHAP. 28.

Of the Canker in the mouth.

A Canker is said of the ancient Farriers to be nothing but a rawnesse of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very soare blisters, from whence will runne a very hot and sharpe lye, which fret and corrode or rot the flesh, wheresoeuer it goeth. The signes are, the apparant sight of the soare, besides the forsaking of his meate, because he cannot swallow it down but lets it lye halfe chewed betweene his iawes; and sometimes when he hath chewed his meate, he will thrust it out of his mouth againe, and his breath will fauour very strongly, chiefly when the horse is fasting. This disease proceedeth ofttest from some vnnaturall heate comming from the stomacke, and sometimes from the venome of filthy foode. The cure is (as the oldest Farriers instruct vs) to take allome halfe a pound, of hony a quarter of a pint, of collombine leaues, of sage, of each a handfull; boyle all these together in three pints of running water vntill one pint be consumed, and wash all the soare places therewith, so as they may bleede; and do thus once euery day vntill it be whole. Other Farriers vse first to cast the horse, and with a rolling pin to open his mouth; then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with tow or flaxe, to rake out all the stincking grasse or other meate that lieth in his iawes, and vnder the roote of his tongue: then
when

when you haue cleansed it thus, you shall heat strong wine vinegar somewhat warme, and then with the same Iron wrapt with new tow, and dipt in the vinegar, you shall wash all the soare places till they bleede: then wash all his tongue and his lips with the same vinegar, and so let him rise; and then feed him at least 7 dayes with warme massaes and hot graines; but in no wise with any hay, and he will soone be whole. Other Farriers vse to take of the iuice of daffadill roots seuen drams, of the iuice of hounds tongue as much, of vinegar as much, and of allome one ounce; mixe these well together, and wash the canker therewith once a day vntill it be whole. Others vse to take of sauen, of bay salt, and of rue, of each like quantity, and stampe them together with as much barrowes grease, and annoint the soare places therewith vntill the canker be kild, which you may know by the whiteneffe, & then heale it vp onely with allome water. Others vse first to wash the canker till it bleede with warme vinegar, to take a good quantity of allome beaten into very fine powder, and to mixe it with strong vinegar till it be as thick as a salue; then to annoint all the soare places therewith, and do thus twice or thrice a day vntill the canker be whole. Now for mine owne part, the best cure that euer I found for this sortance, is to take of ginger and of allome, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with strong vineger to mixe them together till they be very thick like a salue, then when you haue washt the canker cleane, either with allome water or with vinegar, annoint it with this salue, and in twice or thrice dressing the canker will be whole.

THe vnnaturall and violent heate which ascendeth vp from the stomacke into the mouth, doth not alwaies breed a canker, but sometimes onely heateth and inflameth the mouth and lippes, making them onely swell and burne, so as the horse can take no ioy in his foode, but through the griefe refuseth his meate. The cure thereof is, first turne vp his vpper lippe, or that which is most sweld, and with a lancet iagge it lightly, so that it may bleede; and then wash both that, and all his mouth and tongue with vinegar and salt.

IF the tongue of a horse be either hurt, cut, or galled, by any accident or mischance whatsoeuer, the best cure is (as the old Farriers suppose) to take of English hony, and of salt lard, of each like quantity, a little vnsleckt lime, & a little of the powder of pepper; boile them on a softe fire, and stirre them well together vntill they be thicke like vnto an oyntment: then wash the wound with white wine warmed: after that anoint the wound with the said ointment twice a day, and by no meanes let the horse weare any bit vntill he be whole. Other Farriers vse first to wash the soare with allome water, and then to take the leaues of black bramble, and to choppe them together small with a little lard: that done, to binde it with a little clowt, making

making it round like a ball: then hauing dipt the round end in hony, to rubbe the tongue therewith once a day vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 31.

*Of the Barbes or Pappes underneath a
Horses tongue.*

THE Barbes are two little pappes which naturally do grow vnder euery horsetongue whatsoeuer, in the neather iawes; yet if at any time they shoote out, and grow into an extraordinary length, or by the ouer-flow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a sorrhance, and with the extremity of their paine, they hinder the horse from feeding. The cure of them is both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, absolutely to clippe them away with a paire of sheares close by the iaw; and then to wash the soare either with water and salt, or with salt tartar and strong vinegar mixt together, or else with vinegar and salt. Any of all which will heale them.

CHAP. 32.

*Of paine in a Horses teeth, of Wolfes teeth and
Iaw teeth.*

A Horse may haue paine in his teeth through diuers occasions, as partly by the descent of humors from the head downe vnto the teeth and gums, which is very proper to colts and yong horses, and plainly to be seene by the rankenesse and swelling

of the gummies, and also he may haue paine in his teeth, by hauing two extraordinary teeth, called the wolfs teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the vpper iawes, next vnto the great grinding teeth; which are so painefull to the horse, that he cannot endure to chaw his meate, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or else to keepe it still halfe chawed. Again, a horse will haue great paine in his teeth when his vpper iaw teeth be so farre growne as they ouer-hang the neather iaw teeth; and therewith also be so sharpe, as in mouing his iawes they cut and raze the insides of his cheekes, euen as they were razed with a knife. Lastly, a horse may haue great paine in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or some other naturall weaknesse, the horses teeth grow loose & soare in such maner that through the tenderesse therof, he is not able to chaw or grind his foode. Now for the seuerall cures of these infirmities you shall vnderstand that first as touching the generall paine in a horses teeth, which doth come by meanes of the distillation of humors, it is thought fit by the ancientest Farriers, first to rubbe all the outside of the horses gummies with fine chalke and strong vinegar well mixt together. Other Farriers vse after they haue so washed the gummies, to straw vpon them the powder of pomegranat pils, & to couer the temples of the head with a plaister of pitch, rosen, and masticke molten together, as hath bene before declared. Now for the cure of the wolfs teeth, or the iaw teeth (acoording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. First, cause the horses head to be tyed vp high to some post or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a cord so wide that you may easily see
cuery

euery part thereof : then take an instrument of Iron, made in all points like vnto a carpenters gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the toole at the foote of the woolfes teeth, on the outside of the iaw, turning the hollow side of the toole downward, holding your hand steadily, so as the toole may not slip nor swarue from the foresaid teeth : then hauing a mallet in your right hand, strike vpon the head of the toole a good stroake, wherewith you may loosen the tooth, and make it bend inward : then straining the midst of your toole vppon the horses neather iaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inside or hollow side of the toole, and thrust it cleane out of his head : which done, serue the other woolfes tooth on the other side in like manner, and then fill vp the empty holes with salt finely brayed. Other Farriers vse (and I haue in mine experience found it the better practise) only when the horse is either tyed vp or cast, and his mouth opened, to take a very sharp file, and to file the woolfes teeth so smooth as is possible, and then wash his mouth with a little allome water. Now if the vpper iaw teeth ouerhang the neather iaw teeth, & so cut the inside of the mouth as is aforesaid, then you shall take your former toole or gouge, and with your mallet strike and pare all those teeth shorter by little and little degrees, running amongst them euen from the first vnto the last, turning the hollow side of your toole towards the teeth, by which meanes you shall not cut the insides of the horses cheekes ; then with your file, file them all smooth without any raggednes, and then wash the horses mouth with vinegar & salt. Lastly if the paine do proceede from the loosnesse of his teeth, then the cure is, according to the opinion

of the ancient Farriers, first to cast the horse, and pricke all his gummes ouer with a lancet, making them bleede well; then rubbe them all ouer with sage and salt, and it will fasten them againe. Others vse to let the horse blood in the veine vnder his taile next the rumpe, and then to rubbe all his gums with sage, and to giue him in his prouender, the tender croppes of blacke bryars, or else wash all his mouth with hony, sage, and salt beaten together; and by no meanes let the horse eate any moist meate: for cold, moist, and marriish feeding in the winter, onely breedeth this disease of loosnesse in the teeth; and it is of all other, most proper to the Sorrell horses.

CHAP. 33.

*Of diseases in the Necke and Withers, and first
of the Cricke in the necke.*

THe Cricke in the necke of a horse, is when he cannot turne his necke any way, but holdes it still right forth, in so much that he cannot bow downe his head to take vp his meate from the ground, but with exceeding great paine; and surely it is a kinde of convulsion of sinewes, which proceedeth from cold causes, of which we haue spoken very sufficiently before: it also proceedeth sometimes from ouerheauy burthens, that be laid vpon a horses shoulders; or by ouer-much drying vp of the sinewes of the necke. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to thrust a sharp hot Iron through the flesh of the necke in fiew seueral places, euery one distant from the other three inches,
(but

(but in any case beware of touching any sinew:) then rowell all the aforesaid places either with horse haire, flaxe or hempe, for the space of fittene daies, and annoint the rowels with hogs grease, and the necke will soone be restored. Others vse if the cricke causeth the horse to hold his head straight forward, which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, & draw the horse from the root of the eare, on both sides the necke, through the midst of the same, euen downe the breast, a straw deepe, so as both ends may meete on the breast: then make a hole through the skin of the forehead, hard vnder the foretop, & thrust in a cornet vpward betwixt the skin and the flesh, a handfull deepe: then either put in a goose feather doubled in the midst, and annointed with hogs grease: or else a rowell of either horne or leather with a hole in the midst: any of which will keep the hole open, to the intent the matter may issue forth: and, this you shall keepe open the space of ten daies; but euery day during that time the hole must be cleansed once, and the feather or rowell also cleansed, and fresh annointed, and put in againe; and once a day let him stand vpon the bit an houre or two, or else be ridden abroade two or three miles, by such an one as will beare the horses head, and make him bring it in; but if the cricke be such that it maketh the horse to hold his head awry vpon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the necke is troubled, then you shall not drawe the horse with an hote Iron, on both the sides of the necke, but onely on the contrary side, as thus: If hee bend his head towardes the right side, then to drawe him, as is aforesaid, onely on the left

side, and to vse the rest of the cure as is abouesaid, and if necessity do require, you may splent the horses necke also straight strong with splents of wood. I haue cured this cricke in the neck only by bathing the horses neck in the oile of *peeter* very hot, and then rolling it all vp in wet hay, or rotten litter, and keeping the horse exceeding warme, without vsing any burning, wounding, or other violence.

CHAP. 34.

Of Wennes in the necke.

AWenne is a certaine bunch or kinnell vpon the skinne, like a tumor or swelling; the inside whereof is sometimes hard like a gristell, and spongiouse like a skinne full of soft warts; and sometimes yellow like vnto rusted bacon, with some white graines among. Now of wennes some are great and some be small, also some are very painfull and some not painfull at all. They proceede as some imagine, of naughty grosse flegmaticke humours, binding together in some sicke part of the body. And others say they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be most extreme cold; but I say, that albeit they may proceed from these causes, yet most generally they proceed from some pinching, bruising, biting, ripping, or galling either of girthes, halter, collar, or any other thing whatsoever. The cure thereof is this: take of mallowes, sage, and redde nettles, of each one handfull; boile them in running water, and put thereunto a little butter and hony; and when the hearbes be soft, take them out, and all to bruise them, and put thereunto of oyle de bay two ounces, and of hogges grease two ounces; and

and warme them together ouer the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaister it vpon a peece of leather, so bigge as the wenne, and lay it to so hot as the horse can endure it, renewing it euery day in such sort the space of eight dayes; and if you perceiue it will come to no head, then lance it from the midst of the wenne downeward, so deep that the matter in the bottome may be discovered & let out: which done, heale it vp with this salue: Take of Turpentine a quarterne, and wash it nine times in faire water, then put thereunto the yolke of an egge, and a little English saffron beaten into powder, and make a taint or rolle of flaxe, and dip it in that ointment, and lay it vnto the soare, renewing the same euery day once vntill the wenne be cured. Others vse in this case, with a hot Iron to burne and seare away all the superfluous flesh, & then to heale vp the soare either with the ointment last rehearsed, or else with the powder of hony and lime mixt together; and this manner of cure is by much the speedier.

CHAP. 35.

Of swelling in the necke after blood-letting.

THe swelling of a horses necke after blood-letting may come through diuers occasions, as namely by striking through the veine, so as some of the blood being gotten betwixt the flesh and the veine, it there corrodeth and turneth to an impostume; or else by striking the veine with a rusty fleame, whereby the veine rankleth; or by some cold winde striking suddenly into the hole: or lastly by suffering the horse too soone to thrust downe his head, & graze or feed, whereby

whereby humours resorting to that place, breeds a great impostumation. The cure is according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take hemlocke and stampe it, and then to mingle it with sheepes dung, and vinegar, and so making a plaister thereof, to lay it to the swelling, renewing it once a day vntill it be whole. Other Farriers vse first to annoint the place with the oyle of camomill warmed, and then to lay vpon it a little hay wet in cold water, and binde it about with a cloath, renewing it euery day the space of a weeke, to see whether it will grow to a head, or else vanish away: if it grow to a head, you may then lance it, and thrust out the matter: then heale it vp by tainting it with flaxe dipt in turpentine and hogges grease molten together, dressing it so once a day vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 36.

How to stanch Blood.

IF your horse either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any vnskilfull Farrier that letteth him blood when the signe is in that place, bleed so exceedingly that he will not be staunched, you shall then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, lay vnto the wound a little new horse dung, tempered with chalke and strong vinegar, and not to remoue it from thence the space of three dayes; or else to lay vnto it burnt silke, burnt felt, or burnt cloath, any of which will stanch blood. Others vse to powre into the wound, the iuice of coriander, or else to let the horse chew in his mouth the leaues of periwinkle. Others vse to take of bruised nettles, and lay them to the wound: or else wilde tansey bruised, or hot hogs dung.

dung. Others vse to take bruised sage, & lay it to the wound: or else the coame about the Smithes forge: or else a sodde of earth, or bruised Hyssope, or the soft croppes of hawthorne bruised: or else to take the quantity of two ounces of the horses blood, and boyle it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the wound; but when all these faile, as in some extremities I haue found them do, then for your onely refuge, you shall take the soft downe either of a Hares skinne, or of a Conies skinne, and stoppe the wound well therewith, holding it hard to with your hand till the blood stand; and if it bee any grievous soare wound, then as soone as the blood is stayed, spread a plaister of *Bole-armonick*e and vinegar mixt together over the wound.

CHAP. 37.

Of the falling of the Crest.

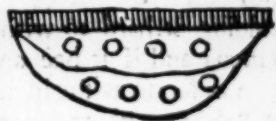
THe falling of a horses crest, is when the vpper part of a horses necke which is called the Crest, leaneth either to the one or the other side, and will not stand vpright as it ought to do. It proceedeth most commonly from pouerty and hard keeping, and especially when a fat horse falleth away suddenly vpon any inward sicknesse. The cure (according to the oldest Farriers) is first to drawe his crest a full strawe breadth deepe on the contrary side with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be halfe an inch broad, and make both your beginning and ending somewhat beyond the fall, so as the first draught may go all the way hard vpon the edge of the maine, close by the rootes of the same,

N n

bearing

bearing your hand right downeward into the neckeward : then answer that with an other draught beneath, and so farre distant from the first as the fall is broad, compassing, as it were, all the fall ; but still on the contrary side, & betwixt those 2. draughts, right in the midst, draw a third draught : then with an Iron button of almost an inch about, burne at each end a hole ; & also in the spaces betwixt the draughts, make diuers holes, distant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainly shewe you.

That done, to kill the fire, annoint it every day once with fresh butter for a weeke or more : then take of mallowes, and of sage,



of each one handfull ; boile them well in running water, and wash the burning away till it be raw flesh, and then dry it vp with the powder of hony and lime. Other Farriers vse for this infirmity, first to cast the horse vpon some soft dung-hill, or other easie place, and with a long knife to cut away the flesh on the hanging or vnder side of the crest, euen from the fore-end thereof to the hinder end, sixe inches broad, and two inches thicke, or somewhat more in the middle thereof where it is thickest : then groping the crest with your hands, to pare the thickest part thereof, till it come all to one thinnesse ; then holding the horse still fast bound, to couer all the place with great handfulls of swines dung prepared for the purpose, and held to the fore place an houre together, til the bloud be stanchd : then let the horse arise, and leade him into the stable, tying him in such sort, that he may neither rub his necke nor lye downe : then the next morning take
good

good store of burnt allome beaten to powder, and strew it all ouer the soare place, and so let him stand for two daies after without any stirring, lest the wound should bleed againe: then at the end of those two daies you shall bathe the soare gently with a fine linnen cloath, dipt in warme vrine; and then drying the soare, againe throw more burnt allome vpon it; and after annoint all about the out side of the edges of the soare with *Unguentum Album Camphiratum*, more then an inch broad: thus you shall dresse him euery day once on that side of the crest which did fall: then for the contrary side you shall draw his maine thereon, and plat it in many plats: which done, you shall to those plats with thongs of leather fasten a cudgell of a foote and a halfe long: then to the midst of that cudgell, you shall hang a peece of lead with a hole in it, of such weight as will poise the crest vp euen, and hold it in his right place: then shall you draw his crest on that side the weight hangs with a hot drawing Iron, euen from the toppe of the crest, downe to the point of the shoulder, making diuers stroakes, one an inch and an halfe from another: then shall you lay vpon the burnt places, a plaister of pitch, tarre, and rosen, molten together, and so let the weight hang till all the soare places be healed, and there is no question but the crest will stand both vpright and strongly.

CHAP. 38.
Of Manginess in the Maine.

THE manginess which is in the maine of a horse, and maketh him shed his haire, proceedeth either from the ranknesse of bloud, pouerty or lowfinesse; or

else of rubbing where a mangie horse hath rubbed, or else of filthy fretting dust lying in the maine for want of good dressing. The signes are the apparant rubbing and itching of the horse about the maine and necke, and the scabbes fretting both the flesh & skin, besides the shedding and falling away of the haire. The cure (according to the opinion of some of our old Farriers) is, first let him bloud on the neck veine, and cut away all the haire from the scabs; then with a hot Iron as bigge as a mans finger, seare all the soare place even from the one end to the other: then annoint all the place you so burnt with blacke sope, and now and then wash it with strong lee and blacke sope mixt together. Other Farriers for this manginess onely take of fresh grease one pound, of quicksilver halfe an ounce, of brimstone one ounce, of rape oile halfe a pint, mingle them together, and stirre them continually in a pot with a slice, vntill the quicksilver be so wrought with the rest, as you shall perceiue no quicksilver therein: that done, take a blunt knife, or an old horse-combe, and scratch all the mangy places therewith vntill it be raw and bloody, and then annoint it with this ointment in the sunne-shine, if it may be, to the intent the ointment may sinke in, or else hold before it either a hot fire pan, or a hot barre of Iron, to make the ointment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three daies after thus once annointing him he leaue not rubbing, then marke in what place he rubbeth, and dresse that place againe, and questionlesse it will serue,

The second Booke.

277

CHAP. 39.

Of the shedding of the haire in the Maine.

HAire, for the most part, sheddeth or falleth from the maine of a horse by reason of certaine little wormes which eate and fret the rootes of the haire asunder. The cure whereof is first to annoint the maine and crest with blacke sope, and then to make a strong lye either of running water and ashe ashes, or else of vrine and ashe ashes, and with that to wash the maine all ouer and it will helpe him.

CHAP. 40.

Of paine and grieſe in a horses Withers.

BOth to a horses withers, and also to his backe, do happen many infirmities and sovrances, some proceeding from inward causes, as of the corruption of humors, and sometime of outward causes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of some naughty saddle, or some heauy burthen layed on the horses backe, or such like; and of these grieſes some be small, and some be great: the small are onely superficiall blisters, swellinges, light galles, or bruisinges, and are easily cured; but the great are those which pierce to the very bone, and be most dangerous, especially if they be nigh to the backe bone. Then to speake first of the smaller gallings, whenſoeuer you shall see any swelling to arise, either about your horses withers, or any other part of his backe, the cure is (according to the opinion of some of the old Farriers) first if the place be much ſwolne and festered, then to pierce it with a sharpe

N n 3

hot

hot Iron in many parts on both sides of the necke, & then put into the same, tents of linnen cloath, dipt in warme sallet oyle; and then after to dry and heale it vp with the pouder of hony and lime mixt together.

Others vse to take butter and salt, and to boile them together vntill they be blacke, then to powre it hot on the swellings; & then to take a flake of warme horse-dung, and lay it on the soare backe vntill it be whole, dressing it once a day.

Others (especially the best of the ancient Farriers) vse as soone as they see any swelling to arise, to binde vnto it a little hot horse-dung, to see if that wil assuage it; which it will not, then to pricke it round about the swelling with a fleame, knife, or lancet, yet not too deepe, but so as it may pierce the skinne, and make the blood issue forth: that done, take of mallowes, or smallage, two or three handfuls, and boile them in running water vntill they be so soft as pappe: then straine the water softly from it, and bruise the hearbs in a traine dish, putting thereunto a little hogges grease or else sallet oyle, or sheepes sewer, or any other fresh grease; boyle them and stirre them together, not frying them hard, but so as they may be soft and supple; and then with a clout lay it warme vpon the soare, renewing it euery day once vntill the swelling be gone: for it will either driue it away or bring it vnto a head, which lightly chanceth not in these small swellings, except some gristell or bone be perished. Others of the ancient Farriers vse when they see any swelling to arise about a horses backe, first to shauce the place with a razor; and then to lay thereunto this plaister: Take a little wheate flowre, and the white of an egge beaten together, and spread it on a linnen clout,

clout, which being laied vnto the swelling two or three daies, and not remoued, will bring it to a head; & when you come to take it off, pull it away so softly as you can possibly; and where as you see the corruption gathered together, then in the lowest place thereof, pierce it vpward with a sharpe Iron somewhat hot, that the corruption may come out; and annoint the soare place euery day once with fresh butter or hogs grease vntill it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vse when they see any swelling, onely to lay wet hay vnto it: for that will either driue it away, or bring it vnto a head; and then when it is broken you shall lay vpon it a plaister of wine lees, renewing it as often as it growes dry; and if your lees be too thinne, you may thicken them with wheate flowre: or if you like not this medicine, then you may make a plaister of thicke barme, as great as the soare, and renew it once a day vntill the swelling be asswaged; but if you see that any corruption be knit together, then you shall lance it in the neathermost part, and let out the matter: then wash the soare either with vrine, ale, or beere, made scalding hot; then dry vp all the moisture from the soare, either with a linnen cloath or with a sponge: then couer all the soare ouer with burnt allome beaten to powder: and thus dresse the horse once a day vntill the flesh be growne vp so high as you would haue it; then shal you dresse the soare but once in two or three dayes. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you annoint the edge of the soare al about after it hath bene washed as aforesaid, with *Vnguentum Album*, for that will make the skinne to come fast; but if you do perceiue that by dressing it thus seldome, there doth beginne any proud flesh to grow, then shall you take a
dramme

dram of *Mercury*, and mingle it with an ounce of *unguentum album*, and annoint all the soire place therewith, once in two daies, this will correct the proud flesh, and cause it to skin and heale suddenly. Others vse for the abating of these swellings, to boile mallows in the grounds of ale, & to clasp it hot to the swelling: then if the swelling do breake, then wash it with pisse, and powre hot molten butter vpon it. Others vse to shauce away the haire, and then to lay very hot vnto it, a handful of leekes stamp & mixt with boares grease, or else to take a turfe of earth burnt red, and layed to as hot as the horse can suffer it. Other Farriers vse to take nettles beaten to peeces, and mixt with hot vrine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the saddle: and then if after two or three daies dressing, the swelling breake, then looke if there be any dead flesh within the soare, and either eate or cut it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a pound of sallet oyle, three ounces of white waxe, one ounce of turpentine, and three drams of verdigrease, melt all these together, and taint the soare therewith till it be whole: for this wil both eate away the ill flesh and incarnate good. Others take greene cole-worts, and stampe them with swines grease, and then lay it plaister-wise on the soare, and it will assuage it, especially if you ride the horse a little, to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great swelling, but onely the skinne chafed off, then you shall wash the place with water and salt, or else with warme wine, and sprinkle vpon it the powder of hony and lime; or else the powder of *Myrre*, or the powder of burnt silke, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poast. Other Farriers vse when onely the skinne is gald off, to take a spoonefull of thicke creame, and to put

put as much chimney soote vnto it as will make it like an ointment, and then to lay it vpon the sore, and questionlesse it will skinne it presently.

CHAP. 41.

Of any gald backe, or Withers, how great soeuer the swelling or inflammation be.

IF the swelling, pince, wringing or gall, either vpon the withers or any parte of the backe of a horse, be extraordinary great and much inflamed, so that there is no apparant hope that it can be got away, without much apostumation, then the cure according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, to take barme, and mixe it with so much soote of a chimney, and make it so thicke therewith, that it shall seeme like tarre: and with that make a plaister, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twise a day, and it will both draw and heale it. Other vse, to take a handfull of bay salt, a handfull of great and small oatemeale, and put a quantity of old stale thereto, and stirre them altogether, and temper it like pappe or past, and then make round bals thereof; then throw them into a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then strow of that powder all ouer the sore, so oft as you shall see any part thereof bare, and it will heale it. Other Farriers vse if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot yron, and then crosse him with the same yron, in manner of this figure: then take a round hot yron, hauing a sharpe point, and thrust it into the



O o

swel-

swelling place on each side vpward, towards the point of the withers, or toppe of the backe, to the entent that the matter may issue downwards at both the holes; that done, taint both the holes, first with a taint dipt in hogges grease to kill the fire, and also annoint all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to do vntill the swelling be asswaged, renewing the tent euery day once, vntill the fiery matter be fallen away: then tent him againe with washed turpentine, mingled with yelks of egges and saffron, renewing the tent euery day once vntill it be whole. But if for all this the swelling do not goe away, then it is a signe of some inward inpostumation, and then it shall be good that you launce it, and let out the corruption: then take of hony halfe a pint, of verdigrease two ounces, beaten to powder, and mixe it together with the hony; then boile them in a pot vntill they looke redde, then being luke warme, make either a tent or a plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same euery day once vntill it be whole. But the fore may be so vehement that for lacke of looking to in time, if it be on the withers, it will pierce downewards betwixt both the shoulders euen into the body, which is most dangerous, and mortall; therefore whensoever you shall feare any such hollownes, you shall tent the hole with the salue last mentioned, and thrust after it a good peece of dry sponge, as well to keepe the hole open as also to sucke out the corruption, and this you shall renew once a day vntill the fore be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vse to take butter, vinigar, and bay salt, and melting them together lay it to the fore warme vntill it breake, then strow vpon it either soote or the powder of a clay wall; but if it be much festere
red

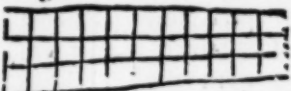
weight or knobs lying directly behind the saddle: of all bruifings on the backe, it is the most vilde and dangerous, and you shall perceiue it by the puffed vp and spungie flesh looking like old rotten lights about the mouth of the fore. The cure therefore is according to some of the ancients Farriers, first to cut away all the dead or proud flesh euen to the bone, then burne a hole foure inches lower then the nauell gall, and put a rowell of horse haire through it; then take the powder of oyster shels or of an old shooe sole burnt, and strow it on the fore, and eueras it waxeth moist put on more powder. Others for the nauell gall take the white of an egge, wheate flowre, hony, mustard, and sope, of each like quantity, and mixing them together make a plaister thereof; and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the fore washt with ale, butter & vrine, then lay on the plaister: & if the proud flesh beginne to grow againe, then the powder of an old burnt shooe, or nerue oile, or verdigrease will kill it, and the powder of oyster shels will skinne it. Other of the ancient Farriers vse, after they haue cut out all the rotten and dead flesh, to take the white of an egge and salte beaten together, and lay that plaister wise to the fore vpon a little toaw, renewing it once a daie the space of two daies, then take of hony a quarterne of a pinte, and of verdigrease one ounce beat into powder, and boile them together in a pot, stirring it still vntill it looke red, and being luke warme make a plaister with toaw, and clap it to the wound, washing and clenfing well the wound, first with a litle warme vinigar or white wine, continuing so to do once a day vntill it beginne to heale and to skinne; then dry it vp by sprinckling thereon this powder following. Take
of

of hony a quarterne, and as much of sleckt lime as will thicken the hony and make it like past, and in a fire-pan ouer the fire, stirre it still vntill it be hard baked, so as it may be beaten into powder; but euer before you throw on the powder, wash the wound first with warme vinegar, continuing so to do vntill it be perfectly skinned. Others vse, to heale this gall by laying on the sore, a plaister of chimney soote and barme mixt together, or else to mixe nettle seeds and sallet oile together, and annoint the sore therewith. Others vse onely to wash the sore with warme water, and then annoint the place with fresh grease and salt mixt together; or else to take of bettony, powder of brimstone, *Elliber*, pitch, and old grease, of each like quantity, and stampe them together; and when you haue washed the sore with chamber lie, then annoint it with this ointment, vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 46.

Of the swaying of the backe.

A horse is said to be swaied in the backe, when either by too great a burthen, or by some slippe, straine, or ouer hasty and straight turning, he hath taken an extreme wrinch in the lower part of his backe below his short ribs, and directly betweene his fillets: the signes whereof, are a continuall reeling and rowling of the horses hinder parts in his going, and also he will solter many times, and sway sometimes backetowards, and sometimes sidelong, and be ready to falle uen to the ground; besides, the horse being laid will with great difficulty rise vp againe. The cure, according to the opinion of the old *Italian* Farriers, is, to take

take of the fat of the fruit of the pine tree, two ounces, of *Olibanum* three ounces, or rozen foure ounces, of pitch foure ounces, of *Bole-armonicke* one ounce, and of *Sanguis Draconis* halfe an ounce; incorporate all these well together, and lay it plaister wise all ouer the reines of the horses backe, not taking it by any means away till it fall of. Others of our owne Farriers, vse first to couer the horses backe with a sheeps skinne, coming hot from the sheepes backe, laying the fleshy side next to his backe, and then lay a warme housfing cloath vpon the same, to keepe his backe as hot as may be, and so let it continue vntill it begin to smell; then take the old skinne away, and apply a new vnto it, continuing so to do the space of three weekes, and if he amend not with this, then draw his backe with a hot yron, right out on both sides of the ridge of his backe, from the pitch of the buttocke, vnto a handful within the saddle: and then againe ouerthwart according to this figur, & let e-


 uery line be an inch one from another; neither let

the stroak be deep, & burned no more then that euery one may looke yellow; then lay vpon the burning this charge or plaister. Take of pitch one pound, of rozen halfe a pound, of *Bole-armonicke* halfe a pound, made into powder, and halfe a pint of tarre, and boile all these together in a pot, and stirre it vntill every thing be molten, and thoroughly mingled together, then being luke warme daube all the burning therewith very thicke, and thereupon clap as many flockes of the horses collor as you can make to abide on, and remoue it not before it fall away of it selfe; and if it be in sommer you may turne the horse to grasse.

CHAP. 47.

Of speciall weaknesse in the Backe.

ACCORDING to the opinion of our oldest Farriers (though my selfe haue taken little notice of the infirmitie) there is an other kind of weaknesse belonging to a horses backe, which they call the *frutting* or biting of the reines, which doth proceed from abundance of humors resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the horse doe lesse their feeling and strength, and the horse falleth downe to the ground; yea and such humors many times resorting to the hart doe suffocate the same, and in two or three howres do cause the horse to die. The cure according to their opinion is, first to let the horse blood abundantly in the necke vaine, and to draw his backe with a hot yron, in such sort as is declared in the last Chapter, and then to make him swim a pety while in some riuer; then rowell him vpon the haunches neare vnto the huckell bones, and then to annoint the fore place, with hogges greate and three leaqued grasse stamped together, vntill he be whole.

CHAP. 48.

Of the swelling of the Coddes or stones.

THIS kind of swelling or inflammation of the cods cometh either by some wound receiued, or by the stinging or else biting of some venomous beast, or else by some great straine, either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one horse with an other. The cure is, according to the opinion of the most

most ancient *Italian* Farriers is, first to bathe the cod with water, wherein hath bene sodden the rootes of wilde cowcumbers and salt, and then to annoint it with an ointment made of oile, goats grease. and the white of an egge; or else to bathe the cod in warme water, *Nitrum*, and vinegar mingled together, and also to be annointed with an ointment made of chaulke, or of potters earth, oxe dung, commin, water, and vinegar mingled together; or else to be annointed with the iuice of the hearb called nightshade, or with the iuice of hemlocke, which growes on dunghils; and if need require, to let him bloud on the flank veins. But out later Farriers, who hold that this disease cometh ofttest after some sicknesse, or surfeit with cold, being a signe of amendment from that sicknesse, doe cure it in this sort; take of beane flowre, wheat meale, commin, and hogges grease, of each like quantity, and making a plaister thereof, spread it all ouer the horses cods and stones. Others boile groundsell in wine and vinegar, and so bathe the horses coddles therewith; or else take a quarte of good ale-worte, and set it on the fire, with the crummes of browne bread strongly leauened, and better then a handfull of commin made in powder; then with beane flower make a plaister of them all, and apply it to the grieve, as hot as it can be suffered; or if this helpe not, take coves dung and seeth it in milke, and lay it vpon the swelling as hot as may be, and it will assuage it. But if this inflammation proceed from rancknes of seed, which you shall perceiue by the moist sliminess of his yard, then you shall first make him couer a Mare, then keepe him without prouendar, and let him bloud about the great veine, which is betweene

his hips, & lay thereto hard egges, beaten in his owne dung, and make a plaister of the same and lay it to his coddles, and once a day wash his coddles with cold water. Others vse to let the horse bloud in his flanke veins, and then take of oile of roses, and of vinegar of each halfe a pinte, of *Bole armonick* halfe a quartorne beaten to powder; mixe them together in a cruse, and being luke warme annoint the cods therewith, with two or three feathers bound together; and the next day ride him into the water, so as his coddles may be within the water, giuing him a turne or two therein, and so returne faire and softly home vnto the stable; and when the horse is dry annoint him againe as before, and doe thus euery day vntill the horse be whole. Now there be other Farriers which hold that this discale may come by meanes of euill humors and corrupt bloud, which resort vnto the cods, and then the cure is to couer all the coddles ouer, with a charge made of *Bole-armoniacke* and vinegar wrought together, renewing it euery day once vntill the swelling goe away, or that it breake of it selfe, and if it breake, then to raint it with *Mel Rosatum*, and make him a breech of canuas to keepe it in, renewing the tent euery day once vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 49.

Of incording, or burstling, or the rupture in horses.

THis rupture, or as our old Farriers call it, this incording or burstinesse in horses, is when the rim or thinne filme which holdeth the guts vp in a horses body is broken, so that the guts falleth downe either into the cods of the horse, or into the horses flanke,

as I haue seene diuers: now this burstnesse cometh either by some stripe or blow of another horse, or else by some straine in leaping ouer a hedge or ditch, or by teaching a horse to bound when he is too young, or when a horse goeth himselfe vpon some pole or stake, or by forcing a horse when he is full to runne beyound his strength, or by stopping a horse too suddenly vpon naughtie ground, whereby the straddling and slipping of his hinder feet, may stretch or teare his rim: the signes to know this sorrance before it be apparant to the cie are, the horse will forsake his meat and stand shoaring and leaning alwaies on that side that he is hurt, and on that side if you search with your hand, betwixt the stone and the thigh, vpward to the body, and somewhat aboue the stone, you shall finde the gutt it selfe bigge and hard in the feeling; whereas on the other side you shal find no such thing. Now for the cure, although for mine owne parte I both doe and shall euer hold it incurable as long as a horse is a beast without reason, yet for your satisfaction I will not stick to repeat what the best Farriers and my selfe haue practised, in as much as it worketh much good though no absolute cure. The cure then is to bring the horse into some house or place which hath ouer head a strong baulke or beame going ouerthwart and strow that place thicke with straw, then put on foure strong pasternes with foure rings on his feet, and fasten one end of a long rope to one of those rings, then thred al the other rings with the loose end of the rope, and so draw all his foure feet together & cast him on the straw; that done, cast the rope ouer the baulke, and hoist the horse so as he may lie flat on his backe, with his legges vpward without struglings;

then bathe his stones well with warme water and butter molten together, and the stones being somewhat warme and well mollified, raise them vp from the body with both your hands, being closed by the fingers close together, and holding the stones in your hands in such manner, worke downe the gut into the body of the horse, by striking it downewards continually with your two thumbs, one labouring immediately after another, vntill you perceiue that side of the stone to be so small as the other; and so hauing returned the gut into his right place, take a list of two fingers broad, thoroughly annointed with fresh butter, and tie his stones both together with the same so nigh the body as may be, yet not ouer hard, but so as you may put your finger betwixt; that done, take the horse quietly downe, and leade him gently into the stable, where he must stand warme, and not be stirred for the space of 3 weeks: but forget not the next day after you haue placed his gut in his true place, to vnloosen the list & to take it away, & as wel at that time, as euery day once or twice after, to cast a dish or 2 of cold water vp into his cods, and that will make him to shrink vp his stones, and thereby restraints the gut from falling downe; and at the three weekes end to make your cure so much the suerer, it were not amisse to geld the stone on that side away, so shall he hardly be bursten againe on that side; and during the cure let him not eate much nor drinke much, and let his drinke be alwaies warme.

CHAP. 50.

Of the Botch in the groines of a Horse.

IT is the opinion of all the best horse-leaches, that if a grosse horse which is full of humors be suddenly and violently laboured, that then the humors will resort into the weakest parts, and there gather together and breed a botch, and specialle in the hinder parts betwixt the the thighs, not farre from the coddles. The signes are, the hinder legges will be all swolne & specially from the cambrels or houghs vpward, and if you feele with your hand you shal find a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard it will gather to a head; the cure according to the generall practise is, first to ripe it with this plaister, take of wheat flower, of turpentine, and of hony, of each like quantity, fluing it together to make a thicke plaister: and with a cloth lay it to the sore, renewing it euery day once vntill it breake or waxe soft; and then launce it, so as the matter may runne downeward, then taint it with turpentine, and hogges grease molten together, renewing it euery day once vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 51.

Of the Itch, Scab, or Manginess in the taile, or generall falling of the haire.

Horses through the corruption of bloud or the fulnesse of rancke feeding, or through ouer heating and labouring, or by the infection of other horses, do many times get the generall scab, itch, or manginess in the taile; and sometimes in the spring time horses
are

are troubled with the truncheon wormes in their fundament, which will make them rub their tailes, & fret the haire, yet are free both from mange and scurfe; wherefore if then you only rake the horse with your hand annointed with sope, and pull out the wormes, you shall cause the horse to leaue his rubbing; but if you perceiue the haire to shed and fall from the taile, through some small wormes that growes at the rootes of the haire, or through some little fretting scurfe, then you shall annoint all the taile with sope cuen to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that will both kill the wormes, and scoure out the scurfe; but if much of the taile be fallen away, then you shall keepe the taile continually wet, with a sponge dipt in faire water, and that wil make the haire to grow very fast. Now if in the horses taile shall grow any canker, which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the ioints to fall away one by one, then you shall wash all his taile with *Aqua fortis* or strong water made in this sort. Take of greene copporas and of allome, of each one pound, of white copporas a quarterne, boile all these together in three quarts of running water, in a very strong earthen pot vntill the one halfe be consumed; and then with a little of this water being made luke warme, wash his taile with a little clout, or flaxe bound to the end of a sticke, continuing so to do euery day once, vntill it be whole. But if as I said before, through the corruption of bloud, foode, or labour, this scabbe, itch, or manginess, spread vniuersally into many parts of the taile, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water, vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 52.

*Of the generall Scab, Mainginesse or Leprosie,
ouer the whole body.*

THe generall manginessse or leprosie, which runneth all ouer the horses body, is a cankered filthy scurfe which couereth the same, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingendred by infection or vnwholsome food, or else by indiscreet labour. The signes whereof are, the horse will bee all mangie, and couered ouer with a white filthy scurfe, full of scabs, and raw plots about the necke & flanks, and euill fauored to looke on, and rubbing, scratching and bitings of all diseases there is none more infectious, nor will more certainly kil a horse if it be not preuented. Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, first to let the horse blood in the one side of the necke veine, and within two daies after on the other side of the necke, and within two daies after that, in the flank veines, and last of all in the veine vnder the tayle; then wash all the sore places with salt brine, & rubbing them hard with a wispe of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well and be all raw; that done, annoint the places with this ointment, take of quicksiluer one ounce, of hogs grease one pound, of brimstone beaten into powder a quarterne, of rape oile a pint, mingle these things wel together, vtill the quicksiluer be thoroughly incorporated with the rest, and hauing annointed all the raw places with this ointment, make it to sincke into the flesh, by holding and weauing vp and downe ouer it, a hot broad barre of yron, and then touch him no
Qq more

more againe the space of two or three daies, during which time, if you see that he rubbeth stil in any place, then rubbe that place againe with an old horse comb, to make it raw, and annoint it with fresh ointment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hot yron round and blunt at the point, so bigge as a mans little finger, burne all the mangy places, making round holes, passing only through the skinne and no further; for which intent it shall be needfull to pull the skinne first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it still vntill you haue thrust the hot yron through it, and let euery hole be a spanne one from another, and if need be, you may annoint those holes with a little sope, and let the horse be very thinne dietted, during this curing time. Now for mine owne part, I doe vterly dislike this burning, for it is a foule manner of cure, and breedeth much eie-fore in the horse, and therefore other of our latter Farriers vse for this disease after they haue let the horse bloud in the necke veine, to take a good quantity of fresh grease, and mixe it well with the powder of chalke, then put thereto a good quantity of the powders of brimstone and el-ecampany roots, and stirre them all well together; then take a pretty quantity of quicksilver, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or sallet oile, & mixe it with all the rest very well together, and so annoint all the sore places about the horse with this ointment. Others vse to take of lampe oile, the fine powder of brimston, of black sope, of tarre, of hogs grease, and the soote of a chimney, of each a like quantity, & then mixe them all well together, by boiling them on the fire, and then annoint all the sore places therewith, as hot as the horse can suffer it, alwaies prouided that the horse be

be let blood before you vse the ointment. Others vse, after the horse is let blood, to take of oile de bay a pound, and of quicksiluer one ounce, and mixing them together, neuer leaue stirring thereof, till the quicksiluer be kild, & incorporated with the oile; then annoint all the sore places therewith, after you haue made them raw by rubbing them. Other Farriers vse first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the sore places within two daies after, with water where- in yong broome, or the hearb of arismanarck hath bin well sod in, and smally chopt, and mixt with a little soote; and rubbe him well vntill the sore places bleed, then take a pound of blacke sope, a pottle of keene mustard, foure peniworth of brimstone made into powder, three peniworth of quicksiluer well killed with fresh grease, two peniworth of verdigrease, a quarter of a pint of grease; stirre all these together in a vessell, till the grease and other things, be molten with labour and without fire, and therewithall annoint all the sore places, and with once annointing and twise washing, this will cure him. Others vse if the horse be young, to let him blood on both sides the necke, and then to cut the skin downe the middest of his forehead two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thinne slices of the greene roote of *Ellecampne* or *Angelica*, which is the better; so let them remaine vnder the skinne till the matter rot, then crush it soorth after two or three daies, and in twelue daies the rootes will fall out as it healeth; and this will cure the mange, prouided, that you annoint all the sore places with the powder of brimstone, verdigrease, and oile oliue, mixt vpon a fire very well together,

ther. Others vse after blood letting, to rowell the horse vnder the necke, that the euill humors may haue issue forth, then to rubbe all his body ouer with an hard haire cloth or an old curry combe, vntill the horse bleederh; after that take of sulphur, salt, & tartar, of each a like quantity, beate them and temper them, with very strong vinegar and as much common oile, and therewith annoint all the sore places; or else take very strong vinegar, the vrine of a boy vnder twelue yeares of age, and the iuice of hemlocke, mixe them together and wash the horse therewithall. Other Farriers vse after blood letting, to annoint the horse with one of these ointments, the sore hauing bene before rubbed till it bleed, either with brimstone, oile, vinegar, salte, soote, swines dung, and vnseckt lime, of each like quantity, well mixt and boild together, or else with brine water sod with nettles, or else with vinegar, allume and salte-niter boild together, or else wash the sore with beete-broth; then boile pepper beaten to powder, verdigrease, & cheruell in fresh grease, and annoint the horse all ouer therewith, holding a chaffing dish and coales or a hot barre of yron to his body, to make the ointment sinke in. Lastly, and as good as any of the rest, after the horse hath bene let blood, take an old curry combe, or a wooll card, and rub euery sore place about the horse till it bleed, then take of the oldest pisse you can get, a pottell, and of greene copporas three quarters of a pound; mixe & stir them well together, then set them on the fire, and boile them a while; then as hot as the horse can suffer it wash him with the same; after his washing is a littell dryed, take of oile an ounce & an halfe, of quicksilver 2 ounces, of white *Elleborus* one ounce, with a good quantity

ty of swines greafe, mingle all these well together, till no part of the quicksiluer can be scene, and then annoint the horse all therewith; and if the first time doe not cure him, the second will most assuredly, provided that during the time of cure you keepe the horse with a very thinne diet,

CHAP. 32.

How to know when a horse halteth before, in what part his grieve is.

THere is nothing more necessary for any mans vnderstanding that shall haue occasion at any time to vse a horse, especially for the skilfull Farrier, then to know the reason why a horse halteth, and where the grieve remaineth, as well because those griefes lye most concealed, as also because our kingdome is so full of subtil vnconscionable horse-courfers, that they are carefull most to conceale that which may soonest cozen their neighbours; you shall know then that no horse halteth before, but his grieve must be either in his shoulders, in his legges, or in his feete: if it be in his shoulders, it must either be on the toppe of the shoulder blades, which we call the withers, or at the bottome of the shoulder blade ioining to the marrowbone, which is the fore-pitch of the breast, or in the elbow of the horse, which ioines the nether end of the marrowbone and the leg together.

Now for the general knowledge whether the grieve be in the shoulder or no, looke if the horse do not lift vp his leg, but traileth it vpon the ground, then it is in the shoulder, & is a new hurt: if he cast his leg more out

in his going then the other, and that almost with an vn-bended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt; if you take him by the headstall of the bridle, and turne him as short as you can; possible of both hands, if then you see him when he is turned on the lame side, to fauour his legge very much (as he cannot chuse but doe) then also his griefe is in his shoulder; or if when a horse standeth in the stable, he stretcheth out his sore legge, and setteth it more forward then the other, it is partly a signe the griefe is in the shoulder, but not absolutely. Now when you know generally that the griefe is in the shoulder, then you shall learne to know in what part of the shoulder, as thus; if the horse halteth more when the rider is vpon his backe, then when he is off, then the griefe is on the top of the withers; if when with your hand you gripe & handle him vpon the top of the shoulder blades you find that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not hauing had any gald backe before, for that may deceiue you) then assuredly the griefe is on the withers. If the horse goeth bowing vnto the ground, and tread his steps very thicke, then it is a signe the griefe is in his brest, betweene the nether parte of the spade bone, and the vpper parte of the maribone; and therefore if with your thumbe you presse him hard in that part, you shall see him shrinke, and be ready to fall downe. Now if when you take his elbow in your hand betwixt your fingers, and your thumbe, and gripe it, the horse presently taketh his foote from the ground and lifts vp his legge, offering therewithall to bite at you, then the griefe is only in the elbow. Now if the griefe whereof a horse halteth be in his leg, it is either in his knee, in his shanke, or else in the pastorne

storne ioint: If it be either in his knee or pastorne ioynt, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will goe very stifly vpon them; if the griefe be in the shanke, then it is by meanes of some splent, screw, windgall, or such apparant griefe most apparant to be seene. Now, if the griefe of his halting be in the foote, then it is either in the cronet, in the heele, in the toe, in the quarters, or in the sole of the foote; if it be in the cronet, either the griefe will be apparant, the skinne being brcken or swolne some manner of way, or else laying your hand vpon the cronet it will burne and glow exceedingly, & then he hath got some straine of the ioint within the hoofe; if it be in the heele, as by ouer-reach, or otherwise, then it is to be seene, and he will tread altogether vpon the toe, if vpon any of the quarters, which is to be vnderstood from the midde hoofe to the heele, then going on the edge of a bancke or hilly ground, he will halte more then on the plaine ground, and by the horses comming towards you, and going from you vpon such edge or bancke, you shall easily perceiue whether his griefe be in the inner quarter or the outward quarter; also he may halt vpon his quarters by the pricking of a naile, & then you shal with a paire of pincions nip the head of euery naile and his hooue together, and where he complaineth there draw the naile, and if the naile sincke, then there is his paine. If he halt in the toe, which is seldome or neuer seene, then he will tread altogether vpon his heele; if his griefe be in the sole of his foote, as by the treading vpon some naile or stubbe, or by surbaiting or such like, then he will halte all after one sort, vpon any ground, vnlesse it be vpon the stones, and then he will halte the most.

Now.

in his going then the other, and that almost with an vn-bended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt; if you take him by the headstall of the bridle, and turne him as short as you can possible of both hands, if then you see him when he is turned on the lame side, to fauour his legge very much (as he cannot chuse but doe) then also his griefe is in his shoulder; or if when a horse standeth in the stable, he stretcheth out his fore legge, and setteth it more forward then the other, it is partly a signe the griefe is in the shoulder, but not absolutely. Now when you know generally that the griefe is in the shoulder, then you shall learne to know in what part of the shoulder, as thus; if the horse halteth more when the rider is vpon his backe, then when he is off, then the griefe is on the top of the withers; if when with your hand you gripe & handle him vpon the top of the shoulder blades you find that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not hauing had any gald backe before, for that may deceiue you) then assuredly the griefe is on the withers. If the horse goeth bowing vnto the ground, and tread his steps very thicke, then it is a signe the griefe is in his brest, betweene the nether parte of the spade bone, and the vpper parte of the maribone; and therefore if with your thumbe you presse him hard in that part, you shall see him shrinke, and be ready to fall downe. Now if when you take his elbow in your hand betwixt your fingers, and your thumbe, and gripe it, the horse presently taketh his foote from the ground and lifts vp his legge, offering therewithall to bite at you, then the griefe is only in the elbow. Now if the griefe whereof a horse halteth be in his leg, it is either in his knee, in his shanke, or else in the pastorne

storne ioint: If it be either in his knee or pastorne ioynt, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will goe very stiffly vpon them; if the griefe be in the shanke, then it is by meanes of some splent, screw, windgall, or such apparant griefe most apparant to be seene. Now, if the griefe of his halting be in the foote, then it is either in the cronet, in the heele, in the toe, in the quarters, or in the sole of the foote; if it be in the cronet, either the griefe will be apparant, the skinne being brcken or swolne some manner of way, or else laying your hand vpon the cronet it will burne and glow exceedingly, & then he hath got some straine of the ioint within the hoofs; if it be in the heele, as by ouer-reach, or otherwise, then it is to be seene, and he will tread altogether vpon the toe, if vpon any of the quarters, which is to be vnderstood from the midde hoofe to the heele, then going on the edge of a bancke or hilly ground, he will halte more then on the plaine ground, and by the horses comming towardes you, and going from you vpon such edge or bancke, you shall easily perceiue whether his griefe be in the inner quarter or the outward quarter; also he may halt vpon his quarters by the pricking of a naile, & then you shal with a paire of pinsons nip the head of euery naile and his hooe together, and where he complaineth there draw the naile, and if the naile sincke, then there is his paine. If he halt in the toe, which is seldome or neuer seeme, then he will tread altogether vpon his heele; if his griefe be in the sole of his foote, as by the treading vpon some naile or stubbe, or by surbaiting or such like, then he will halte all after one sort, vpon any ground, vnlesse it be vpon the stones, and then he will halte the most.

Now.

Now to be sure in what parte of the foote the griefe is; it shall be good, first to make him goe vpon the plaine ground, and then vpon a hard & stony ground, and after vpon a bancky ground, and by taking carefull notes, and carefully handling him, you shall easily seee of what member he halteth.

CHAP. 54.

Of halting behind, and where the griefe is.

IF a horse halte behind, his griefe of necessity must either be in his hippe (of some called the huckle bone) or in the stifle, in the hough, in the hamme, in the legge, in the neather ioint, in the pastorne, or in the foote. If he halte in the hip of any new hurt, the horse wil goe side-long, and not follow so well with that legge as with the other, neither will he be able to turne vpon that side without much fauouring of his legge; but if it be any old hurte, then the fore hippe will shrink and be lower then the other, and it is best seene when he goeth vp a hill, or vpon the edge of some bancke, so as the worst legge may goe on the higher side, for then he will halte so much the more, because it is painefull vnto him to goe so vneuenly wrinching his legge; if the griefe be in the stifle, then the horse in his going will cast the stifle ioint outward, and the bone on the inside will be farre bigger then the other, neither can he any more then touch the ground with his toe; if his griefe be in the hough, then it is by meanes of some spauen, which is apparant both to be seene and felt, or else of some straine or blow: and then the swelling will appeare, and the like is to be said of the hamme, wherein may be seene the

the sellander or such like apparant sorrance causing the horse to halte; if the grieffe be either in the legges, pastorne, or foote, you shall find it by such signes as haue bene taught yon in the former chapter.

CHAP. 55.

How to know if a Horse haue any hidden grieffe in him, that may make him to halte, when he commeth to trauel, and whence it proceeds.

NOW for as much as there be some horses which through long rest & running at grasse, will weare out the worst of their grieues, so that when they come to be but gently ridden they will couer their halting, and through a naturall awe they beare vnto the man whilst he is on their backs, goe as if they were as sound as might be, yet be truly, of themselves very vnperfect; in this case both to keepe your selfe from cosening, and to discouer the most hidden infirmitie, you shall first take the horse out of the stable in a long string, and causing one to runne him in his hand, at the length of the halter, marke how he sets downe his legges, for if any be imperfect, then that he will fauour; but if at first he goe vpright, and fauour no leg, then take his backe and ride him a while roundly vp and downe a rode, then light from his backe, and let him stand still an howre, then as before let him be run in a mans hand, at the halters length, without any man on his backe; and belecue it as a most certaine rule, if he haue the least grieffe that may be, he wil then shew it, and fauour that limbe which is pained; for by this rule only are many bad horse-courters discouered. Now to know whereof these griefes proceed, you

shall vnderstand that if the grieve proceede of a hot cause, then the horse halteth most when he trauelleth or is chaste. But if it proceed from cold causes, then he halteth most when he is cold, and least when he is hot and much trauelled.

CHAP. 36.

Of the grieve and pinching in the shoulder.

THe grieve or pinching of the shoulder, commeth either by labouring and straining the horse too young, or by the cariage of too great burthens. It is to be knowne by the narrownesse of the breast, and by the consumption of the flesh of the shoulders, in so much that the fore parte of the shoulder bone, will sticke out and be much higher then the flesh, & if it be of any long continuance, he will be very hollow vpon the bycket towards the fore-boothes, and he will goe wider beneath at the feete then at the knees. The cure thereof according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharpe knife, vpon both sides, an inch vnder the shoulder bone, and blowing the skinne well from the flesh, with a swans quill, both of the one and the other shoulder, euen vp to the toppe of the withers, and stroaking the wind vp equally with your hand into both the shoulders, and then when they are full, sticke the windy places with a hawell sticke ouer all the shoulders; then loosening the skinne from the flesh againe, rowel both the slits, either with tampins of horse haire, or with round peeces of vpper leather of an old shoe, with an hole in the midst, for the matter to issue forth at, and let the tampins be at least two handfuls long in the

the skinne, and the round rowell at least three inches broad, and beeing so put as they may lie plaine and flat within the cut, then once a day you shall turne the rowels in the skinne, & thrust out the matter; but if the hole grow so straight that the matter cannot easily come out, with a sharpe knife you shall enlarge it, then put a paire of pasterns on his forelegs, and so let him stand fifteene daies, at the end whereof walke him abroad, and try how he goeth, and if he do not goe to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteene daies, and he will goe sound. But our best Farriers vse, after they haue rowelled the horse, as is aforesaid, then to lay this charge or plaister all ouer his withers, shoulders, and breast. Take of pitch & of rozen, of each a pound, of tarre halfe a pint, boile all these together in a pot, & when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a woollen cloath bound to the end of it, and dippe it into the charge and couer, or daube all the shoulders therewith; that done, clap floxe of the collor of the horse, or as neare as you can get it vpon the charge, & euery other day make your rowels cleane, and put them in againe, continuing thus to do the space of fifteene daies; then take out the rowels, and heale vp the wounds, with two tents of flaxe dipt in turpentine, and hogges grease molten together, renewing the same euery day once, vntill the wounds be whole, but let the charge lye still vntill it fall away of it selfe; and if you let the horse runne at grasse, til he haue had a frost or two, there is no question but he will be a great deale the sounder. There be other Farriers which vse to rowell the horse, as is aforesaid, yet crosse wise, that is, one ouerthwart the other, then draw all the shoulder ouer, with a hot drawing

iron in the comliest wise you can, making many scortches downe his shoulders: then annoint both the and the rowels once a day, with sweet butter & walke the horse vp and downe euening and morning, that the humors may flow to the fore places and issue forth, and with your hands once a day at the least thrust out the matter; this cure is to be likewise continued the space of 15 daies, & then the horse will be whole, yet for mine owne part, in so much as the cure is foule, I doe not much affect it.

C H A P. 57.

Of the wrench in the shoulder.

THE wrench or straine in the shoulder, cometh of some dangerous slipping or sliding, either in the stable or abroad, or of too suddaine stopping, when a horse gallops, or by falles, either on the planks, or on slippery ground, or by too sodaine turning on vn sure ground, or by going too rashly out of some dore, or by the stroake of another horse: you shall perceiue it by his trailing his leg vpon the ground close after him. The cure is, to let him blood vpon the plat veine, & take away the quantity of 3 pints of blood, which blood you must saue in a pot, & put thereunto, first of strong vinegar a quart, & halfe a dozen broken egges, shels & al, & so much wheat flowre as wil thicken al that liquor; that done, put therunto of *Bole-armoniack* beaten into fine powder, a pound, of *Sanguis Draconis* 2 ounces, & mingle them altogether, so as the flowre may not be perceiued, and if it be too soft, you may adde a little more vinegar: then with your hand daube all the shouder from the maine downewarde and betwixt the fore-bowels.

bowels all against the haire, and let not the horse depart out of that place, vntill the charge be surely fastened vnto the skinne, that done, carry him into the stable, and tye him vp to the racke, and suffer him not to lie downe all the day, and giue him a litle meat, dyetting him very moderately the space of fifteene daies, during which time he may not stirre out of his place, but only to lye downe: and euery day once refresh the shoulder point with this charge, laying still new vpon the old; and at the fifteene daies end leade him abroad to see how he goeth, and if he be somewhat amended, then let him rest without traueilling the space of one moneth, and that will bring his shoulder to perfection: but if he mende nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you shall rowell him as is before shewed in the former Chapter, iust vpon the shoulder point, & so keep him rowelled the space of fifteene daies, not forgetting to stirre the rowell and cleanse the wound each other day, and then walke him vp & downe faire and softly, and turne him alwaies on the contrary side to the sore; and when he goeth vp right pull out the rowell, and heale vp the wound with turpentine and hogges grease molten together, as is before said: but if all this will not serue, then it shall be needfull to draw him chequer-wise with a hot yron, ouer all the shoulder point, & also to make him to draw in a plough euery day two howers at the least, to setle his ioints, for the space of three weekes or a moneth; and if any thing will helpe, these two last remedies will set him found. Now there be other Farriers, which for this grieve first let the horse bloud in the breast veine, and then rowell him from the neather parte of the

spade bone downe to the point of the shoulder, which done, you shall set a patten shoe vpon the sound foote, and to turne the horse to grasse for the space of a moneth, not forgetting euery other day to stirre and remoue the rowels, and to thrust out the matter: then alsoone as you see him go sound, you shall take off his patten shoe, and pull out the rowels, and then let him runne still at grasse, till he haue taken a frost or two, and no doubt but he will continue sound.

CHAP. 58.

Of the wrench in the wither ioint.

THIS wrench cometh by treading his foote in some hole, or in some rough or stony way. The signes whereof are these, the horse will halte, and the top of his backe vpon the points of his shoulder blades will be swolne and somewhat hard to handle. The cure is, take of blacke or gray sope halfe a pound, and ha- uing made it hot in a pan, take a handfull or two of towe, and dippe it into the sope, then lay it very hot ouer all the horses withers; then clappe a plaister of waxe, turpentine, and hogges grease, molten together ouer it, then couer it with two or three warme cloathes, and keepe the ioints as warme as may be: thus let him stand twenty foure howres ere you dresse him againe, and continue this manner of dressing for fifteene daies, and the horse will goe soundly. Now there be other Farriers, that in stead of this sope will take wine lees, and wheate flowre mingled together, and making a plaister thereof lay it very hot to the greued place, and so renew it once a day vntill the horse goe found.

CHAP.

CHAP. 39.

Of splaying the shoulder, or of shoulder torne.

THE splaying of the shoulder, is when by some dangerous flippe or slide, either vpon the side of some bancke, or vpon the plaunchers, the horse hath his shoulder parted from his breast, and so leaues an open clift, not in the skinne, but in the flesh and filme next the skinne, whereby the horse halteth, and is not able to go: it is to be seene by the trayling of his legge after him in going. The cure whereof is thus, first put a paire of strait pastornes on his forefeet, keeping him still in the stable without disquieting of him; then take of *Dialthea* one pound, of sallet oile one pint, of oile de bay halfe a pound, of fresh butter halfe a pound; meste all these things together in an earthen pot, and annoint the grieued place therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder; and within 2. or three daies after, both that place and all the shoulder will swell; then either pricke him with a launcet or fleame in all the swelling places, or else with a sharp hot iron, & then annoint it still with the ointement before said; but if you see that it will not goe away, but swell still and gather to a head, then launce it where the swelling doth gather most and is softest vnder the finger, and then taint it with flaxe dipt in turpentine, and hogges grease molten together, as is before shewed, renewing the taint twice a day till the sorrhance be whole.

CHAP. 60.

Of the shoulder pighte.

THe shoulder pighte is when a horse by reason of some great fall, rush, or straine, hath the point of his shoulder thrust out of ioint, which is easy to be seen in that the pointe of the sore shoulder will sticke out much farther then the other, and the horse will halte downe right. The cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is, first to make him swimme in a deepe water, vp and downe a dozen turnes, for that will make the ioint returne into his true place, then make two tough pins of ashen wood as much as your little finger, being sharpe at the points, each one five inches long; that done, slit the skinne an inch aboue the point, and an inch beneath the point of the shoulder, and thrust in one of the pins from aboue downewarde, so as both ends may equally sticke without the skinne; and if the pinne of wood will not easily passe through, you may make it way first with an yron pinne; that done, make other two holes crosse to the first holes, so as the other pinne may crosse the first pin right in the midst, with a right crosse, and the first pinne would be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent that the other being round, may passe the better without stoppe, and close he iuster together; then take a peece of a little line somewhat bigger then a whippe cord, and at one end make a loope, which being put ouer one of the pinnes ends, winde the rest of the line good and straight about the pinnes ends, so as it may lye betwixt the pinnes ends and the skinne, and fasten the last end with a packe needle and a packe threed vnto the rest
of

of the cord, so as it may not slippe; and to doe well, both the pinnes and the cord would be first annointed with a little hogs grease, then bring him into the stable, and let him rest the space of nine daies: and let him lye downe as little as may be, and put a pastorne on the fore legge, so as it may be bound with a cord vnto the foote of the manger, to keepe that legge alwaies whilst he standeth in the stable more forward then the other, and at the nine daies end, take out the pins, & annoint the fore places with a little *Dialthea*, or with hogges grease, and then turne him to grasse. Other of our latter Farriers, vse first to lay good store of straw vnder the horse, & then put a paire of strong pastornes on his forelegges, and another on his hinder, then hauing throwne him vpon his back, to hang him vp by the legs from the ground with two ropes drawne ouer some beame or baulke, which will put the bone into his true place againe, then hauing let him downe againe faire and softly, loose the fore pastorne of the sound legge, and with a cord before you let him rise, tye the lame legge to the foote of the manger, so shorte as in his rising he shall be forced to hold his legge before him for feare of putting his shoulder out of ioint, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three daies; and presently when he is vp, burne all the point of his shoulder with a hot drawing yron checker, wise, a full foot square at the least, & let euery stroke be no more, then an itch distant one from another: and hauing burned him well, charge all these burned places, and all the rest of his shoulder with pitch, rozen, and tarre molten together, and laid on something hot, with a cloath tyed to a sticks end; then clap floze of the collar of the horse vpon it, then charge

S f

him

him againe ouer the floxe, and at the three daies end looke his foote, and put a paire of pastornes vpon his feete, and let him neither lye downe, nor stirre out of the stable for the space of sixteene or twenty daies: then may you leade him abroad, & see whether he go well or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then giue him as much more rest, & that will recouer him.

CHAP. 61.

Of the swelling of the fore legges after great labour.

HOrses not much vsed to trauell, will after great labour swell vpon their fore legges, because heat and violent exercise will cause humors to resort downe into the legges, especially if such horses shal be inwardly very fat; for the indiscreete labour will melt that inwarde grease, and make it descend downe into the legges. The cure according to the practise of some Farriers, is, to take a pound of nerue-oile, a pound of blacke sope, and halfe a pound of boares grease melten, and boile them all well together, and then straine it, and let it coole; then annoint your horses legges therewith being made luke warme againe, and then keepe his legges cleane from dust. Other Farriers vse to bathe his legges in butter and beare, or in vinegar & butter, some with sheeps foot oile, some with neates foote oile, some with traine oile, and some with pisse and salte peeter boild together, of all which pisse & salt peeter is the best; & after any such bathing, you must roll vp the horses legs with hay ropes wet in cold water, euen from the pastorne to the knee, but in any wise not too strait for feare of doing hurte, so let him stand continually when he resteth. Now other

other Farriers somewhat more curious, vse for the swelling of the legges this bathe; take of mallowes three handfuls, a rose-cake, of sage one handfull, boile them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pinte of sallet oile, and then being somewhat warme, wash the swelling therewith euery daie once the space of three or foure daies: and if the swelling wil not go away with this, then take wine lees and cummin, and boile them together, and put thereunto a little wheate flower, and charge all the swelling therewith, and walke him often; and if all will not serue, then take vp the great veine about the knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from aboue, but all from beneath: and it will take away the swelling.

CHAP. 62.

Of a Horse that is foundred in his fete.

A horse is said to be foundred of his feete, when he hath such a numbnesse, & pricking or tingling within his houwes, that he hath neither sence nor feeling of his feete, but is in all respects like a man that by hard or crooked sitting hath both his feete asleepe (as wee call it) during which passion we know we can neither well goe nor stand; and euen so it fareth with a horse in this case, for the course of the blood being stopped, those obstructions causeth this torment. It cometh most commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled by taking his saddle off two soones; or by standing still in the cold vnstirred, or else by letting him stand still in some shallow water little higher then

his fetlocks. A horse also may be foundred, by wearing straight and vneasy shooes, especially in the former season, when a horse travelleth vpon the hard ground. The signes, to know it, is, the horse goeth crouching, and drawing all his foure feet within the compasse almost of a pecke, and will stand so fearfully as though he stood vpon needles. Now you shall vnderstand, that a horse will sometimes be only foundred of his forefeete, and not of his hinder, which you shall know in that the horse will tread onely vpon his hinder feete, and not on his forefeete, and goe as though his buttockes would touch the ground; and sometimes he will be foundred vpon his hinder feete, and not vpon his forefeet, and that you shall perceiue by his fearfulness to set his feet to the ground, being also so weake behind that he will stand quivering and quaking, and couet alwaies to lye downe, and sometimes he will be foundred of all his forefeete, the signes whereof were first declared.

Now for as much as the cures be all of one and the selfe same nature, and what cureth the first, cureth also the rest, I will ioine them all together, with this aduice, that if you find the horse to be foundred of the forefeet only, then to apply your medicine to the foreparts only, if on the hinder feete, then to the hinder parts; but if of all foure feete, then to lay your medicine to all the seuerall parts of the body, as shall be presently declared.

To come then to the cures, (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this disease) if your horse be foundred of all his foure feet, you shall cause him to be let bloud on his two breast veines
of

of his two forelegges somewhat above his knees; also you shall let him bloud on his two spurre veins, and on the veins of his two hinder secte a little aboue the hoofo, betweene the hoofo and the pastornes; you shall let these veins bleed well to the quantity of a quart or three pintes, which bloud you must saue in some vessell, and stirre it with a stick to keepe it from clearing: and when he hath bled as thou said, pte it all into one vessell, then stoppe the wounds with some horse dung, or some earth, and make a charge with the bloud in this sort: take as much wheat meale, branne and all, as will make the bloud somewhat thicke, and put it into the bloud: take eight or tenne egges, and breake them also into this bloud: shels and all: take a pinte of strong vinegar, and a quantity of *Bole-armoniacke* brayd, and put them into the bloud also, which done, you shall stirre them altogether; then shall you with your hand lay the said charge all along vpon the reins of the horses batke, vpon his buttockes, and downe his shoulders: when you haue laid on this charge thus; you shall take two long linnen ragges dipped in the same charge, with which so dipped you shall garter the horse about the knees of his forelegges somewhat hard, and likewise with two other like ragges so dipped, you shall garter him hard about both his hinder hooves also: that done, cause him to be walked vpon the hardest ground you can find, for the space of two or 3 howers: if he be loath to go, as commonly he will be, let one follow him, and beate him with a stick or wand to force him to go: then after this walking let him be set vp & tyed to the racke, that he

lye not downe, and there let him rest two or three howres; which done, let him be walked againe two or three howres more as aforesaid, then let him vp, and let him feed; and when you giue him drinke, which you may doe within two or three howres after his feeding, let it be a warme mash of mafe and water, and then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little; and if you let him stand an howre or two in a poole of standing water vp to the belly, and one vpon his backe, it is good also, and after that ride him againe a little: then let him be set vp well dressed and couered, and so by little and little ride him a day or two; and then may you boldly iourney him; for it is riding that bringeth the horse to the perfectnesse of his feete; and you shall find your horse as sound as euer he was.

Now during this cure, you are to take these obseruations in your memory.

First you shall not need to remoue or stirre the horses shoes: then you must after twenty foure howres rub off the charge from the horse backe.

Item, you shall take away his garters after twelue howres, and rub his knees & houghes with your hand, and with wispes, to take away the numbnesse.

Item, if you cannot get wheat meale, you may take oaten meale.

Item, if he will not bleed in the veines before named, then you may take your blood from the necke veine.

Lastly, if you take the horse in hand to cure within twenty foure howres after he is foundred, he will be sound againe within twenty foure howres after; if he goe longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now

Now the ancient Farriers of this kingdome, and amongst the *Italians*, differ not much in their practise from this already rehearsed, only into the charge they adde of *Sanguis Draconis* halfe a quarterne, and as much beane flower, as wheat flowre, and of turpentine halfe a pound; then if they did see that within foure daies the horse did not recouer, then they did know that the hurtfull humors did only lye in the horses feete, and there you must search his feete with your butterysse, paring all the soles of his feete so thin, that you may see the water issue through the sole: that done, let him bloud at the toes, & let him bleed well; then stoppe the veine with turpentine, & hogs grease molten together, and laid vpon a little flaxe, & then tacked on his shoes, & cram the place where you did let him bloud hard with tow, to the entent it may be surely stoppt; then fill all the soles of his feete with hogges grease and bran boild or fried together so hot as is possible, and vpon that stopping clappe a peece of leather, and two crosse splents, to keepe in the stopping; and immediatly after this take two egges, and beat them in a dish, and put thereunto as much *Bolearmoniac* and beane flower as will thicken the same, & mixe them well together, and make thereof two plaisters, such as may close each foote round about somewhat about the cronet, and bind it fast with a list or roller, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two daies; but let the soles of his feete be cleansed, and new stopped euery daie once, and the cronets to be removed euery two daies vntill the horse be sound: during which time let him rest vnwalked for feare of loosening his houses: but if you see that he beginne to amend, you may walke him faire

faire and softly once a day vpon some softe ground to exercise his legges and feete, and let him not eate much, nor drinke cold water; but if his foundring breake out aboue the hoofe, which you shall perceiue by the loosenesse of the coffin aboue by the cronet, then when you pare the sole, you must take all the forepart of the sole cleane away, leauing the heeles whole: to the entent the humors may haue the freer passage downeward, and then stoppe him, and dresse him about the cronet, as is before said. Now if the horse during this cure, chaunce to fall sicke, or grow so dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you shall first rake him, & after giue him a glister of mallowes, three handfuls boild in water from a pottle to a quart: then after it is strained, put to it halfe a pound of butter, and a quarter of a pint of sallet oile, and so administer it; then when the horse hath emptied his belly giue him this comfortable drinke. Take of malmsey a quart, and put thereunto a little cinnamon, mace & pepper beaten into fine powder, and of oile a quarter of a pint, and giue the horse to drinke of that luke-warme; that done, let him be walked vp and downe a good while together, if he be able to goe; if not, then tye him vp to the racke, and let him be hanged with canuas and ropes, so as he may stand vpon the ground with his feete, for the lesse he lieth downe, the better; but these extremities do seldome happen. Now there be other Farriers, which for the foundring of a horse, only take verdigrease, turpentine and sallet oile, and hogges grease, of each like quantity, of bees waxe one ounce, boile altogether, and so dip flaxe or tow in it: then hauing pared his feete thinne, and let him bloud on the toes, stoppe all his feete with that ointment

ment very hot: or else they take the rootes of nettles, and hemlocke, with elder pilles of each a handfull: boyle them tender in boares grease, or hogges grease, so let him bloud in the midst of the foote on the toe veine; then bathe and chafe his ioynt and legge therewith all about from his knee vnto the feetlocke, and then clappe it to, and binde a cloath fast to as hot as you can. So vse this once a day till he be well.

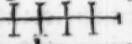
Now for mine owne part, although there is not any of these former recited practises but are found perfectly good in their kindes, yet I haue not found any so absolute either for old or new founder, as this which I will rehearse. First you shall with a very sharp drawing knife, draw euery part of the soles of the horses feete so thinne as is possible, euen till you see the very water and bloud issuing forth, and being sure to draw or pare euery part alike, which can hardly be done with a butterys: then at the very sharpe end of the frush of the horses foote you shall see the veine lye, then with your knifes end lift vp the hoofe and let the veine bleede (which as long as you hold open the hoofe wil spinne a great way forth) when it hath bled better then a pint, you shall close the hoofe and so stoppe the veine: then tacked on his foote a hollow shooe made for the purpose: that done, clap a little tow dipt in hogges grease and turpentine vpon the veine very hard: then take two or three hard egges roasted, and comming burning hot out of the fire, and burst them in the sole of the horses foote: then powre vpon them hogges grease, turpentine, and tarre boyling hot, and as much flaxe dipt therein as will fill vp the hollow shooe, then lay on a peece of leather to keepe all the rest in, and splint it sure:

and in this manner dresse his foure fecte, if all bee foundred, otherwise, no more then are foundred; and thus you shall dresse the horse three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble you shall bee sure to haue the horse as sound as euer he was. Now if the horse be foundred through the straintesse of a shoo, which in truth is not a founder, but a frettizing which is a degree lesse then foundring, then you shall for that sorrance, you shall first take off his shooe, and let him bloud on the toes, then stopping the place with bruised sage, then tack on his shooe againe, and stop it with hogs grease and bran boiled together, as hot as is possible; and do thus twice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

CHAP. 63.

Of the Splent as well on the inside of the knee as of any other part of the legge.

A Splent is to the outward feeling, a very gristle, or rather a hard bone, sometimes as big as a hazell nut, sometimes as big as a wal-nut, according to the age therof, growing vpon the inside of the forelegge, betweene the knee and the vpper pasterne i-ynt, and sometimes iust vnderneath, and close vnto the knee, which is of all other the most dangerous splent, and doth the soonest make a horse lame: it cometh by trauelling a horse too yong, or by ouerpreessing him with heauy burthens, wherby the tender sinews of his legs are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof it is easy, because it is apparant vnto the eie, & most palpable to be felt. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take an onyon, & pricking out the chore, put into it halfe a spoonfull of hony, &

a quarter of a spoonfull of vnſleckt lime, and 4. peny-
waight of verdigreafe; then cloſing vp the onion, roaſt
it in hot embers vntill it be ſoft, then bruiſe it in a mor-
tar, & as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it, lay it to the ſplent
& it will take it away; but in any caſe cut no ſkin. O-
ther of the ancient Farriers, vſe firſt to waſh the ſplent
with warme water, & then to ſhaue off the haire, and
lightly to ſcarifie or pricke the ſkin with the point of
a razor, ſo as the bloud may iſſue forth: then take of
Cantharides halfe a ſpoonful, & of *Euforbium* as much,
beaten into fine powder, & mingle them together
with a ſpoonful of oyle de bay, & then melt them in a
littell pan, ſtirring them well together ſo as they may
not boile ouer; & being ſo boiling hot, take 2. or 3. fea-
thers & anoint al the ſoare places therewith: that done,
let not the horſe ſtir frō the place where you ſo dreſſe
him, for an houre after, to the intent hee ſhake not off
the oyntment: then carry him faire & ſoftly into the
ſtable, & tye him ſo as he may not reach with his head
beneath the manger: for otherwiſe he will couet to
bite away the ſmarting & pricking medicine, which if
it ſhould touch his lips would quickly fetch off the ſkin;
& alſo let him ſtand without litter al that day & night;
the next day anoint the ſoare place with freſh butter,
continuing ſo to do euery day once for the ſpace of 9.
daies: for this will allay the heate of the medicine, &
cauſe both that & the cruſt of the ſplent to fall away of
it ſelfe. There be other Farriers which vſe with a fine
hot drawing Iron to burne the ſorrance downe in the
miſt the full length of the ſplent, & then ouerthwart
like this figure;  then 4. houres after ſuch
burning, take cows dung new made, & ſallet oile mixt
& wel beaten together, & therewith anoint al the ſoare
places; and this muſt be done when the ſplent is very
yong.

Others vse to slit the sorrhance with a knife the whole length of the splent, and then with a cornet to open the slit, & lay the splent bare; then to make about the wound a coffin of clay, all open at the toppe; then take boares grease made scalding hot, and powre it into the wound vntill the clay coffin be full; then let it rest vntill the grease be cold: after that let the horse rise, and this with once dressing will take the splent cleane away without any blemish or eye sore. Others vse to beate the splent with a stick, and to bruise it well, then pricke it with an awle, and thrust out the blood; then lay on white leather, and with a hot Iron make the grease scald it, or else melt into it pitch and verdygrease, and then lay a plaister of pitch ouer it, not remouing it vntill it fall off by it selfe; or else after you haue beat and prickt the splent, take out the chere of an onyon, and fill it with bay salt; then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the splent, and in steed of the onyon you may, if you will, binde to a hard roasted egge, being fire hot. Other Farriers vse to slit the skinn the length of the splent, then to dippe a little peece of linnen in warme wine, and sprinkle verdygrease thereon, and so lay it to the slit, renewing it once a day vntill the splent bee gone. Others vse to shaue off the haire, and to rubbe the splent twice a day with tarre very hard, till the splent be gone; but this splent must be very yong and tender, for fasting spetle is as good as tarre. Other Farriers vse to take a blacke snail and slit her, and put in bay salt, and lay it to the splent being opened, renewing it once a day vntill the splent be gone: then let the veine about the knee be taken vp, and let it bleede from below, lest it feede the splent againe. Others vse if the splent bee vpon

vpon the knee, to burne it as is before said; then take wormewood, smallage, pellitory of the wall, and branke vsine stamp with swines grease, and lay it to the burnings, provided that first the haire bee shaued off, and if the splent be below the knee, this cure is good also, and much the safer. Now after all these former recited practises, you shall vnderstand that the most cleanelest way to take away a splent, is first, after you haue cast your horse, with a hazell sticke of a pretty poyle and bignesse, gently to beate the splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder till the splent grow soft in euery part; then with the poynt of your lancet let out all the bloud and water; then take a brick-bat, and hauing laid it in the fire when it is exceeding hot, fold it vp in a red cloath, and therewith rubbe the splent, and smooth it vpon the top till you haue dryed away the bloud, & that no more moysture commeth out; then take of pitch, of rosen, and masticke, of each a like quantity, melt them well together, and being very hot, lay it ouer and all about the splent, then clappe floxe of the colour of the horses legge vpon it, and so let it rest vpon the splent, vntill it fall away of it selte; and if when it is fallen away, you perceiue that any part of the splent remaine behinde, which hardly will be if it be orderly beaten, then you shall dresse that remainder as you did the other before, and the splent will be perfectly cured. Now for the surest and most certaine way to take off a splent, it is thus: with the poynt of a sharpe knife, make a slit of more then a barley corne length iust vpon the top in the midst of the splent, and let it be so deep that you may be sure that the bone of the splent is bare; then put into that slit

with the point of your knife as much arsnicke as the quarter of an hazell nut; and within 3. or 4. daies, it wil so haue eaten the splent, that it will fall out of it selfe; then you shall heale vp the sore either with fresh butter molten, or with a plaister of hogs grease and turpentine, mingled & melted together; onely in this cure you must beware that you tye the horse so as for 24. houres he may not touch the soare place with his mouth. Now in conclusion I am to giue you this smal precept, to beare euer in your minde, that is both for the healing of this, & of al other tumors wharsoeuer. You must first stay the falling downe of new humors to the place troubled, as by binding plaisters, as pitch, rosen, masticke, red-lead, oyle, bole-armony, and such like; then to draw out the matter which is there gathered, with drawing simples, as waxe, turpentine, & such like: and lastly, to dry vp the relicks with drying pouders, as hony, & lime, oyster shels, foot, & such like; and also you must know, that all splents, spauens, or rubs, must either be taken way at the beginning, or after the full of the moone.

C R A P. 64.

Of the Serew, or therrow Splent.

Although diuers of our Farriers do distinguish & make a difference betwixt a serew & a splent, saying, that the serew is euer of the out-side of the leg, as the splent is of the insides yet it is most certaine, that the disease & infirmity is all one, & may as wel be cald a splent on the outside of the leg, as a splent of the inside of the leg, and this splent on the outside is euer least dangerous. Now a horse many times will haue both these splents at one time, & vpon one legge; nay

I haue seene them so iust opposite one to the other, that one would haue thought they had gone through the horses leg. whence it hath come to passe, that many foolish Farriers being of that minde, haue entituled them a therrow splent; and I haue seene my selfe some well reputed Farriers, that hauing the cure brought vnto thē, haue refused the same, saying it was a therrow splent, and therfore most incurable; but the opinion is most absurd & ridiculous: for the shin bone being hollow, and full of pith & marrow, there can nothing grow through it but it must confound the marrow, & then the bone cannot hold, but must presently breake in sunder, especially when such a weake spongy substance as a splent is, shall possesse the whole strength of the leg. Now for the cure, as the splent & it are all one, so they haue all one cure, & what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the later, in as much as it is not ful so dangerous, nor so neare the maine sinewes.

CHAP. 65.
Of the Mallander.

A Mallander is a kind of dry hard scab, growing in the forme of lines or strakes ouerthwart the very bought or inward bent of the knee, & hath hard hairs with stubborn roots, like swines bristles, which corrupteth and cankereth the flesh like the roots of a childs scabbed head; & if the sore be great and deepe, it will make the horse go stiffe at his first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the corruptiō of bloud, or from negligent keeping, when the horse wanteth cleane dressing. for you shal know that some horses naturally are giuen to haue long haire from the top of the bought of the knee down to the feetlocke, and

and that haire in the bough of the knee is oft apt to curle, whereby those horses if they be not very carefully and cleane kept, are much subiect to this disease. Now for the cure according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barreld herring out of the pickell, with a soft roe, and two spoonefull of blacke sope, and so much allomes beate all these in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the soare, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will kill the mallander; provided alwaies that before you lay any thing vnto a mallander, you euer pull off the dry scabbes first, and leaue no haire growing within the soare. Other Farriers vse to take a paring of cheese, & roasting it very hot, annoynt it with hony, and so hot lay it to the mallander, and renew it once a day till the mallander be whole: or else beate hens mucke & gillyflowers wel together, and lay it to the soare till it be whole. Other Farriers vse after they haue washt the soare cleane with warme water, and shaued off the haire and the scabs, to take a spoonful of sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paste, then spread as much on a clout as will couer the soare, and binde it fast on with a list, renewing it euery day once the space of two or three dayes; and at the three daies end take away the plaister and annoynt the soare with oyle of roses made luke warme, and that will fetch away the scurfe or crusty asker, bred by meanes of the burning plaister: which scurfe being taken away, wash the soare place well euery day once with his owne stale, or else with mans vrine, and then immediatly strow vpon it the powder of burnt oyster shels, continuing so to do euery day once vntill it be whole.

Others

Others of our later Farriers vse to take a quart of water, haue a pint of oyle, and as much flower as will thicken it with seething; then lay that hot to the soare twise a day for foure daies together; then take masticke, frankinsence, beaten to fine powder, quicksilver, kild either in the iuice of lemans, or in strong vinegar, of each an ounce; then of *Litergie* halfe an ounce, of *Cerasse* tenne ounces, and as much of swines grease clarified: incorporate and mingle all these together with vinegar and oyle, and lay it to the soare vntill the mallander bee kild; then heale it vp as is before shewed. Others vse after they haue washed it & and shaued it, to rub it with pisse and sope vntill it be raw: then to lay to it, nerue-oyle, hony, and strong mustard, vntill it be whole. Others vse to take Sulphure, vitrioll, sal-niter, sal-gemme, mixt with oyle de bay, and to rub the mallander well therewith. Now to conclude, you shall vn.lerstand that some horses will haue two mallanders vpon one legge, one aboue another, and sometimes one a litle aboue the inward bending of the knee, and another a litle below the inward bending of the knee; but the cure is all alike, and as you dresse one, so you may dresse two or three.

Now for mine owne part, I haue not found any thing better for a mallander, then after the soare is cleansed, to take the ordure or dung of a man, and annoynt the soare therewith, and it will kill it and heale it.

Of an upper attaint or ouer-reache vpon the backe sinew of the flanke, somewhat about the pasterne ioynt.

THIS which we call an vpper attaint, is nothing else but a painfull swelling of the master sinew, or backe sinew of the shanke bone, by reason that the horse doth sometimes ouer reach & strike that sinew with the toe of his hinder foote, and thereby causeth the horse to halt much. Now the signes are both the swelling and the halting : and the cure, according to some of the old Farriers, is, to dresse the soare place with a plaister made of wine lees and wheat flowre laid hot too, or else to take of blacke sope and boares grease of each like quantity, scalding hot; make a plaister or scare-cloth thereof, and clap it all about the soare place : or else if the swelling by no salue wil dissolue, take a fine thinne hot drawing Iron, & draw his legge all downward with the haire in many small striks from the one end of the swelling to the other; & make the strikes very thicke together, and somewhat deep: then anoynt his burning for 2. or 3. daies with blacke sope, and so turne the horse to grasse; but if he will not runne at grasse, then euery day giue him some moderate exercise; but this burning I fancy not much, for it is foule, & all be it take away the swelling, yet the seames of the burning, when they are cured, wil keepe the member bigge, as if it were still swelled.

Now other of the ancient Farriers, vse first to wash the legge with warme water, then to shaue off the haire as farre as the swelling goeth; then to scarifie the soare place with the poynt of a razor, that the bloud may

may issue forth : then take of *Cantharides* and *Euforbium* of each halfe an ounce, mingle them together with halfe a quarterne of sope, and with a slice spread some of this oyntment ouer all the soare, suffering him to rest there where you dresse him for one halfe hower after; and then you may carry him into the stable, and there let him stand without litter, and so tyed as hee may not touch the soare with his mouth : & then the next day rese him in the same manner againe : then the third day annoynt the place with fresh butter, continuing so to do the space of nine dayes, and at the nine dayes end make him this bath : Take of mallowes three handfuls, a rose cake, of sage, an handful ; boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle; and then being somewhat warme, wash the soare place therewith euery day once vntill it be whole. Others vse to cleaue a chicken or a pidgeon, and to clap it hot to the swelling, and it will abate it : or else take *Dialthea*, *Agripa* and oyle, and mixing it together, lay it to the swelling. Others vse to take of frankinsence, of rosen, of tarre, of *Euforbium*, of turpentine, and fenugreeke, of each a quarter of an ounce; of suet an ounce, of oyle an ounce, of waxe three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of *Myrre*; mixe and melt them altogether, and plaister-wise lay it to the soare place till it be whole : or else take for this sorranee, 3. quarters of an ounce of *Sanguis draconis*, an ounce of bole-armony, as much oyle, three ounces of masticke, and as much suet, and as much swines greafe ; melt and mixe them together, and lay it to the swelling, and it will take it away ; then make the shoes

of his hinder feete shorter then the hornes of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horne hang ouer vncut away, and make the foreshooe no longer then his heele, but rather the shorter.

CHAP. 67.

*Of a neather Attaint, or ouer-reach on the
pasterne ioynt.*

THe neather Attaint, or ouer-reach on the midft, and in the hollow of the pasterne ioynt is a little bladder full of ielly, like vnto a winde-gall; and though it be not apparant to the eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some wrinch or straine, as by an ouer-reach, and it will make a horfe halt much. The signes are, the neather ioynt towards the feetlocke will be very hot, and somewhat sweld, and the little soft bleb will easily be felt. The cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers is, take a small cord, and roll him somewhat strait from the knee to the neather ioynt, and then in the pasterne betweene the hooft and the ioynt with a fleame strike him in the midst of the swelling, and let out the matter: then take the white of an egge, and beate it with a little salt, and then dipping flaxe therein lay it vnto all the swelling, and then vntroll his legge and renew the saluetwice a day till all the grieft be gone. But in any case let him not be laboured or ridden whilest he is in curing.

CHAP. 68.

Of an Aittaint or ouer-reach on the heele.

AN aittaint or ouer-reach vpon the heele, is when a horse striketh the toe of his hinder shooe into his heele, iust vpon the setting on of the hoofe; and this ouer-reach if it be not looked vnto, will fret and ranckle so much inward, that it will endanger the horses hoofe, and you shall commonly see by the cut the skinne hang ouer the horses heele, and it will make a horse halt. Now the cure is, first to cut away the skinne, and also the hoofe and the flesh, till you haue made the soare euen & plaine without any hollownesse; then wash it very well with beere and salt, then bind vnto it a little flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, mingled with a little bole-armony, renewing it euery day once the space of three or foure dayes, and that will heale it.

CHAP. 69.

Of the Mellet on the heele.

AMellet is a dry scabbe that groweth vpon the heele, sometimes through the corruption of bloud, and sometimes for want of cleane rubbing and dressing when he is wet set vp: it appeareth like a dry chap without any moysture, and will bee sometimes as well on both heeles as on one. The cure is, according to the practise of the old Farriers, to take halfe a pint of hony, & a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, and mixe them together: then put thereto foure or fiue spoonefull of vinegar, and as much of

allome as an hennes egge vnburnt, and two spoonefull of rye flowre; mixe them all well together, and then lay it plaister-wise to the loare as farre as the meller goeth, and let it lye thereto fīue dayes, and then take it away, and wash all his legges and foote with salt beefe broth; and then rope his legges all a day with wet hay-ropes, and hee will be sound: provided alwayes that before you dresse him, you euer take off the dry scab or scurfe, and make the loare as cleane and as plaine as is possible.

CHAP. 70.

Of false Quarters.

A False Quarter is a rift or open back seame, sometimes in the outside, but most oftēst in the inside of the hooft, because the inside is euer the weaker part; which sides are euer called quarters: whence this sorrhance taketh his name, & is called a false quarter, as much as to say, a sicke and vnfound quarter: for it is as if it were a peece set vnto the hoof, & the hooft not all of one entire peece as it ought to be. It cometh many times by euill shooing, and euill paring, and sometimes by pricking the horse and such like hurts. The signes to know it are, the horse will halt much, and the rift will bleede, and when the shooe is off, the whole sorrhance is apparant to be seene. The cure according to the ancient Farriers, is to take off the shooe, and cut away so much of the shooe on that side where the sorrhance is, as the shooe being immediately put on againe, all the whole rift may be vncovered: then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a roll of tow dipt in turpentine, waxe, and sheepes

sheepes suet molten together, renewing it euery day once till it be whole: and the rift being closed in the toppe, draw him betwixt the haire and the hoofe with a hot Iron ouerthwart that place, to the intent that the hoofe may shoot all whole downward; and when the horse goeth vpriht, ride him either with no other shooe then this, or else with such a shooe as may beare in euery part but onely vpon the false quarter, yntill the hoofe be hardened. Others vse to annoynt it once a day with sheeps suet and oyle mixt together, and that will close the rift. Others vse to cut away the old corrupt hoofe, and then take seuen whites of egges, the powder of incence, of vnsleckt lime, of masticke, of verdigrease, and of salt, of each three ounces; mixe them well together, then dippe in as much hurds as will couer the soare hoofe; lay it on, and then aboue it lay swines grease an inch thicke, and likewise below it also: bind this on in such fort that it may remaine vnstird a fortnight, then renew it so againe, and it will make perfect his hoofe. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the false quarter, and therby causeth the horse to halt, then you shall lay your finger vpon it, and if the horse shrinke thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter; then lay on horse dung, oyle, salt, and vinegar mixt together plaister-wise, and that will heale it, and make the hoofe good; yet howeuer, you must haue care in shooing him till his hooues bee hardened, as is before shewed you

CHAP. 71.

Of a horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hippe.

A Horse is said to be hipped when either by straine, blow, or other accident, the hippe bone is removed out of his right place. It is a forrance as hard to be cured as any whatt euer: for if it be not taken euen at the first instant, there will grow within the pot of the huckle bone such a thicke hard substance, that it will leaue no place for the bone, and then it is vtterly vncureable. The signes to know the forrance, are, the horse will halt much, and goe side long, and will traile his legge a little attter him; the soare hippe also will be lower then the other, and the flesh will waste away on that side of his buttocke. The cure is, according to the best Farriers, if you take him in good time, first to cast him on his backe, and then hauing a strong pastorne on his grieued legge, with a rope draw that legge vpright, and with your handes on each side his thigh bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let it downe gently, and so suffer him to rise with all meeknesse; then go with him into the stable, and there charge all his hippe & backe with pitch and rosen molten together, and layd on warme; and then some floxe of his owne colour to be clapped vpon the same, and so turne the horse to grasse vntill he go vpright. But if the horse be not hipped, but onely hurt in the hippe, and that newly, then first take of oile de bay, of *Dialthea*, of nerue-oile and of swines grease, of each halfe a pound; melt them all together, stirring them continually vntill they be throughly mingled together, then annoyne the

the soare place therewith against the haire, euery day once the space of a fortnight, and make the ointment sinke well into the flesh by holding a hot barre of Iron ouer the place annoynted, weauing your hand to and fro vntil the oyntment be entred into the skin; and if at the fortnights end you see the horse not any thing amended, then slit a hole downeward in his skinne an inch beneath the hippe bone, making the hole so wide as you may easily thrust in a rowell with your finger; and then with a cornet and a quill, blow the skinne from the flesh about the bone, and round about the same, so broad as the rowell may lye flat and plaine betwixt the skinne and the flesh: and this rowell would be made of soft calues leather with a hole in the midst, and a threed tyed vnto it; to pull it out when you would cleanse it, or the hole: and if the rowell be rolled about with flaxe fast tyed on, and annoynted with the oyntment vnder written, it will draw so much the more. Now you must thrust in your rowell first double, and then spread it abroad with your finger: that done, taint it with a good large taint of flaxe, dipt in a little turpentine and hogs grease molten together, and made warme, and cleanse the hole and the rowell euery day once; and also renew the taint for the space of a fortnight, and before you dresse him, cause him euery day to be led vp and downe a fote pace a quarter of an howre, to make the humors come downe; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowell, and heale vp the wound with the same salue, making the tent euery day lesser and lesser vntill it bee whole: and so soone as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw crosse lines of eight or nine inches long right ouer the hippe bone,

so as the rowelled place may bee in the very middest thereof, and burne him no deeper but so as the skin may looke yellow; and then charge all that place, and ouer all his buttocke with this charge. Take of pitch one pound, of rosen halfe a pound, and of tarre halfe a pint; boyle them together, and then being good and warme, spread it on with a clout tyed in a riuen sticke, and then clap on a few floxe of the horses colour; and if it bee in sommer, let the horse run to grasse a while, for the more he trauelleth at his own will, the better it is for him.

CHAP. 72.

Of Stifling, and hurts in the Stifle.

THat horse is said to bee stifled, when the stifling bone, which is a little bone of 2. inches in length, lying betwixt the neather end of the thigh bone, and the vpper end of the great hough bone of the hinder legge, is by any straine, stroake, slippe, or such like, thrust out of his right place; but if the stifling bone be not remoued nor loosned, and yet the horse halteth by meanes of some grieve in that place, then we say the horse is hurt in the stifile, and not stifled. The signes are these. If the horse be stifled, the stifile bone will sticke out more of the one side then of the other, & is apparant to the eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his toe. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to thrust 2. round pins crosse the stifling bone, through the skinne, in such sort as you were taught for the shoulder pight; but the pinnes would not bee any thing neare so bigge, nor so long, because the stifling bone

bone is not so broad as the shoulder: and standing in the stable let him haue a pastorne and a ring vpon his fore legge, and thereunto fasten a cord, which cord must go about his necke, and let it be so much strained, as it may bring his fore legge more forward then the other, to keepe the bone from starting out; but this cure is foule and troublesome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, vse only to set on a patten shooe vpon his sound foot, and so turne him abroad, that hee may bee compeld to treade vpon his lame foote; and that straining of it will in a day or two make him as sound as euer he was, and put the stifling bone into his true place againe. But if you cannot readily get a patten shooe, then you shall take either a plaine surfingle, or any other broad binding web, that will go three or foure times about the horses legge, and with it you shall garter vp the horses sound legge three fingers about his hamme, euen vpon his maine great sinew, so strait as your selfe and another man can draw it; and then turne the horse abroad where he may go vp and downe, and in eight and fortie howres the horse will be as sound as euer he was; then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered vp with fresh butter, for it will be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of stifling happen vnto your horse in your tranell, and that your occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these cures, then you shall take your horse either to some deepe pond or deepe riuer that hath easie going in and out, and there swimme him vp and downe a dozen turnes: which done, you may after trauell him at your pleasure: for the more he is laboured, the sounder he will

go. Now if your horse be not stilled, but onely hurt in the stifle, either with some stripe, or some straine, then the bone will not stand out, yet perhaps the place will be much sweld. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to make a little slit in his skinne a handfull below the soare place, and then with a quill blow all the skin from the flesh vpward, then with your hand presse out the winde againe, & then thrust in a rowell of horse haire from the first slit to the vpper part of the stifle bone: this done, take a pottell of old pisse, and boyle it to a quart, and clense it well; then take a handfull of mallowes, and halfe a pint of sillet oyle, and adde them to the pisse, & then boyle them well together: then bathe all the soare place therewith, euery day once the space of seuen or eight dayes, and let him not stirre out of the stable during the cure, and in twentie one dayes he will be sound. Other Farriers vse only to take a pound of bole-armony, a quart of red wine vinegar, fixe egges beaten, shels and all, two peny worth of English hony, & as much *Venice* turpentine, one quart of flowre, and one good handfull of bay-salt; put all these in a pot, & incorporate them wel together; then keep them close one night, and the next day annoynt the soare place with some of it: and thus dressing it once a day the space of nine daies, it will make the horse sound.

CHAP. 73.

Of the bone-Spauen or dry Spauen.

THe bone-Spauen, or dry Spauen, is a great hard knob as big as a wal-nut, growing in the inside of the hough, hard vnder the ioynt, neare vnto the mai-ster veine; it groweth at the first like a tender gristell, and

and by proceſſe of time, it cometh to be a hard bone,
& cauſeth the horſe to halt much. This ſorrance will
come ſometimes by nature or deſcent, as when either
the ſire or the dam of the horſe haue had the ſame diſ-
eaſe; & ſometimes (which is moſt generall) it cometh
when a horſe is laboured too yong: for a horſe in that
part of his hinder leg hath ſmal bones knit all together
vpon one cluſter, which being preſſed before they be
naturally hardened, cā not chuſe but thruſt forth theſe
vnnatural excretions. Otherwhiles it proceedeth from
extreme labour & heate, diſſoluing humors, which do
deſcend through the maiſter vein, continually feeding
that place with euil nutriment, & cauſeth the place to
ſwell; which ſwelling in cōtinuance of time becometh
ſo hard as a bone, & therefore is cald the bone ſpauen.
The ſignes are the apparant ſight of the ſorrance; and
truely for mine owne part, I am of the mind of other
Farriers, that it is very hard abſolutly to cure it; yet that
the eie-ſoare may be taken away, & the halting much
eaſed, is not hard, for I haue done it many times. Then
to proceed to the cure therof, according to the opini-
on of the old Farriers, is thus: Firſt, ſlit the ſkin iuſt o-
uer the head of the ſpauen or excretion, and open it
with a cornet, and in any caſe haue a care that you
touch not the maiſter veine, but put it by: then
with your lancet lay the ſpauen all bare, then with a
fine cheſſell about a quarter of an inch broad, or
little more, ſtrike off the head of the ſpauen,
to the quantity of a quarter of an almond, or ac-
cording to the bigneſſe of the ſpauen: then take two
peny waight of verdigreafe beaten to fine powder,
& two penny waight of nerue-oyle, and beate them all
well together: then laying ſome of it vpon fine lint,

lay it vpon the spauen; then lay dry lint betwixt the medicine and the veine, that the medicine may not touch the veine: then lay a plaister of pitch, rosen, turpentine, and hogges grease molten together, all ouer the hough, both to comfort the ioynt, and to keepe in the medicine. And thus dresse him the space of three daies, and it will cleanse away the spauen euen to the bottome; at the end of three dayes you shal wash away the corrosiue and the matter either with tanners water or with vinegar, and lay no more of that salue thereto for hurting the bone; then make a plaister of *Diaculum*, and lay it vpon a linnen cloath, and lay that plaister vnto the spauen, renewing it euery day once for the space of 7. dayes, and it will heale him vp.

Others of the old Farriers vse first to wash the spauen with warme water, and shaue off the haire so farre as the spauen extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleede: then take of *Cantharides* one dozen, and of *Euforbium* halfe a spooneful; beate them in powder, and boyle them together with a little oyle de bay, lay this boyling hot vpon the soare, and let his taile be tyed vp for wiping away the medicine; and then within halfe an howre after set him vp in the stable, and tye him so as hee may not lye downe all that night for feare of rubbing off the medicine; and the next day annoynt it with fresh butter, continuing thus to do euery day once the space of 5. or 6. dayes; and when the haire is growne againe, draw the soare place with an hot Iron in this sort,



iust vpon the spauen: then take another hot ro nli ke a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the poynt, and thrust it in at the neather end of the
the

the middle line, and so vpward betwixt the skinne & the flesh, an inch and an halfe; and then taint it with a litle hogges greafe and turpentine molten together, and made warme, renewing it euery day once the space of nine dayes; provided that first immediatly after his burning you take vp the maister veine, suffering him to bleed a litle from aboue, then with a red silke tye vp the vpper end of the veine, and leaue the neather end open, to the intent that hee may bleede from beneath vntill it ceasse of it selfe; and this will diminish the spauen, but not take it cleane away.

Now there be other Farriers which vse after they haue burnt it in manner aforesaid, and taken vp the maister veine, to annoynt it with fresh butter, till the burning beginne to scale, and then take of sage, and nettles, of each a handfull, and boyle them with 4. handfull of mallowes in faire water; and then put thereto a litle butter, and with that bathe him euery day once for three or foure dayes till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his feete during the cure. Others vse to pricke the spauen with a sharp poynted knife, then take a peece of a candle, and lay a peece of browne paper vpon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, & after annoynt it with butter. Others vse first to pricke the spauen well, then to lay vpon it for three or foure dayes together, euery day, mans dung: after that lay to it *Galbanum* till the soare matter and rheume, and the humour come forth: then wash it with vrine, and lastly heale it vp with oyle and hony boyled together, for that will bring on the haire

Now to conclude, that which I haue euer found to bee the surest and cleaneest way to take the bone
spauen

Spauen quite away, if it bee vsed with discretion and care, is to take of *Vnguentum Apollolorum*, & of white mercury, of each a like quantity, but of mercury rather the more; mixe them well together: then after you haue cast your horse, make a slit iust the length of the spauen, so that you touch not the maister veine: then opening it, and laying all the spauen bare, with a sharpe instrument scall the spauen a little; then make a plegant of lint iust so bigge as the excretion or bone spauen is: then spreading some of the salue thereon, lay it vpon the spauen: then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, especially the maister veine from the corrosiue: then lay the plaister of pitch, rosen, turpentine, and hogges grease before spoken round about his hough, and so let him rest foure and twenty howres: then take away all that medicine, and scalling the bone a little, if you finde the corrosiue haue not gone deepe inough, then dresse it in the same manner the second time, and that will be altogether sufficient: then take of turpentine, of Deeres suet, and of waxe, of each a like quantity, and mixe and melt them well together, then dresse the soare place therewith being warmed; and lint or tow dipt therein; and within a day or two you shal see the whole crust of the spauen come cleane away, then may you with the same salue, heale vp the wound; and this hath neuer failed me in any practise.

CHAP. 74.

Of the bloud Spauen, wet Spauen, or through Spauen.

THE bloud Spauen, wet Spauen, or through Spauen (for all is one disease) is a soft swelling, growing

ing on both sides the hough, and seemes as though it went through the hough, wherby it is called a through spauen; but, for the most part, the swelling on the in-side, (because it is fed continually of the maister veine) is greater then the swelling on the out side. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and sleamy humour, and not so viscous and slimy as the other spauen doth, and therefore this neuer waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone; and therefore it is a much easier cure then the other. The signes thereof are like the other, the apparant sight thereof; and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: first, wash the spauen with warme water, and then dresse it with *Cantharides* and *Euforbium*, in such sort as was at large shewed in the former chapter; onely you shall not boyle them, but onely mixe them together, and dresse the soare therewith 2 daies together: then annoynt it with butter, and after burne it with a hot Iron both without & within, in manner as is shewed also in the former chapter; but you shall by no means taint it: then immediatly you shall take vp the maister veine, & let it bleed, as was shewed before: and then for the space of 9. dayes, annoynt him every day once with butter vntill the burning begin to scale, & then wash it with this bath: Take of mallowes 3. handfuls, of sage one handfull, & as much of red nettles; boyle them in water vntill they be soft, then put thereto a little fresh butter, and bathe the place every day once for the space of three or foure daies; and vntill the burnings be whole, let the horse come in nowet. Other Farriers vse after they haue shaued off the haire and taken vp the veine, to take of Mustard seede, of

the great mallow roote, and of oxen dung, of each a like quantity, and as much strong vinegar as will mixe them together like a salve; then beate them all well together, and make thereof a soft plaister, or else an ointment, and lay it vpon the spauen; change it euening and morning, and binde it in such sort to the sorranee with some peece of cloath, that it may not fall off or be remoued; and when the spauen is cleane gone, lay vpon the place a plaister of pitch very hot, and take it not off, vntill it fall away of it owne accord. Other Farriers vse vnto this former medicine to adde oyle de-bay, turpentine, and bole-armony. And other Farriers vse but onely to take vp the veine, both aboue and below the spauen, and suffering it to bleed well; then to knit vp the veine, and annoynt it with butter till it bee whole, and it will consume the spauen.

CHAP. 75.
Of the Sellander.

THe Sellander is a certaine kind of dry scab, growing in the very bent of the hamme of the hinder leg; and it extendeth out into ill fauoured chaps or chinkes which if it bee not preuented by medicine, it will fret in sunder the sinewes of the hough: it is in all poynts like vnto a Mallander, and proceedeth from the selfe like causes, and requireth the selfe same cures; therefore looke into the chapter of the mallander, and whatsoeuer you finde there that will cure the Mallander, the same will also cure the Sellander.

CHAP. 76.
Of the Hough Bonny.

THe Hough bonny is a round swelling like a *Paris* ball, growing vpon the very tip or elbow of the hough, and cometh euer of some stripe, or bruise; but especially when he beateth his hough either against the post which standeth behinde him, at the neather end of his stall, or against the barre which doth diuide him from another horse; which many raunish Iades will do, when they seeke to strike at the horse that standeth next them. Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron somewhat sharpe at the end, like a good bigge bodkin, and let it be somewhat bending at the poynt; then holding the soare with your left hand, pulling it somewhat from the sinewes, pierce it with the Iron, being first made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottome, and so vpward into the ielly, to the intent that the same ielly may issue downeward out at the hole: and hauing thrust out all the ielly, taint the hole with a taint of flaxe dipt in turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and also annoynt the outside with hogges grease made warme, renewing it euery day once vntill the hole be ready to close vp, making the taint euery day lesser and lesser, till it be all whole. Now for mine owne part, both for this sorrance, or any other bruise in this part, I haue found this cure euer the best. First either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old vrine, or else with a plaister of wine lees & wheat flowre boyled together, to ripen the swelling, and bring it to pu-

trifaction, or else to drue the swelling away; but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the lowest part of the softnesse, with a thinne hot Iron, and so to let out the matter: then to taint it with turpentine, Deeres suet, and waxe, of each like quantity molten together, laying a plaister of the same salue ouer it, to hold in the taint vntill it be perfectly whole.

CHAP. 77.

Of the Curbe.

A Curbe is a long swelling a little beneath the elbow of the hough in the great sinew behinde, hard aboue the top of the horne, which causeth the horse to halt after a little labour: for the more his sinew is strained the greater is his paine, and the more he hath rest, the lesse is his griefe; it commeth as the spauen comes, either from descent, or from great burthens when the horse is yong, or else from some strain or wrench. The signes are the apparant view thereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is, first to shaue off the haire, then pricke it with a fleame in three or foure places, and for three or foure dayes together, lay vnto it twice a day mans dung; then lay *Galbanum* to it likewise twice a day till it rot, and that the matter doth issue forth; then wash it with vrine: and lastly, heale it vp with hony and oyle boyled together, renewing the same twice a day till the Curbe be gone; and in any case let all your salues bee applyed warme and new made, and if you make an issue with a hot Iron in the bottome of the Curbe, it will not do amisse.

Others

Others vse to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the soare as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warme, vent it in fixe or seuen places: then take a spoonefull of salt, halfe a spoonefull of nerue-oyle, and a peny waight of verdigrease, & the white of an egge; mixe these well together, & dipping flaxe in the same, lay it to the Curbe: and this in few dressings will take it away. Other Farriers vse to chafe and rub the Curbe well with their hands: then take redde wall-wort leaues, and borage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curbe, renewing it once a day for a seuennight together. Others vse to slit the Curbe all the length, then take a peece of linnen cloath, and wet it in wine made warme: then strow verdigrease therupon, & bind it to the soare, renewing it once a day vntill the curbe be gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of wine lees a pint, of comin halfe an ounce, and as much wheate flowre as will thicken it, and stirre them well together, and being made warme, charge the soare place therewith, renewing it euery day once the space of 3. or 4. daies, and when the swelling is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin in this sort, and couer the burning with pitch and rosen molten together, and laid on good and warme, and clappe thereon some floxe of the horses colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remoue them not vntill they fall away of themselues; and for the space of nine dayes let the hofse rest, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this last recited salue, will adde tarre, and it is not amisse, onely it will not sticke so well. Now for mine owne part, I haue euer found this practise the best:

First, with a broad inckle to binde the hough strait a little aboue the cod: then with a smooth hazell stick to beate, rubbe, and chafe the curbe: then with a fleame strike it as deepe as you can in two or three places of the curbe: then thrust out the corrupt bloud; and after vpon the poynt of your knife, put into euery hole as deep as you can thrust it, the quantity of two barly cornes of white arsnicke, and so let the horse rest foure and twenty howres after; then after onely annoynt the soare place with hot molten butter till it be whole, once a day at the least.

CHAP. 78.

Of the Paines.

THe paines is a certaine vlceroous scabbe growing in the pastornes of a horse, betwixt the fetlocke and the heele, full of fretting matterish water, and cometh onely for want of good rubbing and cleane dressing, after the horse hath bene iourneyed in the winter wayes, by meanes whereof the sand and durt remaining in the haire, fretteth the skinne and flesh, and so breedeth to a scabbe; and therefore your *Frisons*, and *Flaunders* horses and mares, which now are so much in vse with vs for the coatch, are the soonest troubled with this disease, if the keeper bee not much the more carefull. The signes hereof are, his legges will be swolne and hot, the scabbe will be palpable to be felt, and the water will issue out of the scabbe; which water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the haire, and breede scabbes where it goeth. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of turpentine, hogs grease, hony, and blacke
soppe,

soppe, of each a like quantity, and hauing molten them vpon a soft fire, take it off & put in a little bole-armony, finely beaten into powder; then worke all these things well together with a sticke in your right hand, & a dish of wheat floure by you, that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you haue made it thicke like an oyntment or soft salue: then spreade it vpon a linnen cloath, as bigge as the soare, hauing first cut away the haire, and made the soare raw, apply to the salue, and dresse him thus once a day vntill it be whole.

This medicine is well approued to cure all sorts of *Paine, Scratches, Moully heeles*, or any other sciruy scalls whatsoeuer, that may breede in a horses leg or heeles, whether they come by meanes of euill humors, or for lacke of good dressing or cleane keeping, whether they be mattery and filthy running soares, or else drye scabbes. Others of the old Farriers vse for this for-
rance to take a pint of red wine lees, and a handfull of wheate branne, a saucerfull of hony, and halfe a pound of the powder of powdred beefe burnt, and as much of barke dust, and halfe a pound of allome, and a quarter of a pound of swines grease, and halfe a handfull of veruine; beate all these together in a mortar, and then fry them ouer the fire, and make a hote plaister thereof, and lay it to the soare as hot as the horse may suffer it, letting it abide there the space of threedayes, and in once or twice thus dressing him, it will make him sound; yet some hold, if you doe with a hot drawing Iron seare the great veine ouerthwart, a handfull aboue the fetlocke, and then take a spoonefull of tarre, a spoonefull of butter, and a spoonefull of hony; and warming them well together,

ther, anoynt the veine therewith euery day til the cure be perfected, and it is much auailable. Other Farriers vse, first to wash all the horses pastornes with butter & beere wel warmed together, and then his legge being somewhat dried, clip away all the haire that doth annoy the soare: then take of turpentine, of hogs grease, and of hony, of each like quantity; mingle them together in a pot, and put thereunto a little bole-armony, the yolkes of two egges, and as much wheat flowre as will thicken the thinges aforesaid; and so by long working it, make it like a plaister; then spreade it vpon a linnen cloath, and lay it round about the horses pastorne, and binde it fast on with a roller, renewing it once a day till the horse be whole; and in no wise let the horse come in any wet during the cure. Others vse, first to chafe the soare place with a hay-rope, or with a haire-cloth, till it either bleed or be raw; then take a little strong mustard, beane flowre, and fresh grease, with a little fenugreeke; then mixe all together in a dish, and make thereof a salve, and therewith annoynt the soare vntill it leaue mattering: then take hony, the white of an egge, and fresh butter; mixe them together, and annoynt the soare place therewith vntill it be whole. Others vse only to bathe the soare with beefe broth, and then for foure or fiue dayes after, to annoynt it with sope, or else first to plunge his feete in scalding water twice or thrice, & bathe the soare in scalding water: then haue ready a hard roasted egge, cleaue it in the midst, and clappe it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; vse this once or twice, and you may aduenture to ride him. Others vse to take pepper, garlicke stamp, cole-worts, and old hogges grease, of each like quantity; then

then beate them in a mortar till they come to a salue, and so lay it to the soare, renewing it once a day till it bee whole. Others vse first to take vp the shackle veines on both sides, then take the soft roe of a red herring, & mustard, & blacke sope, and when they are well beat together, boyle them in vinegar till they come to a salue, & apply it to the soare; this will cure the Pains, albe you do not take vp the shackle veines. If you cannot readily get this salue, you may take butter & hony molten together, & it will helpe them; or else take a pound of hogs grease, a peny worth of verdigrease 2. ounces of mustard, halfe a pound of oyle de-bay, a quarter of a pound of nerue-oyle, halfe a pound of hony, halfe a pound of English waxe, one ounce of arsnicke, 2. ounces of red lead, & halfe a pint of vinegar; boyle all these together, and make an oyntment of it: then hauing clipt and made the soare all bare, apply the medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a day vntill it be whole. Others vse to take 5. ounces of orpiment, 5. of tartar, one of verdigrease, halfe an ounce of *Sulphur*, as much of vitrioll made into powder, the iuice of foure *Citrions*, the whites of two egges, with three ounces of sallet oyle; let all these bee very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the soare, and it will not onely heale this disease, but any salt humour whatsoever. Mingle with soft grease, vinegar, hony, orpiment, and arsnicke: but let arsnicke bee the least, and it will cure this disease, so will also white waxe, turpentine and *Camphora* mixt together. Others vse to take an hundred blacke snailles in the moneth of *May*, slit them, and put them into a bagge with a pint of bay-salt; then hang them ouer the fire, with a vessell

set vnder to receiue what drops from them, and keep it, in a close glasse: then annoynt the soare euery day therewith, and it will heale this sorrhance. Others take hony and vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a he goat, of each a like also; boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it well: when it waxeth redde, adde of verdigrease, and vitriolle, of each like quantity made into powder, still stirring it till it bee red and thicke; then being warme annoynt the soare place therewith once a day after it hath bene washed with warme water: and this not onely helps the paines, but also any sorrhance whatsoeuer of like nature about the legges. Also greene copporas, & roach allome of each halfe a pound, and a handfull of bay-salt, boyled in a gallon of running water, will heale it; or else vnto it adde a pint of hony, and boyle it ouer againe, and it will bee the better: then when you haue annoynted the soare therewith, rubbe it after with the powder of glasse, mustard and vinegar mixt together, and afterward skinne it with creamie, and the inner rinde of Elder beaten to a salue, which must be applyed to the soare twice a day at the least.

CHAP 79.


Of the Mules, or Kybe heeles.

THese Mules, or kybed heeles, are certaine drye scabbes, or chappes breeding behinde vpon the heeles of a horse, and so a little inwardeuen to the fetlocke, in long chaps & chinewes: it proceedeth either from corruption of bloud, or from being bred in wet marriish grounds, or else from vncleane and negligent keeping, in such manncras the Paines are bred:

bred: this forrance will make the horses legge to swell much, especially in the winter, and about the spring time, and he will goe stiffly, and halt much. Now for the cure, you shall vnderstand, that whatsoeuer healeth the paines, the same will in like sort heale these kybed heeles; yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did vse for this forrance, if they tooke it at the beginning, but onely to annoynt it for two or three dayes with sope, and then after to wash it with strong vrine or beefe broth till it were whole: but if it were of any longer continuance, then first to cut away the haire, and lay the soare open and plaine; then take two ounces of vsflekt lime, one ounce of sope, and the white of an egge, or else an ounce of vsflekt lime, and as much salt, and 3 ounces of foot, and mingling them with strong vinegar, annoynt the soare therewith, and it will heale and kill them. Other Farriers vse to calcinate *Tartar*, and dissolue it in water: then congeale it like salt, and mingle it with sope like an oyntment, and then dresse the soare therewith, and this will in 48. howres, heale any mules, paines, or scratches whatsoeuer. If you take the iuice of the leaues and roots of elder, it is very good to dry vp any of these euill humors.

CHAP. 80.
Of Winde-gales.

THe wind-gall is a little blebbe or bladder full of corrupt ielly, or like the white of an egge, growing on each side of the maister sinew of the leg, hard about the pastorne. Now of them some will be bigge and some will be little, and there will bee sometimes

more then one or two of a cluster, and they are so painfull, especially in the Sommer season, when the weather is hot, & the waies hard, that the horse is not able to trauell, but halteth downe right: they proceed commonly from extreme labour in the Sommer time, vpon hard waies, whereby the humors being dissolued, do flow and resort into the hollow places about the nether ioynts, which are most beaten & feebled with trauell, and there are congealed & couered with a thin skin like a bladder: they are most apparant to be seene & felt, & the cure therof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a knife and open it the length of a beane, piercing no further into it then through the skinne of the bladder, and then thrust out the ielly, which, as I said before, will belike the white of an egge; then take the yelke of an egge, and as much oyle de-bay as a good nut, and mixing them together, make a plaister therof and lay it to the soare, & in 2. or 3. daies it wil heale it. Others of the old Farriers dresse it with *Eusorbium* and *Cantharides*, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the splent; but if that will not serue, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the wind-gall in this sort,  then to open the middle line with a launcet the length of a beane, and thrust out the ielly: then lay pitch and rosen molten together vpon it, and then a few floxe, and that will take it cleane away. Other Farriers vse to take vp the maister veines on the inside of his legges, and suffer him onely to bleede from below: then hauing put vp the veine, couer all his legge ouer with a plaister of wine-lees and wheat flowre mingled together, and roll it with a long roller: dresse him in this sort once a day till he be whole.

Others

Others vse to open the skin and put out the ielly : then take a spoonefull of oyle de bay, a spoonefull of turpentine, a penyworth of verdigrease, the white of an egge, and a quarter of an ounce of red lead ; boyle them together till it come to a salue ; then lay it to the wind-gall and it will cure it ; or else after you haue let out the ielly, take rosen, sheepes suet, & brimstone, of each a like, & melt them together, and lay that vpon the wind-gall, so it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the rootes of comin and beate them well with a little salt, and lay that to the wind-gall ; or else annoynt them with the iuyce of onions or lecke blades, and that will allay them : or else ground Iuy and wormewood with the rootes sod in wine and layd to the wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of white waxe, an ounce of rosen, two ounces of raw hony, three ounces of swines grease, two ounces of oyle of the yelkes of egges, siue ounces of oyle de bay ; mixe all these well together and straine them ; then rub them into the wind-gall, by holding a hot barre of Iron against the oyntment, and it will take the wind-gall away. Now for the making of the oyle of yelks of egges, it is thus : First seeth the egges hard, then stampe them, and then seeth them in an earthen pot with a soft fire, and so straine them. Now this medicine will not onely heale the wind-gall, but the ring-bone also, it is very good for the abating of the wind-gall, & for making the medicine to work the better, to let the horse stand in a cold running streame an howre morning and euening. The scum of the foure salts sod in mans vrine, and layd to the wind-gall, will take it away.

There bee others which take a pottle of vinegar, a pound of orpiment, a quarter of a pound of gillies, and as much of the heerbe molleyne stamp small; mingle these well together, and put them into a pot, then euery day therewith bathe the wind-gall, and in three weekes it will dry them cleane vpsit will also take away a curbe or a spauen, or a ring-bone, if you take them at the first breeding. Other Farriers take of Ciuill oyle and brimstone, of each like quantity, and seeth them in mans vrine, and stirre them well together; after put in the quantity of a wall-nut of sope, to keepe the haire from scalding off; then bathe the wind-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in: then annoynt it aboute with nerue-oyle, & oyle de-bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot barre of Iron, or a hot-fire pan, to sinke into the flesh, and in three dayes it will dry vp any wind-gall.

Now for mine owne part, the best medicine I haue found in my practise for this forrance, and the easiest, is with a fine lancet to open the wind-gall, making the hole no bigger then that the ielly may come forth: then hauing thrust it cleane forth, lap a wollen wet cloath vpon it, and with a taylors hot pressing Iron, rubbe vpon the cloath till you haue made the cloath sucke in all the moysture from the wind-gall, and that the wind-gall is dry: then take of pitch, of rosen, and of masticke, of each like quantity, and being very hot, daube it all ouer the wind-gall; then clappe good store of floxe of the colour of the horse vpon it, and so let the horse rest or runne at grasse, till the plaister fall off by it owne accord, and be sure the wind-gall will be gone.

Now

Now I am to giue you this for a rule, that by no meanes you vse to a wind-gall, either arshike, or resagall: for commonly then the wind-gall will come againe; neither must you burne much, nor make any great incision; for any of these will turne the soft substance of the wind-gall to hardnesse, and then the horse will be lame without cure.

CHAP. 81.

*Of a Straine in the Pastorne ioynt, or
Fetlocke.*

A Horse may be strained in the fetlocke or pastorne ioynt, either by some wrinch in the stable when the plaunchers are broken vnder him, or by treading awry vpon some stone, or vpon some cart-rout, as he trauelleth by the way. The signes whercof be these, the ioynt will be swolne and soare, and the horse will halt; and the cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of stale vrine, and seeth it till the foame arises; then straine it, and put thereto a handfull of tansey, and an handfull of mallowes, and a saucerfull of hony, and a quarter of a pound of sheepes suet: then set it on the fire, and seeth them all together till the hearbes be sodden soft; and then being very hot, lay this *pultus* to the ioynt, and couer it ouer with a blew cloath; and in 3. times dressing it will helpe the straine. Other Farriers take of *Dialthea* halfe a pound, and as much of nerue-oyle, mingle them together, and annoynt the soare place therewith, chafing it wel with both your hands that the oyntment may enter in, continuing so to do euery day once vntill the ointment be all spent, and let the horse rest; but if this will

will not preuaile, then they will vse *Cantharides*, as in case of the splent; but I do not hold that cure conuenient, because it will make a double griefe. Therefore I had rather you should take pompillion, nerue-oyle, and blacke sope, of each a like, and heate them hot on the fire, and then annoynt the soare place therewith, and it will make the horse sound.

CHAP. 82.

To remedy any manner of halting that commeth by straine, stroke, or any other accident.

NOW forasmuch as halting is such a generall forrance amongst horses, that not any man that is maister of a horse, but euen in his smallest trauell, is at one time or other vexed with the same, I will heere before I do proceed any further, set you downe certaine generall receipts selected and culd out of the priuate practise & experiments of the best Farriers in Christendome, of which I may giue the bolder testimony, because I haue made practise of their vertues.

If then your horse haue taken any halt, either by stiffenesse of sinewes, straine, wrinch, stroke, or any other accident, if the griefe bee in his legge, you shall take smallage, oxe eye, and sheepes suet, of each like quantity, chop them all together, and boyle it in mans vrine, and bathe all the legge therewith: then with hay-ropes wet in cold water, rolle vp his legge, and he will be able to trauell the next day: or if you seeth a pound of blacke sope in a quart of strong ale till it looke like tarre, and anoynt the legge therewith, and it will supple his sinewes, & bring

bring them to their true course. If you wash his limbs in the grounds of beere or ale made warme, and then rope them vp in hay-ropes, wet in the same, it will recouer a straine. If you take of the flowre of linseed, of turpentine, and of life hony, of each a like, and boyle them with white wine vntill they be thicke, like vnto an oyntment: then spread it on a cloath, and lay it to the griefe, and it will take away any atche or paine in the sinews: likewise a plaister of wine lees and wheate flowre, or a plaister of blacke sope and boares greafe will doe the like. If you mixe nerue-oyle, oyle de bay, and aqua-vitæ together, and warme it, and chafe it in, and vpon, and about any straine, it will take the anguish quite away. If the griefe be in the shoulder, or the hinder legge, then burne him vpon the very ioynt by taking vp the skinne with a paire of pinsons, and thrust the skinne through with a hot iron ouerthwart; and if this cure him not, then his paine is betwixt the thinne skinne and the bone, which must then be rowelled. If the griefe be in the shoulder, or in the hippe, or else where, then let him bloud, and sauing the bloud, mixe therewith the powder of frankinsence, and annoynt the horse with the same. If the griefe be only in the sinews, then take the plaister cald *Sologlutiū*, made of gum-dragant, new waxe, pitch, and turpentine mixt together; or else take the yelkes of two egges, an ounce of frankinsence, and a little branne, and beate them well together, and lay it to the paine. If the griefe do proceed from a hot cause, then let the horse bloud, & with that bloud mixe vinegar & oyle, & annoynt him, & chafe it well in. But if it proceed from a cold cause, then let him bleed a litle and with figs soaked a day in warme water, & as much

mustard seed, make a plaister and lay to the grieve. If it come either by any rush or stripe, let the horse bloud, and with that bloud mingle strong vinegar, egges, shels and all; three ounces of *Sanguis draconis*, foure of bolearmony, and five of wheate meale, and daube it all over the soare place. If the grieve be in the shoulder, and the skinne broken, take galles of *Soria* pund, and mingle them with hony, and lay it to the soare. If his paine come from the stiffenesse of his ioynts, take a pound of blacke sope, and boyle it in a quart of ale till it be thicke, and it will comfort the ioynts. If the ioynts be sweld, take rosen, pitch, turpentine, and *Sanguis draconis*, molten together, and lay it to the swelling something warme, and it will either take away the swelling, or else ripen it & make it runne. If you take of the oyle of Camomile, oyle of Dill, butter, and Agripa, of each a like quantity or else make a plaister of an ounce of turpentine, halfe an ounce of verdigrease, and the marrow of a Stagge; or bathe the horse with warme water, wherein Rosemary hath bene sod, and it will ease any paine whatsoever. If the horses paine be in his shoulder, first with a launcet pricke the skinne through betweene the spade bone and the marrow bone: then putting in a quill, blow the skinne from the flesh euen all about: then thrusting out the winde with your hand, put in a rowel; then take a pottle of stale vrine, seeth it with a pound of butter, & as much swines grease, a handfull of mallows, a handfull of tansey, a handfull of veruine, a handfull of red nettles, a handfull of southernwood, and a handfull of balme leaues; then beate them all well together, and so annoynt his shoulder therwith, and let him not go forth of the stable for seven daies.

If

If his grieve bee in any neather ioynt, then take a handfull of laurell leaues, and of prim-rose leaues, of ground Iuy, of crowfoot, of mallowes, of red fennel, and of fine hay, of each of them seuerally as much; seeth them well together, and then let them stand foureteene dayes; then bathe the ioynt once a day, & binde of the hearbes vnto it for foure dayes together: then after chafe into the ioynt fresh grease and oyle mixt together, and it will ease all his paine. Now to conclude, if any ioynt or member about a horse be by the fluxe of humors sweld and growne out of shape whereby the horse goeth stiffe, and halteth; then to dissolue those humors take wormewood, sage, rosemary, the barke of the Elme tree, and of a Pine, together with lin-seed, and boyling these together, make a bathe or *pultus* thereof, and lay it to the sicke member, and it will dissolue the humours, and so likewise will figs being stampd with salt, and applyed to the soare.

CHAP. 83.

Of Enterfearing.

ENTERfearing is either when a horse through a naturall straitnesse in his pace, or through euill and too broad shooing goeth so narrow behinde with his hinder feete, that he heweth the one against the other vpon the in-side of his legges, even with the pastorne ioynts; and by meanes of this hewing there groweth hard mattery scabbes, which are so soare, that they many times make the horse to halt much. The signes are the straitnesse of his going, and the apparantnesse of the scabbes. Now the cure consisteth as

Aaa 2

much

much in preuention as in salue: for the preuention, which is to keepe a horse from hewing one legge vpon another, it consisteth onely in the office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder shooes, whereby he may goe wider, and not touch; of which wee shall speake more at large when wee intreate of paring and shooing of each seuerall foote. For the salue which is to cure the hurt being once receiued, it is thus: You shall take of May butter (if you can get it) or else fresh grease, or fresh butter, with a quantity of rosen, and as much nerue-oyle: then fry them all together in a pan, and then let it stand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little cow dung: and then plaister-wise apply this vnto the soare, renewing it once a day, and it will not onely heale this soare, but also any pricke by a naile whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 84.

*Of the Shackell-gall, or gall in the Pastorne,
either by shackel or locke.*

IF a horse be galled in the pastorne, on the heele, or vpon the cronet, either with shackell or locke, as it many times happens in the Champion countries, where the Farmers vse much to teather their horses: then for such a soare you shall take hony and verdi-grease, and boyle them together till the one halfe be consumed, and that it looke red: then after it is a little cooled, you shall annoynt the soare place therewith twice a day, and then strew vpon it a little chopt floxe to keepe on the salue. This is excellent for any gall whatsoeuer, and chiefly for the Scratches.

CHAP. 85.

*Of hurts in the legges which commeth by casting
in the halter.*

THe hurts which a horse getteth by being cast in the halter, are many, and proceed from diuers accidents, as when the reines of the collar are so long, & will not run to and fro, that the horse getteth one, or both his forelegs ouer them, & then with struggling, woundeth & galleth them much; or else when a horse hauing desire to scratch his eare with his hinder foote rubbing it to and fro, in the end fasteneth his foote either in the collar or the reines; and then the more he striueth to loosen it, the more he galleth & woundeth it, euen somtimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opiniaon of the old Farriers, it is thus: Take of oyle oliue one ounce, of turpentine two or three ounces; melt them together ouer the fire, and then put thereunto a little waxe, and working them all well together lay it plaister-wise vnto the soare, renewing it once a day vntill it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which only annoynt the soare with the whites of egges & lallet oyle mixt together; and then when the soare cometh to a scab, annoint it with butter being molten vntill it looke browne. Now for mine owne part, the cure which I principally vse for this sorranee, is to take of waxe, of turpentine, and of hogges grease, of each an ounce, and hauing mingled & molten them well together, put them into a pot: then take an ounce of verdigrease beaten to powder, and an ounce of hogges grease, and mixe them very wel together, & put that into another pot: then when

you dresse the soare, take of the first salve two parts, and of the later a third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt all the soare place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.

CHAP. 86.

Of the Scratches, Crepanches or Rats-tailes.

THE Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tailes, being all but one sorrhance, are long, scabby, dry chaps, or rifts, growing right vp and downe, and ouerthwart on the hinder legges, iust from the fetlocke vnto the place of the Curbe; and as the Paines are vnder the fetlocke, so the Scratches are aboue the fetlocke: and do proceede either from dry melancholy humors ingendred by outward filth, or else by the fuming of the horses dung lying either neare or vnder him. The signes are both the apparant sight, and the easie feeling of the same, besides the staring, deuiding, and curling of the haire, as also that the sorrhance will stinke much. The cure is according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of these former medicines whatsoeuer, which are already recited, either for the Paines, or Mules; yet for your more particular vnderstanding, you shall know, these medicines are most proper for this sorrhance. First you shall shau away the haire, and make the soare raw: then take of turpentine halfe a pound, of hony halfe a pint, of hogges grease a quarterne, and three yolkes of egges, & of bolearmony a quarterne beaten into powder, of beane flower halfe a pint; mixe all these well together and make a salve thereof, and then with your finger annoynt all the soare places therewith, and let the horse

horse come in no wet during the cure. Other Farriers vse (and sure it is the better practise) first, after they haue shaued away the haire, and layd the soare raw, to wash it well with old vrine very warme; then take blacke sope, mustard and vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mixe therewith some of an Oxe gall; then stirre them well together, and chafe and rubbe the place therewith, and binde thereto a cloath, so vse it once a day till it be whole: then after annoynt it with neats foote oyle to supple the sinewes againe. Others vse to take the finest hay, and burne it to ashes vpon a faire boord, then mixe it with neats foot oyle, and make a salue thereof; then all to rubbe the soares vntill they bleed almost, and then annoynt them with the said salue, and rope his legges, and keepe them from wet. Others vse after they haue washt the soare with old stale, then to take a quantity of strong mustard, vinegar, gray sope, barrowes grease, and some quicke siluer; mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the soare. Other Farriers take a quantity of vn-sleckt lime, halfe so much blacke sope, and so much of strong vinegar as shall suffice to make it like an oyntment: then the haire being cut away, and the soare washt with vrine, lay to this oyntment, renewing it not the space of two dayes, and it will kill the sorrance: then wash the place once or twice with warme wine; then after heale it with turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and in no wise let the horse come in any wet. Others vse after they haue washt the soare place with vrine, and clipt away the haire, and made the wound raw, to take butter and tarre, of each a like, and boyling them together, annoynt all the soare place therewith euery day till it be whole.

Others

Others take of hony and verdigrease of each a like, and boile them together vntill halfe bee consumed, and then annoynt the soare therewith once a day vntill it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vse either to shaue off the haire, or scald it off with orpiment, and vnsleckt lime boild in strong lee; then wash it with warme vinegar, or white wine, then when it is dry annoint it with this oyntment. Take of orpiment one ounce, of verdigrease three ounces, of soote five ounces, a litle vnsleckt lime, and of hony one pound; mingle them all well together vpon a soft fire, and being made like an oyntment vse it as aforesaid once a day to the soare; or else take hony, sope, verdigrease, vnsleckt lime, and vinegar, and boyle them with allome, galles, and maile, till it come to a plaister, and then apply it vnto the soare; or else boyle sallet oyle with a litle suet and sope, then skinne it and take it from the fire; then adde an ounce of quicke siluer resolued, two ounces of verdigrease, three ounces of vnsleckt lime, and one ounce of white waxe: when all these are well mixt together, and made into a salve, then apply it once a day vnto the soare, vntill it bee whole. Other Farriers vse, after they haue shaued the place, to boyle vinegar and the skinne of larde or bacon together, and to apply that to the soare three daies together: then take larde molten, litargie, masticke, verdigrease, and soote mingled together, with goates milke, and lay it to, renewing it once a day vntill the soare bee healed. The scraping of a pannes bottome mixt with the inner pilles of Elder, are also good for the Scratchess or new mans dung applied for five dayes, and after annoynt the soare with oyle and sope mixt together. Others take of vnsleckt lime

lime, the dowder of glasse, and of verdigrease, of each one an ounce; of orpiment an ounce, of oyle and of fresh greate, of each foure ounces; mixe all these well together, and apply it to the soare vntill it be whole; If you take blacke snailles and burre rootes, and beate them together, it will also helpe this sorrhance. Other Farriers take an ounce of sope, two ounces of vn-sleckt lime, and as much lye, or strong vinegar as will temper it, and so dresse the soare vntill it bee whole. Others take fenugreeke and beate it, three oranges cut in peeces, halfe a pound of sheepes suet, newe sheepes dung; boyle all these in the grounds of good ale, and then bathe the horse therewith as hot as may bee: then rope him vp with hay ropes, and so let him stand three daies, then bathe him him so againe. Others take hogges grease, sope, brimstone, soote, and hony; boyle them, and lay them too cold, you may also adde verdigrease; but before you lay on this oyntment, scrape the scabbes off and make them bleed, and rubbe them with sope, mustard, and vinegar, mixt together.

CHAP. 87.

Of the ringbone.

THe ringbone is a sorrhance, which appeareth aboue vpon the cronet of the hoofe, being a certaine hard gristell going sometimes round about the same: it proceedeth as some Farriers hold opinion either either from some blow of an other horse, or by striking the horses foot against some stubbe, or stone or such like accident: but surely I hold that it also proceedeth from some imperfection innature; for as much as I haue seene many foales foaled with ringbones on

their feete. These ring-bones do breed a viscons and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their owne nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaueth to some bone, and so in processe of time becometh a bone. The signes of the sorrhance are the apparant sight of the sorrhance, being higher then any part of the cronet, the staring of the haire, & the halting of the horse; & the cure, according to ancient Farriers, is first to scarifie the skin about the ring-bone with a lancet; then take a great onion, & picke out the chore: then put into it verdigrease & vnleckt lime: then couer the hole, and rost the onion soft, then bruiſe it in a mortar, & so very hot lay it to the ring-bone: do thus 4 daies together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers vse first to wash the sorrhance with warme water, and shaue away the haire: then scarifie it lightly with the point of a razor so as the blood may issue forth: then dresse it with *Cantharides* & *Euforbium* in such sort as hath bene taught for the splent, vsing him, & curing him after the same manner; but when the haire beginneth to grow againe, then draw the soare place with a hot drawing iron in strait lines, from the pastorn down to the coffin of the hoofe, in this maner
 ||| and let the edge of the drawing iron be as thick
 ||| as the backe of a meate knife, and burne him no
 ||| deeper then that the skin may looke yellow: that
 done, couer the burning with pitch and rosen molten together, and clap thereon floxe of the horses owne colour, and about three daies after lay againe some of the last mentioned plaister, and also new floxe vpon the old, and there let them remaine till they fall away of themselves.

Others vse to shaue off the haire, and to scarifie the
 soare

soare with a launcet till it bleed : then strew vpon it the powder of *Tartar*, and salt, of each a like mixt together, and binde it strait: then after annoynt it with fresh grease; or else soften the ring-bone with the skinne of old bacon, the fat being scraped off, that you may see through the skinne, and layd to after it is shauen and made bleede : after launce it and let out the ring-bone. Others vse to launce the skinne with a razor; then opening the skinne with a corner, pricke the ring-bone. Lastly, strew vpon it the powder of vitriolle, and binde it on so as it may not stirre for nine dayes; then thrust out the matter which is dissolued. Lastly, wash it with salt, with vrine, and vinegar mixt together. Other Farriers doe vse after they haue shaued it, to lay vnto it a plaister made of bran, & hony, with the yong leaues of worme-wood, pellitory, and *Branke-vrsine* mingled with swines grease, and beaten together, and boyled, and vsed as hot as the horse can suffer it. This medicine will not onely cure the ring-bone, but any other hard swelling whatsoeuer. Also a plaister of the leaues of smillage being beaten to peeces, is not onely good for this sorrhance, but for any windgall also. To wash a ring-bone continually with strong vinegar will abate it: or else to shaue away the haire, and take halfe a lemmon, and sprinkle arsenicke thereupon, and lay it to the ring-bone, and it will eate it away off; if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard egge burning hote vnto the ring-bone, it will take it away. Lastly, if you take *Emforbium*, and mingle it with the oyle of Giniper, salt, and pepper, and so apply it to the ring-bone, it will in a very short space consume the ring-bone quite

away; alwaies provided that you keep the horse from any wet during his cure.

CHAP. 88.

Of hurts on the Cronet by crossing one foote on another.

IF your horse by crossing one foote vpon another, chance to wound or hurt the cronet of his hoofe, you shall then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, first wash it well with white wine, or with warme vrine, and then lay vnto it the white of an egge mixt with chimney soote and salt; and that, if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three dayes dry vp the soare. Other Farriers vse first to pare or cut away the hoofe that it touch not the hurt, and keepe it cleane from filth by washing it with vrine: then seeth two egges hard, and take off the shels, then presse them with your hand long, and first roast one hot, and tye it to hard; when that is cold vse the other: after make a plaister of soot, salt, and oyle boyled together, and lay it to the soare, renewing it once a day vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 89.

Of the Crowne Scabbe.

THe crowne scabbe is a filthy and stinking scabbe, breeding round about the cronets of the hoofe, and is a cankerous & painfull sovrance: it cometh oftentimes by means that the horse hath bin bred in a feny, marriish ground, where the cold, striking corrupt humors vp to his feete, ingendreth this sovrance, which


is euer more painful in the winter then in the ſomer. The ſignes are, the haire of the cronet will be very thin, and ſtaring like briſtles, and the cronets will bee alwayes mattering, and run on water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of many Farriers, is to take the ſkinne of bacon, and lay thereon ſoote and ſalt beaten together, mingled with greaſe or ſuet, waxe, and pitch molten together: and if the fleſh chance to grow proud, eate it away either with verdigreaſe, beaten to powder, or with the ſcrapings of a Harts horne, or an oxe horn made into fine powder. Other Farriers uſe to take of ſoape, and of hogges greaſe, of each halfe a pound, of bole armony a little, of turpentine a quarterne; and mixe them well together, and make a plaifter and binde it faſt on, renewing it euery day once vntill it leaue running; and then waſh it with ſtrong vinegar being luke warme, euery day once vntill the ſoare be cleane dried vp, and let the horſe come in no wet vntill the ſorrance be whole. Others uſe onely to bathe it continually with old ſtale ſod with ſalt, and that will dry vp the humour and heale it.

CHAP. 90.

Of the Quitter-bone.

THe Quitter-bone is a hard round ſwelling vpon the cronet of the hooſe, betwixt the heele & the quarter, and groweth moſt commonly on the in-ſide of the ſoote: it breedeth commonly by meanes of grauel gathered vnderneath the ſhooe, which fretteth inward, & forceth an vlcer to breake vpward: or elle it cometh by the cloying or pricking of ſome naile driue

by an ignorant smith, the anguish whereof looseth the gristle, and so breedeth euill humors, whereof the quitterbone springeth: the signes are, the horse will halte much, and the swelling is apparant to the eye, which in foure or fūe daies commeth to a head, and will breake out with matter at a little deepe hole like a fistula; and surely then this quitterbone, there is no outward sōrance whatsoeuer more dangerous to a horse. The cure thereof according to the opinion of some of the ancient Farriers is, first to cut the hooft to the quicke: then seeth a Snake or an Adder till the flesh part from the bone, and be molten as an vnguent; then annoint the soare place therewith very warme euen to the bottome, and during the cure keepe the foote cleane from any filth; for this both drieth, and killeth the quitterbone. Other of the old Farriers, first burne about the quitterbone with a hot yron, in maner of a halfe circle, & then with the same yron draw another right through the midst thereof in this sort


 : then take of arsnicke the quantity of a beane beaten into fine powder, and put it into the hole, thrusting it downe to the bottome with a quill, and stop the mouth of the hole with a little tow, and bind it so fast with a cloth and a roller, that the horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day; and the next day if you see that the soare looketh blacke within, then it is a signe that the arsnicke did worke well; then to allay the burning of it, taint the hole with flaxe dipt in hogges grease, and turpentine molten together, and couer the taint with a plaister of pitch, rosen, waxe, and turpentine molten together, but there must be as much terpine as of all the rest: and thus you

you must continue to doe vntill you haue gotten out the chore, which the arsnicke did eate; then shall you see whether the loose gristell in the bottome be vncovered or not: and if it bee not vncovered, then feele with your finger or with a quill, whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raise the gristell with a little crooked instrument, and pull it cleane out with a paire of smal nippers or mullets made for the purpose: that done, thrust it againe with a full taint, dipt in the foresaid oyntment, to assuage the anguish of the last dressing, and stop it hard to the intent that the hole may not shrinke together or close vp: and the next day take out that taint, and taint it anew with hony and verdigrease boild together, till they looke redde, renewing it every day once vntill it be whole, keeping alwaies the mouth of the soare as open as you may, to the intent that it heale not vp too fast, & let not the horse come in any wet, nor trauell vntill he be perfectly whole. Other Farriers vse to cut the hoofe open to the quicke; then take *Gilbanum*, *Sagapenum*, pitch of Greece, *Olibanum*, *Masticke*, oyle, & white waxe, of each an ounce, with halfe a pound of sheepe suet: melt them vpon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dresse the soare place vntill it be whole. Others vse after the soare is opened, to put in the salt of *Tartar*, and when that hath eaten away the quitterbone, to heale it vp with hony and verdigrease boild as aforesaid. Others take of goates dung two ounces, of sheepes tallow three ounces, and as much strong vinegar as will suffice to boyle them well in, and then therewith to dresse the quitterbone, vntill it bee cleane whole.

CHAP. 91.

Of grauelling a Horse.

Grauelling is a certaine fretting of grauell, sand, or ditte vnder the foote betwixt the sole and the shooe, sometimes on the inside, and sometime on the outside of the foote, and sometimes of both sides of the heele. It commeth, as I laid, by meanes of little grauell stones getting betwixt the hoofe, or calking or sponge of the shooe, which by continuall labour and trauell of the horse, doth eate through the hoofe into the quicke of the foote; and the rather if the horses heeles bee lost and weake, or that the shooe do lye flat to his foote, so as the grauell being gotten in it cannot get out againe. The signes whereof are these, the horse will halt much, and couet to goe most on his toe, to fauour his heele, and the softer the way is, the more is the horses ease. Now for the cure according to the old Farriers, it is thus; first pare the hoofe till you may see the soare, then take an ounce of virgin waxe, and a quarter of an ounce of rossen, and a quarter of deares suet, & halfe an ounce of boares grease, and beate them all well together in a mortar, and then melt them together on the fire; that done, dip good stoare of flaxe therein, and so stop vp the soare close and hard, and then you may trauell the horse whither you please; and do thus once a day vntill the foote bee found. Other of the old Farriers vse, first to pare the hoofe, and to get out the grauell with a drawing knife, leauing none behind; then stop the soare place with turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and laid

laid one with a little tow or flaxe, and then clap on the shooe, to keepe in the stopping, renewing it euery day once vntill it be whole, and suffer the horse to come in no wet vntill it be healed. Now you must vnderstand that if a grauelling be not well stopt to keepe down the flesh, it wil rise higher then the houe, and so put the Farrier to much more paine, both in bolstring it, and abating that ill growne substance. Others vse onely to pare the foot, and pricke out all the grauell cleane, then wash it well with beere and salt, then melt into it tallow, rosen, and pitch: then couering it hard and close with flaxe, set on the shooe againe, and doe thus once a day. Others vse after they haue cleansed the soare, to lay hurds into it, being dipt in the white of eggs, then after heale it with salt beaten small & mixt with strong vinegar, or else with the powder of galles, salt, and *Tartar*, mixt together which also is good for any cloying or pricking.

CHAP. 96.

Of Surbating.

Surbating is a continual beating of the hooft against the ground, & it commeth sometimes by meanes of euill shooing lying too flat to his foot, or by going long barefoot, and sometimes by the hardnesse of the ground, and the high lifting of the horses feete, either in his trot, or in his amble, and the horses which are most subiect to this sorrance, are those which haue either great round feete, or such as are flatte footed, the coffins whereof are weake and tender, and also those which haue weake heeles. The signes of the griete are, the horse will halt much, and goe creeping and

stiffe, as if he were halfe foundred; and the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to roast a couple of egges exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heate, to burst them in the horses feete, and then powre hot boyling sallet oyle also amongst them, and so stoppe the shooe vp close with a peece of leather, and two crosse splents of wood, and doe thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him. Others of the ancient Farriers, take off the horses shooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the shooes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tacke them on againe with foure or five nailes: that done, stoppe his feete with hogges grease, and branne boyled together so hot as may bee, and also couer all the coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a cloath, and a list fastened about the ioynt, renewing it every day once vntill it bee sound; and giue the horse during the cure, warme water to drinke, and let him stand drye, and not haue much trauell. Now if your horse surbate in your trauell, if every night you stoppe his feete well with coves dung, or with coves dung and vinegar, it will make him endure out his iourney.

CHAP. 92.

Of the Pricke in the sole of the Foote, either by treading on a naile, or any other sharpe thing.

IF a horse in his trauell chance to treade either on stubbe, naile, thorne, or any other sharpe thing what-

whatsoever, by meanes whereof hee is prickt in the soale of the foote, the rider shall perceiue the same by the suddenn faltring of the horse, who will instantly stand still and lift vp his foote, as desiring helpe: and if it chance at any other time, then the halting of the horse, and the diligent searching of a carefull Farrier must finde out the mischiefe. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to pull off the shooe, and pare the foote, and with a drawing knife, vncover the hole, making the mouth so broad as a twopence: then tacked on the shooe againe: that done, stoppe it by powring into the hole turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and lay some flaxe or tow vpon it; and then stoppe all the horses foote with cowes dung, and so couering it with a peece of leather, splent it with two crosse stickes so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it euery day once untill it be whole, and let the horse tread in no wet.

Now you must bee very carefull in the curing of this sorrhance: For if it bee not healed from the bottome, besides that it is dangerous to the life of the horse, it is also a great hazard that the soare will breake out at the toppe of the hoofe, and so loosen the hoofe round about, and perhaps make it fall cleane away; but if you see that it beginne to breake out aboue, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the soale away, that the flesh may haue the more liberty: then take of bolcarmony halfe a quarterne, and of beane flowre as much, and two egges; beate them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaister thereof vpon tow, and lay it round about

the cronet, binde it fast on, and so let it remaine the space of two daies, and then renew it againe, not failing so to doe euery two dayes vntill you see it waxe hard and firme aboute: for this plaister being restricktue, will force the humours to resort alwayes downeward; which humours must bee drawne out with turpentine and hogges grease, as before, vntill it leaue matterings; and then drye it vp with burnt allome beaten into powder, and strewed vpon the soare, with a little flaxe layd againe vpon that, continuing so to doe euery day once vntill it bee hardened; and let not the horse come in any wet vntill it bee whole. Other Farriers vse to taint the soare with tallow, tarre, and turpentine being molten together, and anoynt all the coffin and cronet of the hooft with bole-armony and vinegar beaten together till the soare bee whole, especially if the thing which did pricke the horse was venemous or rusty.

CHAP. 93.

To draw out either Stub, Thorne, or Iron, either out of the foote, or any other part of the body.

IF either the Stubbe, the Thorne, the Iron, or any thing whatsoever, wherewith your horse is wounded, bee gotten so deepe into the flesh that you cannot get hold vpon it to pull it out, then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you finde that albeit it bee too deepe, yet it is not much too deepe): you shall take a good quantity of blacke sope, and lay it to the soare for a whole night, and it will make it to appear

peare, so as you may pull it out with a paire of nippers : but if it lye very deepe, then you must open the place with a lancer, and thrusting in your mullets or nippers, pull it out by strength, and afterwards heale vp the wound, as was before taught in the last chapter.

Other Farriers say, that the rootes of reedes being stampd and mixt with hony, it will draw out any stubbe or naile : so will also blake snailles being stampd and wrought with fresh butter. Now if the place bee much swolne, then it is good to mollifie it with a plaister made of worme-wood, pariatory, beares foote, hogges grease, and hony, well boyled and mixt together, which will assuage any new swelling that commeth by stripe or otherwise.

Now when you haue gotten out that which you sought for, then you shall first powre into the wound scalding oyle Oliues when that is cold, powre into it as hote turpentine ; when that is cold, strew on the powder of Sulphure, and then bolster his foote or the soare with hurds, and keepe it from all wet and filthinesse.

CHAP. 94.
Of the Figge.

IF a Horse hauing receiued any hurt, as is before said, either by stubbe, great naile, thorne, bone, splent, or stone, either in the soale, or any other part of the foote, and bee not well dressed, and perfectly cured, there will grow in that place a certaine superfluous peece of flesh, like vnto a

figge, full of little white graines as you see are in figs. The cure whereof according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first with a hot yron, to cut the figge cleane away, and keepe the flesh downe with turpentine, hogges greafe, and a little waxe molten together, and laid on with a little tow, stopping the hole hard that the flesh rise not, renewing it once a day vntill the soare bee whole. Now other of our latter Farriers vse after they haue as before said, cut away the figge, then to take the crops of young nettles, & chopping them very small, lay them vpon a cloth, iust as bigge as the figge: then take the powder of verdigrease and strew it thinne vpon the chopt nettles, and so bind it to the soare, renewing it once a day vntill the hooft haue couered the soare, and this is a most certaine cure.

CHAP. 95.

Of a Retrait.

A Retrait is when a horse by the ill gouernment of the smith, is prickt in the foote with some ill driuen naile, yet in such sort that it is immediatly espied, and the naile drawne backe againe; and although it proceedeth oftest from the negligence of the smith, yet it may also come by reason of the weakenesse of the naile, and the hollowesse of the shanke: for when the naile is a little too weake, the point many times bendeth awry into the quicke, when it should go right forth; and when it is hollow it shiuereth in the driuing into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quicke in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth still behind: and this kind of pricking

pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rancle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth and remaineth stil in the foot. The signes hereof are, 1. the apparant shrinking & struggling of the horse assoone as the quick is touched, and next his much halting: lastly you shall search his foote with a hammer, by knocking vpon the clinch of euery naile: for when you knocke vpon that naile where the grieve is, the horse will shrinke vp his foote; and if that will not serue, then grope the hoose with a paire of pinsons round about vntill you haue found the place grieued. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first to pull off the shooe, and then open the place grieued, either with a butteris or with a drawing knife, so that you may perceiue either by feeling or seeing, whether there be any peece of naile or not; if there be, then pull it cleane out; after take of nettles halfe a handfull, and bruise them in a mortar, and put thereto a spoonefull of redde vinegar, and a spoonefull of blacke sope, and two ounces of brocks grease, or the fat of salt bacon, and bray all these wel together, and stop well the hole of the soare with this, and then tacke on the shooe againe, & you may safely aduenture to trauel him. Other Farriers vse after they haue opened the soare to stop vp the hole with turpentine, waxe, and sheepes suet molten together, and so poured hot into the hole, and then lay a little tow vpon it, & clap on the shooe againe, renewing it thus euery day once vntill it be whole; during which time the horse must not come in any wet, and it must be stopped in this sort, though it be but prickt without any peece of naile remaining: & if for lacke of looking to in time, this retrain causeth the horse to breake

breake out, then you shall cure it either with a restrictive plaister of bolearmony, beane flowre, and egges, mentioned in the 97. chapter: or else with chopt nettles and verdigrease, spoken of in the last chapter.

Now there be other Farriers, which not onely for this retraite, but for any pricke in the horses foot, vse after they haue layd open the wound, to take of turpentine one ounce, of tarre one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of beefe suet one ounce, and one head of garlicke; boyle them all together, and lay them to it so hot as may be suffered; and if it chance to breake out about the hoose, then apply also the same medicine vnto it, and it will cure it.

CHAP. 96.

Of Cloying.

A Horse is said to bee cloyed with a naile, or prickt with a naile, when the whole naile is stricken into the quick of the foote, and so remaineth stil in the same, & is clinshed as other nailes be, by means wherof the horse halteth extremly. Now this griefe is knowne by searching the griued place with a hammer or pinsons as is before laid. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers it is thus: if the horse halt immediatly, then pul off his shooe and open the hole vntill it beginne to bleed, and then stop vp the hole with turpentine, waxe, and sheepe suet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day vntill it be whole; and let the horse tread in no wet, and let his shooe bee tackt on againe as soone as he is drest. Others vse onely to poure into the

the hole hot scalding butter, and that will heale it or else to burne the hole with another naile, and that will cure it. Other Farriers vse after they haue opened well the soare to take halfe a pound of frankincense, a pound of rosen, a pound of pitch of Greece, halfe a pound of blacke pitch, a pound of new waxe, a pound of goats grease, halfe a pound of varnish, halfe a pound of turpentine, two ounces of oyle oliue; and melt them altogether, and lay this vnto the hooft plaisterwise, and it will not onely heale any pricke whatsoeuer, but also any crackes, chincks, or clifts in the hooft howsoeuer they breeds; prouided that you let the horse tread in no wet during the cure; but if the soare chaunce to breake out on the toppe of the hooft, then you shal take two or three yelks of egges, whites and all beaten together, and adde thereunto an ounce of bolearmony, and as much beane or wheate meale as will thicken the same: then make a plaister thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will goe round on the toppe of the horses hooft, bind it fast on with a roller, and renew it once a day vntill it be whole.

Other Farriers vse after they haue searched and laid open the wound, to put into it hurdes dipt in the white of an egge, then stoppe the whole with salte beaten very small, mingled with veruain, and strong vinegar, and couer it with flaxe dipt in strong vinegar or else holding vp the horses foote, poure into the wound hote scalding oyle oliue; and when that is cold, poure in hote turpentine, and that being cold strew vpon it the powder of sulphure; then lay on a bolster of flaxe, then shooe him, and keepe him from treading in any wet. Others vse to take tallow,

the powder of Sulphure, mallowes, and very strong vinegar; boyle them together vntill they be thicke like an oyntment: then lay the same to the soare, as hote as the horse can endure it, renewing it once in twelue howres till it be whole. Others vse to take of hony and vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a he goate; boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it: when it waxeth redde, adde verdigrease and vitriolle, of each a like, made into powder, still stirring it till it bee thicke and redde; then stoppe the soare euery day therewith vntill it be whole, after you haue washed it well with salt and vinegar. Others take pepper, garlicke, and cabbadge leaues beaten with swines grease, and lay that to the soare: or else take tallow, and horse dung, and mixing them well together, stoppe the soare therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers vse to take off the shooe, then hauing opened the soare, to wash it with wine: then lay vpon it the inner rinde of Elder, and through that melte in grease with a hot Iron: then tacke on the shooe againe, and doe thus diuers dayes together, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP. 97.

*Generall Observations for the Feete and Houes
of a Horse.*

FOrasmuch as the feete and houes of a Horse are the onely instruments of labour, and that a small grieve in that part depriues a man of the benefite and vse of the rest; I thinke it not amisse
before

before I speake of the particular diseases of the hioes, to shew you some generall notes and obseruations which you shall obserue for the benefite of the secte. Know then that first it is meete that you let your shooes before be short, with strong spunges, but no cawkins, and your nailes to haue speciall good heads.

Let your shooes behinde haue a cawkin on the out-side; but if he enterfeare, let the cawkin bee on the in-side to make him cast outward, and let the inside of that side inward haue a welt an inch deepe, or be twice as thicke as the out-side: but if all this helpe not his enterfearing, then bring him to an amble; but if hee will not amble, burne him with a hote Iron betwixt the legges, that the soarenesse thereof may make him goe wide behinde, which is an ordinary practise amongst the French-men.

Let your shooes bee made of Iron that will not breake, of which our English is best, the Spanish next, and the Danske worst. Let them also be light, yet so as they may bee able to beare the burthen of the horse, being broader at the toes, then at the cawkins or spunges.

Let your cawkins be short, and blunt at the points, and your spunges long and thicke.

Let your shooe be full as strait as the horne of the hooft so farre as the nayles goe, and from the two heele-nayles backward, let the shooe be broader then the hooft, that the shooe may be without the horne.

Giue vnto euery shooe nine nailes, on each side foure, and one in the midst; and let the shankes of

the mailes bee very flat and thin, that if the hoofe be naught, they may yet keepe the shooe firme with little hold; and the nearer that your nailes are driuen backward towards the heele (so it bee without danger) the faster the shooe will sit, and the harder to be puld away.

Let your cawkins sit a strawes breadth behinde the corner of the coffin, and let your naile heads enter into the shooe, especially on the outside, and by all meanes hollow your shooe so little as may be.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heele of a horse; yet open his heeles as sufficiently as may be, because euer the heele must be thicke, and the toe thin.

In faire waies pare the soale thin, but in frost or stony wayes, pare as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoofe is higher on the out-side then on the in-side, it will make a horse enterfeare; and when it is higher on the in-side, it will make a horse straddle, so that a faire smooth table is of all most conuenient. After trauell euer stoppe the in-side of the hoofe with coves dung, and rubbe the out-side and the cronet with the sward of fat bacon: for that will keepe a tough, smooth, and a sound hoofe.

CHAP. 98.

Of loosening of the Hoofe.

A Hoofe is sayd to bee loosened when there is a dissolution or parting of the horne or coffin of the hoofe from the flesh, at the setting on of the cronet.

cronet. Now if this dissolution or parting bee round about the cronet, then it proceedeth by meanes of some foundring; but if it bee but in part, then it proceedeth from the anguish caused either by the pricking of some canell naile, or other naile piercing the soale, or quarters of the foote; or by some quitterbone, retraite, grauelling, or cloying, or such like accident. The signes of the disease be these: When it is loosened by foundring, then it will breake first, and the dissolution will appeare on the fore-part of the cronet right against the toe, because the humour doth couet alwayes to descend towards the toe; but if it proceede from pricking, grauelling, or such like, then the hoofe will loosen round about, equally euen at the first; but when it proceedes from some quitterbone, or hurt vpon the cronet, then the hoofe will breake right about the place that is offended, and most commonly will go no further. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, of what cause soeuer the loosening proceed, first to be sure to open the hoofe in the soale of the foot, so as the humor may haue free passage downeward; and then to binde about the toppe of it, the restrictive plaister spoken of in the 97. chapter, and in the 100. chapter, and in such sort, as it is there written, and then heale it vp with turpentine and hogges grease molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three spoonefull of tarre, and a quarter of a pound of rosen, and halfe a handfull of tansie, and halfe an handfull of rew, and halfe an handfull of red mints, and halfe an handfull of southernwood, and bray all these together in a mortar: then adde halfe a pound of butter, and a penyworth

of virgine waxe, then melt them all together ouer the fire vntill it come to a thicke plaister or salue, then spread some of it vpon a cloth, and lay it to the soare, renewing it once a day for seauen daies, and it will heale it. Others vse to take the braines of a swine or a pig, and to stop his hoofe very wel therewith, three daies together, renewing it twice or thrice a day; and it will grow fast, and endure as well, or rather better then euer it did. Other Farriers vse to cut out the sole below, letting it bleed well; after stop it with hurds dipt in the whites of eggs, tye this to for twenty foure howers, then wash it with strong vinegar warmed, after fill it with tartar, and salt of each a like quantity, let that remaine in 2 daies; then annoint it with the oyntment made of *Olibanum*, masticke, pitch of Greece, of each a like, and a little *Sanguis draconis*, and of new waxe, and sheepes suet as much as of the first, and melte, and boyle them all very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the soare be whole. But if you perceiue that any new hoofe come, then cut away the old, lest the hardnesse of the one hinder the tendernesse of the other; and then annoynt the new hoofe with suet, oyle, & waxe, of each a like boyled together, to make it grow; or else with pitch of Greece, mastick, *Olibanum*, *Sanguis draconis*, & *Galbanum*, of each alike, being molten with suet: for this will make the new hoofe to grow also, so will also new waxe, hony, oyle, swines grease, and sheepes suet, being boyled together; and when it is cold adde masticke, *Sanguis draconis*, and Frankensence, and incorporate them all together; for nothing sooner then this will make either new or old hoofe grow. Others vse to take shell snailles and stampe them, and lay them
twice

twice a day to the soare, and they will either fasten the old hoofe, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there bee other Farriers which first fill the soare with turpentine, and after it hath laine twenty foure howers, then wash the soare with vrine or copporas water; then fill it either with verdigrease, or with sheepes tallow, pitch, and rosen boyld together, in which hauiug dipt hurdes lay it to the soare very hot twice a day vntill it be whole.

CHAP. 99.

Of casting the hoofe.

THe casting of the hoofe is, when the whole confine thereof falleth cleane away from the foote; which commeth of all the former causes rehearsed in the last chapter, & is so apparant to the eye that it nedeth none other signes. Now for the cure it is thus, take of turpentine one pound, of tarre halfe a pint, of vnwrought waxe halfe a pound, of sheepes suet halfe a pound, & of sallet oyle halfe a pint; boyle all these things together, and stirre them continually vntill they bee thoroughly mixt together; then make a boote of leather with a strong sole fit for the horses foote, to be laced fast about the pastorne; then dresse his foote with the salue aforesaid, laid vpon flaxe or tow, and bolster or stop his foote with soft flaxe, so as the boote may grieue him no manner of waies, renewing it euery day once vntill the new hoofe come: then as the hoofe beginneth to harden, if it grow either thicke, crompled, or out of order; with a fine rape-file keepe it smooth and plaine till the hoofe bee perfect, and then put him to grasse, that there it
may

may take a kindly hardening and toughnesse.

CHAP. 100.

Of the Hoofe-bound.

THe hoofe-bound is nothing else but a shrinking in of the whole hoofe in the vpper parte thereof, making the skinne to stare aboue the hoofe, and to grow ouer the same. It proceedeth from keeping the horses hoofes too dry in the stable, or from strait shooring, or from some vnnaturall heate after foundring; and the signes of the disease are, that the horse will halt much, and his hoofes will be hot; and if you knocke vpon them with an hammer, they will sound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feete bee not hoofe-bound, then the soare foote will euer be the lesser: and you shall also vnderstand that this disease of some Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus, take a pound of the sward of bacon, and a quarterne of a pound of white sope, and a handfull of balme, and a handfull of bay leaues, and foure or fve branches of rew, and stampe them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the coronet of the hoofe veryhoat, suffering it so to abide the space of fve daies, and then renew it, but in no case let him tread in any wet, and this will helpe him. Other of the ancient Farriers vse, first to pull off his shooes, and to shooe him with halfe moone shooes called *Lunets* or *Lunet*, the shape whereof you shall see in an other place; then raze both the quarters of the hoofe with a drawing knife, from the coronet vnto the sole of the foote, so deepe that you may see the dew come forth: and if you make two razes

on

on each side, it shall bee so much the better, and in-
large the hooft the more; that done, annoint all the
hooft about next vnto the cronet round about with
the oyntment described before in the last chapter of
casting the hooft, continuing so to do euery day once
vntill hee beginne to amend; and let him bee ridden
vpon some soft wet ground an howre or two euery
day once for the space of a moneth; and if hee
goe not well at the moneths end, then take off the
halfe shooes, and pare all the soles, trushes and all
so thinne, that you may see the dew come forth,
and tacke on a whole shooe, and stoppe all the foote
within with hogges grease and branne molten toge-
ther, and laid very hote to the foote, renewing it eu-
ry day once the space of nine daies, to the intent the
sole may rise; but if this will doe no good, then
take away the sole cleane, and clap on a whole shooe,
and stoppe the foote with nettles and salte braid to-
gether; yet stop it not too hard, to the intent the sole
may haue liberty to rise; & let this be renewed euery
day once, till the sole bee growne againe, then let
him bee shod with *Lunets*, and so sent to grasse. O-
ther Farriers vse onely to raze the hooft from the
cronet to the verdge of the hooft in foure or fve
places, and rubbe it twice or thrice a day with salt,
and that will open the hooft. Others vse onely to
open the horse exceeding much at the heeles once a
weeke, and to shope him with very wide open shooes,
and then for a moneth or two to draw him in some
carte, that by beeing forced to set his foote hard to
the ground, hee may thereby stretch forth
and widen his hooft. Now to preuent this soar-
rance, it is good to annoynt his hooves with

neats foote oyle, or with turpentine, and to stop them vnderneath with cowes dung.

CHAP. 101.

Of the running or rotten Frush.

THe Frush, which of some is called the Frogge of the foote, is the tenderest part of the hooft towards the heele, and is fashioned like a forked arrow head, being onely that part of the foot which Farriers cut forth, when they say they cut forth the soale of the horses foote. Now in this frush breedeth many times a rottennesse or corruption proceeding of humors which cometh out of the legges, by which the legge is kept cleane from wind-galles, and all other tumors or swellings, by means that the humours haue passage that wayes; notwithstanding the mischief of this sorranee is greater then the benefite, because it maketh the horses foote so weake and tender, that he is not able to tread vpon any hard ground. The signes of the sorranee are, the horse will halt much when he trauelleth either vpon loose stony ground, or vpon stiffe dirty waies, and goeth euer best vpon greene swarth; but aboue all hee halteth most when the passage of the humour is stopped with any grauell gathered into the frush, and not being stopt, it will continually runne, and stinke so extremely that a man can hardly endure it; besides, in some places it will looke rawe. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is thus: First take off the shooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, so as you may see the water issue out of the raw places: then
tack

tacke on the shooe againe, being first made wide and large enough: that done, take of soote one handfull, of salte as much; bruiſe them well together in a diſh, and put thereto the whites of three eggs, and temper them altogether; & with a little tow dipt therein, ſtoppe all the ſoote, and eſpecially the fruſh, and ſplent it in ſo as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the ſpace of ſeuē dayes, and certainly it will cure him. Now during the cure, the horſe muſt reſt, and come in no wet; and at the ſeuē dayes end, leaue ſtopping him, and ride him abroad, and alwayes when hee commeth in, let his ſoare ſoote be cleane waſhed: for there is no greater enemy vnto the ſorrance then grauell and dirt. Other of our later Farriers, onely take off the ſhooe, and pare him well, and keepe the ſoare cleane, both from dirt and his owne dung, by waſhing it three or foure times a day with vrine, and that alone will cure him as well as any medicine.

CHAP. 102.

Of euill Hones.

HOrſes partly through a naturall inclination, partly through the ſtonineſſe of the ſoyl where in they are bred, and partly through miſchaunce or ill gouernement, will haue ill fauoured and naughty hoes, as either wrinckled, or crumpled, or elſe moulded awry, or ſuch like: all which needes no ſignes becauſe of the apparant ſight thereof: then to amend them, the beſt cure is with a fine rape-file to ſmooth the wrinckles away, and to annoynt the cronet of the hooſe with the fat ſwarde of bacon

*Ecc 2 rubbed

rubbed in foote: then let the horse stand for at least a fortnight vpon his owne dung, whereon you shall cast good store of water, onely remoue away the dung euery night; and then presently after the change of the moone, shooe the horse with strong shooes, keeping the sole of the foote by paring, so hollow as you can possible, and it will shape his hoofe to your pleasure.

CHAP. 103.

Of brittle Hooues.

IF a Horse either through the heate of his owne nature, or in that he hath bene either heated on his feete by labour, or foundred and euill cured, shall happen to haue his hooues so brittle and short, that they will hardly beare a shooe: the signes whereof are, the hoofe will be white and crumbling: then the best cure, according to the opinion of the best Farriers, is to take Oxe dung and vinegar, and mixing them very well together, warme them on the fire, and so binde it both vnder and aboue round about the horses hoofe, and then lace on his boote of strong leather as is aforesaid in the chapter of casting of the hoofe. Other Farriers vse to let the horse stand vpon his owne dung, and annoynt all the vpper part of his hoofe with the fat of bacon sodde and mixt with turpentine: And this you must doe euery day once till you see his hooues come to some toughnesse. Others vse to take turpentine, hogges greafe, & hony, of each alike, melt them well together, and being warme annoynt all the hoofe therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the horse

horse foot both vnder & aboue; and then put on his boote: dresse him thus once a day, and once in two daies let him stand foure houres without his boote, that his hooft may grow as well hard as tough.

CHAP. 104.

How to preserve Hooftes.

IF you meane to preserve your horses hooftes either from any of the former sovrances, or any other griefe whatsoeuer, you shall, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of garlick, a little bundle of rewe, sixe ounces of allome, beaten into powder, two pound of old grease, and the dung of an Asse; boyle them all very well together, and stoppe your horses hooftes therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of vinegar a quarterne, of tarre halfe a pint, of hogges grease halfe a pound, of oyle a pint, and a good handfull of wormwod, and foure or fise heads of garlick; boyle all these together to a thicke oyntment, and therewith annoynt all the horses hooftes. Others vse to boyle beanes till they burst, and then temper them with hony, and therewith annoynt all the hooftes: or else wash all the hooftes with warme vinegar, and then annoynt them with horehound, wormewod, & grease molten together. Other Farriers take of *Olibanum* and new waxe, of each an ounce, of *Dialthea* and turpentine, of each three ounces, of butter foure ounces, of old oyle sixe ounces, & of sheeps suet & plantaine, of each a pound; boyle them all well together, & therewith annoynt the hooftes twice a day. Other Farriers annoynt his hooftes with turpentine, hogges grease,

and hony warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foote well, and shooe him in the new of the moone two or three daies after the change. Others vse to take chaulke and white lead mingled together; or else barkedust and hony mixt together, and being heated in a posnet, and laid hote on the bare flesh, is most excellent to make any houe grow; to conclude if a horse stand vpon his owne dung (being very well watered) so he doe not lye in it, it is most soueraigne for the preserving of the houes

CHAP. 105.

For any hurt vpon the houer.

IF your horse shall receiue any hurt vpon his houer, either outwardly or inwardly, as either by any fallie treading or crossing one foote vpon an other, or by any bruise either vpon cogle stone, flint, or such like, then for the cure thereof you shall first stoppe the hooft with hony and vinegar mixt together, for the space of three daies at the least; and then afterward with the leaues of *Tamariske*, well bruised & beaten together, vntill the hooft be sound againe. Other Farriers vse onely to stoppe the hooft with sheapes grease and horse dung well mixt together, renewing it onely once a day vntill it be well.

CHAP. 106.

How to soften houer.

THe houer of horses will, by long & dry standing vpon dry plaunchers, grow so hard that they will not

not be pared, nor cut by any butteriss besides, they will so take from the horse the sence and feeling of his feete, that the horse wil goe very stiffe and vnnim- bly: wherefore when you shall perceiue any such defect, which is best knowne by offering to pare the hoofe, then presently you shall take an ounce of sope, two ounces of vnsleckt lime, with as much strong lye as will make it soft like a lenwicke salue, then with that stoppe the horses feete dayly till they come to a conuenient softnesse.

CHAP. 107.

How to harden houes.

AS dry standing & dry keeping doth harden the houes too much, so wet and moist keeping, as continuall going in marriish grounds, or continuall standing either vpon dirt or the horses owne dung, will make a horses houes too soft; in so much that the horse through the tendernesse thereof will neither bee able to goe nor to beare any shooe, which you shal perceiue by the soft and easy cutting of the hoofe; the manner then to harden and cure them is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to burne an old shooe sole, then seeth it well in vinegar, and therewith bathe the horses houes, at the least twice a day, and it will harden them. Other Farries vse to take of the powder of galles, of branne, and of salt, of each a handfull, boyle these well in a pottle of strong vinegar, and therewith bathe the hoofes, and in a short space it will harden them.

CHAP. 108.

Of the Maltlong on the hooſe.

THe maltlong, or as ſome Farriers call it, the malt-worme, is a cankerous ſoarrance about the hooſe, iuſt vpon the cronet, which will breake out into knobbes and branches, and out of the ſame will runne a wateriſh ſharpe lye or humor, which will venome the whole foote; as for the ſignes, they are the apparant ſight of the ſoarrance, and the continuall running out of the thinne water. Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, if it bee in the ſommer time, to take blacke ſnailes, and burre rootes: and beating them wel together lay them vnto the ſoare, and renew them once in twenty foure howres. But if it bee in the winter, then take the ſcraping of a pannes bottome or of a cauldron, and put thereto an handfull of the inner greene barke or pils of the Elder trees and hauing beaten them well together in a mortar, lay it vnto the ſoare, and renew it once a day, and it will heale it. Others uſe to take garlicke, pepper and hony, of each like quantity ſtamp them very well together, then annoynt his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay ſome to his paſtorns, and that will cure the ſoarrance.

CHAP. 109.

How to ſkinne any ſoare foote.

THere is nothing better to ſkinne any ſoare foote of what accident or ſoarrance ſoeuer it procede, then to take turpentine ſimply of it ſelfe, and therewith

with euery day to annoynt the soare foote, and it will not onely gather skinne but hoofe also, if it bee in a place where any such need requireth.

CHAP. IIO.

Of goured or swolne legges.

THe gorge or goured legges, is an ill forrance, being a grieuous swelling in the neather part of the legges, proceeding either from the melting of the grease by immoderate labour, & then wanting wherewith to auoide that grease out in the excrements, it falleth downe into the limbes, and there breedeth this swelling; or else when a horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set vp, and taketh cold, in so much that the blood falleth downe into his legges, and there congealeth, and maketh his legges to swell. To conclude, they doe sometimes proceede from hard beating in hard waies in the sommer time, which first raiseth vp windgals, and then those windgals offending the sinews, maketh them to swell, and this is the worst gourding, because euer for the most parte lamenesse doth follow it.

The signes are, the horses legges will euer bee most swolne when hee standeth still in the house, and least when he is in trauell, especially if hee trauell in much water; and the swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small scabs, and in the end it will breake out into the scratches. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, to draw him with a hot yron a handfull about the knee, & then rope his legs with a soft rope of hay wet in

cold water, and let it so remaine a day and a night, and it will take away all the swelling. Other Farriers take two pound of nerue-oile, two pound of black sope, a pound of Boares grease, and melt and boyle all these well together: then straine it, and so let it coole: then when you haue any need, annoynt and chafe your horses legges therewith; and to make it sinke in the better, annoynt him first with nerue-oyle, and hold a hote Iron against his legges to make it melte: then vse the other oymntment in the same manner: which done, keepe his legges cleane from dust by lapping a linnen roller about them.

Others of our later Farriers vse to take vp the veines beneath the knee, and let him bleede well: then knitte the veine both aboue and below, and then annoynt his legges with this oymntment: Take of frankinsence, rosen, and fresh grease, of each a like quantity, and hauing boyled them very well together, then straine it, and vse it once a day as you shall haue occasion, and it will heale any Gorge whatsoeuer; onely for the taking vp of the veines, you may if you will, forbear it, sith if it bee not done with great cunning, it will make the horse stiffe euer after.

CHAP. III.

Of the Farcy or Fashions.

THe Farcy (of our ignorant Smiths called the Fashions) is of all outward sorranes the vilest, the most poysonous, infectious, and the most dangerous (being any whit neglected,) otherwise the most easiest, and with the least cost or trouble to bee helped.

ped. It is a kinde of creeping vicer, growing in knots, euer following alongst some one veine or other, and sometimes alongst diuers or sundry veines, according to the strength of the infection. It proceedeth sometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, sometimes from outward wounds or hurts receiued by cankerous or poysonous instruments, as rusty spurres, rusty forkes, bitings of dogges or horses, bitings of tickes, hogges lice, or such like; sometimes by the rubbing of swine against the legges of the horse, or by lying in the litter where swine haue laine, or by enterfeasing, or heaving one legge vpon an other: but generally it proceedeth from an euill habite of the body, being surfeited by disorderly and vnruely trauell, whereby the blood being heated, the grease melted, and sudden cold taken, there groweth such obstructions in the blood, and such putrification in the body, that it can no way euacuate or auoyde, but by these small knots, pustules, or vicers, which are so infectious, that as many horses as doe gnawe or enappe vpon the horse infected, will within one moneth haue the same disease: or if the horse infected doe bite any other, hee will infect him also; and this infection without present cure, is mortall, and will kill any horse; therefore whensoever you haue any horse troubled with this sorrhance, see that you separate him from other horses to preuent the daunger.

Now for the signes, they are the apparance and palpable feeling of the knottes, which knottes are neuer but accompanied with great swellings and rancklings, running alongst as the veines runne,

and diuiding themselves as the braunches of the veines diuide, the number of the knottes multiplying and encreasing vntill the body bee either vniuersally couered ouer, or else that the member (if it bee in a member) bee vtterly deformed and mishapen.

Now the cure, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, first let him bloud on his necke veine, and on both his spurre veines: then giue the horse this drinke: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good handfull of rewe, and a pound of hempe-seede, both being first bruised in a mortar: then boyle them in the water till the one halfe bee consumed, and giue the horse this to drinke in the morning, fasting, being cold, for diuers mornings together, and it will cure him. Others of the ancient Farriers vse first to let the horse bloud in that veine where the sorrhance first riseth, as nigh the soare place as may bee, and let him bleede well: then fire or cauterize euery knotte one by one, taking the knotte in your left hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knotte with a round blunt hote Iron, of the bignesse of a mans forefinger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leauing none vnburned, bee it little or much: that done, annoynt euery knotte so burned with hogges grease warmed euery day once vntill the coares bee ready to fall away; and in the meane time prepare a good quantity of old vrine, & when you see the coares ready to fall, then boyle the vrine, and put therein a little copporas and salt, and a fewe strong nettles, and with that water being warme,
wash

wash out all the coares, and all the corruption: that done, fill every hole immediatly with the powder of fleckt lime, continuing thus to do euery day once vntill the holes bee closed vp; and if any bee more ranker then others, fill those with verdigrease; and during this cure let the horse bee thinly dyetted, that is to say, with straw and water onely, vnlesse it be now and then to giue him a loafe of bread, or a little other prouender: for the lower hee is kept in flesh, the sooner hee will heale; and in any wise let his necke either bee yoaked in an old bottomlesse paille, or else splented with staues in such sort that hee may not come to licke any of his soares, and the lesse rest hee hath, the better will bee his amendment. Now there bee other later Farriers which for this sorrhance take a good quantity of mistellthoe, hony, and blacke sope, and boyle them very well in old vrine, and being very warme, wash your horse all ouer therewith, euery day once for the space of fise or sixe dayes, and it will helpe it. Others vse to cut the horse two inches long, downe the forehead, and open it in the midst thereof on both sides two inches, and put therto a tampin made of the inner rinde of Elder barke which is Greene, and looke that it lye crosse the cut: for so it will destroy all the venemous humour in his body, and it will heale him very perfectly hauing bene very oft approved. Others vse to take a very sharpe bodkin, and to thrust it crosse-wise through the neather part of the horses nose, euen through the small gristle, so that he may bleed well, or else to let him bloud in the necke veine, then feele the knots, and as many as are felt, lance them and let them run: then take strong lye,

line and allom, and mixing them well together bathe all the soare therewith; and it will cure him. Others take a sharpe launce knife, and in the toppe of the horses forehead somewhat about his eyes make a long slit euen vnto the skull; then with a blunt instrument for the purpose, loote the flesh from the scalpe a good compasse; then take carret rootes cut into little thinne round peeces, and put them betweene the skinne and the skull, or for wante of carret rootes you may take redde dock rootes, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no meanes thrust out the rootes: but if the rootes will not stay in, then with a needle and a silke stitch the wound together that it may hold in the medicin; then once a day annoint the wound with fresh butter: this is held a very certaine cure for the farcy, for looke how this wound thus made, shall rot, wast, and grow sound, so shall the forrance breake, dry vp, and be healed; onely the fault of this cure is, that it will bee somewhat long in healing, and is a foule eyesoare vntill it bee whole. Now there be other Farriers which after the putting in of the rootes, as is aforesaid, vse to burne all the soare places round about with a hote yron; and then with another blunt hote yron as bigge as a mans finger, to burne the soares in the midst till the white matter come forth; then with a paire of pinsons plucke out the knots: this done, annoynt all the soare places with sops, and then dresse him no more the space of foure or fise daies, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong pisse, with the which you must wash him euery day, the pisse being first made scalding hote, and rubbe
the

the soares well vntill they begin to bleed; then hauing dried all the soare places, throwe on the powder of vnleckt lime, or of burnt allome, which will heale better then lime. Now if you see that in any of the soares through negligent dressing there riseth proud flesh so high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the aforelaid powder, then may you burne any such place so soare or soarer as you did at the first, and dresse it as before. Now there bee other Farriers which when they see the farcy to haue beene old and long gone, and that it is so farre entred into one member or other, that the member is disfigured, they will then first purge the horse, with some strong purgation, of which you may find choice in a chapter before written, and then vnder his belly put in one rowell either of haire or leather: and on the pitch of his shoul'der of his griued legge (if it bee before) or else on the stifling place, if his griefe be behind, put in another rowell, and so keepe those two places together with the issue in his forehead open, vntill the cure bee finished; then with an other hote yron burne all his legge downe with long strikes, euen from the body to the hoofe, not aboue an inch one strike from another, the edge of the yron being not aboue a strawes breadth, and draw your stroake euer downeward with the haire, and burne him no deeper then that the skinne may looke browne. Now when by this practise you haue cured the disease, if then the member bee vnfashionable, or by swellings out of all forme, then you shall lay vnto the member a plaister made of wine lees, and wheate flower, & rolle it with a wollen roller, renewing it once in twenty foue howres till the member bee asswaged; and this practise

It will heale any greate sweld legge, if it be applied and continued with patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings, or cuttings of some ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary hard or horny substance growne about the member which the plaister aforesaid will not resolue; then you shall take of virgine waxe halfe a pound, of mirrhe one pound, of rayfins a pound, of *Galbanum* halfe a pound, of *Costus* sixe ounces, of armoniarcke sixe ounces, of swines grease two pounds; put your swines grease first into an earthen pot, and hauing placed it in a broad cauldron full of water, then make a soft fire vnder it, to the end that your water may boyle; and when you do perceiue your swines grease is almost melted, then shall you put in all your other simples, except the *Costus*: and when they are all molten, which will ake fise or sixe howres boyling at the least, then your *Costus*, which is a white roote, being beaten into fine powder, you shall adde to the aforesaid things after it is taken from the fire, and incorporate them all very well together; then make a plaister thereof vpon a peece of sheepes leather, somewhat bigger then the soare, and this plaister without renewing will serue for at least thirty daies with a very little refreshing, onely you must once a day take it off, and rub his legge very well, for feare it itch, which may cause the horse to beate and stampe with his foote, and so rather increase then decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you doe not rolle him to strait, for that is most hurtfull. It shall not be amisse now and then to ride him into the water, and walke him an howre after; then bringing him into the stable, rubbe his legge well; then warme his plaister ouer a chafing-dish

dish and coales, and so lay it to againe: and this practise in two or three moneths will take away any deformity of swelling, be the member neuer so vncom-ly. Now there be other Farriers which for this farcy if it bee but young, and especially if it bee about the head or face of a horse; will take onely of aqua vitæ two spoonefuls, of the iuice of garlicke two spoonefull, and of the iuice of rew, or hearb of grace, two spoonefull; mixe them well together, then take plegants or round bals of flaxe, and steepe them therein, and then stoppe them hard into the horses eares; then take a needle and thred, and stitch the tips of his two eares together, by meanes whereof he cannot shake out the medicine, and vse the horse thus three seuerall mornings together, and it will kill the farcy as hath beene oft proued. Other Farriers vse to take drag-worts, or groundsell, and beate it well in a mortar with white salt, and then stop it hard into the horses eares, and so either stitch them together, or with a broad inckle bind them vp; renewing it once in foure-teene howres for three or foure dressings, and it will heale any reasonable farcy. Others vse to annoynt all the soares either with tansey and verduice boyld together, or else with boares grease very hote, and that will kill it. Others vse first to wash the soares with old vrine, then take the powder of glasse, brimstone, and hogges grease well stamped and beaten together; then opening or slitting the knots annoynt them all therewith, and it wil cure them immediatly; Other Farriers vse to let the horse blood if it be at the beginning of the disease, or else not; & then to burne all the knots as is aforesaid, & then to heale the burnings with tar, oyle & hony mixt together, & giue him with a pint of

malmsey, two or three spoonfull of the powder *Dipente*: or else giue him 4 ounces of the powder of wal-wort, or dan-wort, with a pint & a halfe of malmsey, 3. daies together; after that, take an ounce of *Aloes*, one ounce of *Centuary*, one ounce of *Upopanax*; beat them all into fine powder, and giue them him to drinke in a pint and an halfe of malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the aforelaid hearbe called wal-wort, or dan-wort, haue bene sodden: vse to ride him oft vntill he sweate; and when the disease is killed, turne him to grasse: for running in the open aire is very wholsome. There be others which take blacke sope, *Arsnicke*, vn-sleckt lime, verdigrease, & red lead; work all these well together, and opening the knots, dresse them therewith till you see they begin to dry vp and dy. Others open the knots with a hot Iron, and then take blacke sope, & great salt beaten together, and halfe so much as of them of verdigrease, and boyle the verdigrease with fresh grea'e, and then take a saucertul of mustard, and put them all together, and dresse the soares therewith. Others take 3 ounces of quicksiluer, and put it into a bladder, with 2 spoonfull of the iuice of oranges or lemons, and shake them together to coole the quicksiluer: then take halfe a pound of fresh hogges grease, & of verdiuice an ounce; put all these in a trend dish, & worke them well together: then annoynt the knots with this oyntment, till they rot: then let them out with a sharpe knife, & annoynt them still, and put into his eares the iuice of rag-weed, and the soares wil dry vp. This medicine is very well approued. Others take blacke sope, mustard made of wine vinegar, and red lead; mixe all these together, & annoynt the veine all along, holding a hote Iron close to the soare,

to make the oyntment sinke in; & do thus once a day vntil the soares dry vp. Other Farriers take of the iuice of hemlocke a good quantity, & dipping tow therein, stop his eares therewith: then open all the knots and thrust in salt. Lastly, giue him to drinke sweete worte mixt with fennell & treacle. Other Farriers take the butter burre, and being dryed & beaten to powder, strew it vpon the knots after they haue bin opened; & then giue him 2. or 3. spoonfull of the same powder with a pint of malmesey to drinke, & it will cure the Farcy, and it is also exceeding good for all manner of vlcers; the root is strong in smell, & bitter in taste. Others take sulphure, orpiment, vnsekt lime, and mixing them together, put it into the knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, annoynt him with bolearmony made into powder, & incorporated with strong vinegar, the iuice of houslicke, and of white leekes, and *Solatre*. Other Farriers after they haue let the horse bloud will boyle in vinegar, beane flowre & swines grease, then adde a prety quantity of oyle; and then straine it, then adde one part of aloes, & two of brimstone, & boyle it a little: then being warme annoynt all the soare places therewith, or else annoynt them twice a day with the iuice of smallage, and the yelkes of egges beaten together. There be other Farriers which take 2 ounces of oyle de bay, one of *Enforbium*, & 2 ounces of arsnicke; & mixing them together, annoynt the soares therewith, & it will kill the Farcy. Now after all these many receipts, of which not any but hath bene approued to be very good, yet these 2. which I wil now rehearse, I haue euer found to be the most excellent for any manner of Farcy whatsoeuer, whether it be, as our simple Smiches tearme it, a drye

Farcy, a wet or water Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, & proceeding from one & the selfe same cause; only some horses not hauing such flux of humors in them as others haue, the knots will be vnwilling to breake, and then they say it is a drye farcy: others of the contrary part will breake as fast as the knots do arise, and run filthy matter; and then they call it a water farcy: others will spread in many parts of the body, yet not breake, but as it were moue betweene the skin & the flesh, and that they call a running farcy. Now all these, as I said before, are but one farcy, and haue but one certaine cure, which is this: first, with diligent heed marke vpon what principall veine in the horses body the knots do arise, and note how they spread & run; then if the farcy bee diuided into sundry branches, according as the veine doth diuide, you shall take the last knot of euery braunch, which, for the most part, will be hard, and not come to rottenesse; and then slit them, and fill them with your kniues point full of white arsenicke: then those which you find to be rotten, let the matter forth, and annoynt them with blacke sope and arsenicke mixt together: then within 2. or 3. dayes you shall see those which you drest with arsenicke simply, to haue their coares fall out, and the rest which you drest with blacke sope, will dry vp: then annoynt them all with fresh butter molten till they be whole. Now if you do perceiue any new knots to arise, then you shall dresse them likewise with arsenicke simply, as was said before, & not leaue any vncured. Now if the farcy be not very contagious, but, as it were, newly begun, then if you only take blacke sope & arsenicke, as before sayd, and annoynting your finger and your thumbe there-

therewith, do but nippe and bruise euery knot, and within two or three daies after, they will dry vp and heale. But if the farcy be fowle and desperate, that is to say, either vniuersally spread ouer the body, or so gotten into any limbe or member, that the limbe is deformed, and hath lost his proportion, so that a man can neither iudge which way the veines runne, nor in what part the knots are most venemous, because that healing one, two new ones will arise: In this case you shall first giue your horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his body, of all which a pint of muscadine, or a quart of strong ale, with halfe a pint of the oyle of oates, is the most soueraigne: then shall you take a penyworth of tarre, and two good handfuls of pidgions dung, and twelue penyworth of white mercury; mixe all these very well together, and make them into a salue: then with a slice daube it all ouer the soare place, leauing no parte of the member vncovered: then heating a barre of Iron red hote, hold it so neare that it may drye the salue vpon the soare: then lay more fresh salue on, and dry it in like maner, & let it so rest vntill it fall off, and it will kill any farcy whatsoeuer at the first or second dressing. Now there bee others which will stoppe the knots with the powder of verdigrease and of arsnicke mixt together, or else wash the soares with *Aqua-fortis*, but they are neither so good as the other before rehearsed.

CHAP. II2.

Of the Canker in any part of the body.

A Canker is a poysonous creeping vlcer, fretting & gnawing the flesh in great breadth, whose beginning is knotty, not much vnlike vnto the farcy, & spreadeth it selfe into diuers places: and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one wound or filthy soare; from whence there runneth a thinne sharpe lye, which galleth off the skin wherea loeuer it goes; and so both increaseth the vlcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by rancknesse of keeping, or else by too extreme pouerty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with sharpe and salte humors, then it causeth more painefull and grieuous exulceration. It also may proceede from some loathsome wound which is neither cleane kept, nor well drest, but in such sorte that the corrupt matter thereof poysoneth the other cleane partes of the body; for signes of the sorrhance, there needeth no more but the description already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, is, first to let the horse bloud, in those veines which are next the soare, and make him bleed well; then take of allom halfe a pound, of greene copporas as much, of white copporas one quarterne, and a good handfull of salt; boyle all these things together in faire running water from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warme, wash the soare therewith with a clout: and then sprinkle thereon the powder of flected lime, continuing so to doe every day once the space of fifteene daies

daies; and if you see that the lime do not mortifie the rancke flesh and keepe it from spreading any further, then take of sope halfe a pound, of quick-siluer halfe an ounce, and beate them together in a pot vntill the quicksiluer be so well mingled with the sope as you can perceiue no quicksiluer in it, & with an yron slice or splatter, after that you haue washed the soare with the strong water aforesaid, couer the wound with this oyntment, continuing thus to doe euery day once vntill the canker leaue spreading abroad. And if it leaue spreading, and that you see the rancke flesh is well mortified, and that the edges beginnes to gather a skinne, then after the washing dresse it with lime, as before, continuing so to doe vntill it be whole; and in the dressing suffer no filth that commeth out of the soare, to remaine vpon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane away, or else wash it away with warme water: and let the horse during this cure, bee as thinly dicted as may bee, and thoroughly exercised; now if this cankerous vlcer happen to be in the taile, of the horse, as it is often seene, and which you shall perceiue as well by the falling away of the haire, as also by the wound, then you shall make a bolster either of soft cloth, or sponge, and wet it with vinegar both within and without, and so bind it fast to the soares; & alwaies when it waxeth dry you must wet it againe; do thus twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftener it is better: so shal you continue for three or foure daies, and then heale it vp, as you heale vp any ordinary wound; that is with hogges grease and turpentine molten together, or such like. There be o. ther Farriers which for the canker on the body doe take one ounce of the iuice of the roote of *Affedeli*,
three

A Canker is a poysonous creeping vlcer, fretting & gnawing the flesh in great breadth, whose beginning is knotty, not much vnlike vnto the farcy, & spreadeth it selfe into diuers places: and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one wound or filthy soare; from whence there runneth a thinne sharpe lye, which galleth off the skin where soeuer it goes; and so both increaseth the vlcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by rancknesse of keeping, or else by too extreme pouerty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with sharpe and salte humors, then it causeth more painefull and grievous exulceration. It also may proceede from some loathsome wound which is neither cleane kept, nor well drest, but in such sorte that the corrupt matter thereof poysoneth the other cleane partes of the body; for signes of the forrance, there needeth no more but the description already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, is, first to let the horse blood, in those veines which are next the soare, and make him bleed well; then take of allom halfe a pound, of greene copporas as much, of white copporas one quarterne, and a good handfull of salt; boyle all these things together in faire running water from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warme, wash the soare therewith with a clout: and then sprinkle thereon the powder of flected lime, continuing so to doe euery day once the space of fiftene daies

daies; and if you see that the lime doe not mortifie the rancke flesh and keepe it from spreading any further, then take of sope halfe a pound, of quick-siluer halfe an ounce, and beate them together in a pot vntill the quicksiluer be so well mingled with the sope as you can perceiue no quicksiluer in it, & with an yron slice or splatter, after that you haue washed the soare with the strong water aforesaid, couer the wound with this oyntment, continuing thus to doe euery day once vntill the canker leaue spreading abroad. And if it leaue spreading, and that you see the rancke flesh is well mortified, and that the edges beginnes to gather a skinne, then after the washing dresse it with lime, as before, continuing so to doe vntill it be whole; and in the dressing suffer no filth that commeth out of the soare, to remaine vpon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane away, or else wash it away with warme water: and let the horse during this cure, bee as thinly dieted as may bee, and throughly exercised; now if this cankerous vicer happen to be in the taile, of the horse, as it is often seene, and which you shall perceiue as well by the falling away of the haire, as also by the wound, then you shall make a bolster either of soft cloth, or sponge, and wet it with vinegar both within and without, and so bind it fast to the soares & alwaies when it waxeth dry you must wet it againe; do thus twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftener it is better: so shal you continue for three or foure daies, and then heale it vp, as you heale vp any ordinary wound; that is with hogges grease and turpentine molten together, or such like. There be o-ther Farriers which for the canker on the body doe take one ounce of the iuice of the roote of *Affedeli*,
three

three ounces of vnleckt lime, two ounces of orpiment or arsnicke; put this in an earthen vessell close stopt, and either boyle or bake it in an ouen till it come to a powder; then first wash the soare with strong vinegar, and after strow this powder thereon. Others vse to take garlicke, and beate it in a mortar with swines grease till it come to a salue, and then hauing washt the soare either with vinegar, allome water, copporas water, or old vrine, then annoynt it once or twice a day with it till it bee whole. Other Farriers take the hearbe *Mullen* and bruiſe it, and mix it with salt, and verdigrease, and then dresse the soare therewith morning and euening for the space of three or foure daies; then vse the same salue as long againe without verdigrease: then lastly vse the hearbe alone; but if at any time, you see it doe beginne to waxe raw, then beginne againe as is aforesaid, and euer before you annoynt it, wash it first with vinegar and grease mixt together. Others take sauin, bay salte, and rew stamp with barrowes grease, and annoynt the soare therewith, and when the ill humors are kild (which you shall know by the whiteneſſe) then heale it with tarre, oyle and hony mixt together; lastly, (and which I hold the best) take vinegar, ginger, and allome, and mixe them together, till they come to a salue, and with it annoynt the soare, and it will both kill the poyson, and heale the vlcer.

CHAP. II3.

Of the Fistula.

A Fistula is a deepe, hollow, crooked, mattering vlcer, and for the most parte commonly a great deale

deale straiter at the mouth then at the bottome, being ingendred in some wound, soare, bruise, or canker not thoroughly healed. The signes to know it are, the hollownesse of the soare, descending downewarde from the orifice, and the thinnesse of the matter which issueth from the same; besides, the crookednes which you shall finde in the vlcer when you search it. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers it is thus: first search the bottome thereof with a goose or swannes quill, or with a small rodde, well couered with fine linnen cloth; and hauing found the bottome thereof, cut it so large with a razor that the matter may haue free passage downewards; but take heed in launcing it, that you cut not any master sinew or maine tendant: then hauing stanchd the blood either with swines dung or such like, take of good hony a pint, of verdigease one ounce, & boyle them well together vpon a soft fire three quarters of an howre; then hauing cleansed the soare by tying a taint of flaxe or fine linnen cloth to the point of your quill, with a threed draw it softly into the wound: then cut off your quill, or feather so long that you may take good hold in the neather end of the tent, which then shall come out at the bottome of your soare: then dip another tent in the aforesaid salue, and then with a needle & a threed, make fast your tent to your first clout at the vpper end thereof; then draw out your first tent downeward, so shal you draw your tent with the medicine easily into the wound, and your first tent will haue cleansed the soare very cleane; & if the matter do abound much, then it shall be good to dresse him twice a day, but you must not dresse him with this medicine, no more but one day,

H h h

and

and afterward you shal dresse him with this medicine following: Take of turpentine, of swines grease, of hony, and sheeps suet, of each a like quantity, & melt them together, and make a salve thereof, wherewith you shal dresse your horse foure daies for one day that you dresse him with your former medicine made of hony and verdigrease, and take heede that you make your tent of very soft linnen cloath, or fine flaxe, and let not your tent be too big after the first and second time dressing, but presently after the first dressing, you must couer the soare place, & round about the same, with this *Pulvis* here following: First, take two gallons of faire water, and hauing boyled and scummed it so long till you haue perfectly cleansed it of all corruption, then take two or three handfuls of mallowes, and as much of violet leaues, and two or three handfuls of oat-meale, and hauing boyled all these 3. things well in your former prepared water, you shall adde thereto of hogges mort, and fresh butter, of each a pound: then shall you let it boyle so long till it become thicke, like paste, or pap, and then apply it hot to the soare; and take heed that in opening this soare you let not any aire strike into it: and on the other side, that you keep it not too hot. And if this fistula be in the horses withers, you must take heede that you ty his head to the racke so as he may neither ly down, nor put his head lower then his manger: for if you suffer him to feede on the ground when he hath any grienous soare in his withers, it shal hardly be possible euer to cure him; but if you perceiue the wound to heale apace, and that it matter but a little, then shall it be enough to dresse him once a day: and also it shall be good to take great heed that you make not
your

your tent too big, and see that you vse your *Pulsus* till it be perfectly cured. Now there be others of the ancient Farriers which vse for this cure, first to search the depth of the fistula either with a quill, or with some other instrument of lead, which may be bowed euery way: for vnlesse you finde the bottome of it, it will bee very hard to cure: and hauing found the bottome, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a launcet or razor, then make a slit right against the bottome, so wide, that you may thrust in your finger to feele whether there be any bone or else gristle perished, or spungy or loose flesh, which must bee gotten out; and then taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this oynment: Take of *Mirre*, of *Aloes*, and of *Sarcocolla*, of each one ounce, of good hony sixe ounces, and of verdigrease two ounces, and melt all these on a gentle fire, and make them into a salue; then being luke warme, dresse the taint therewith, and bolster the tent with a bolster of flaxe, and if it be in such a place as the tent cannot conueniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole, two ends of a shooc-makers threed right ouer the bolster to keepe in the tent, which ends may hang there as two laces to ty and vnty at your pleasure, renewing the tent euery day once vntill the soare leaue mattering, and then make the tent euery day lesser and lesser vntill it bee whole: for you shall vnderstand that this salue doth purge this fistula of putrifaction; incarnateth & breedeth flesh; conglutinateth, and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you haue done as aforesaid, then you shal close it vp by sprinckling thereon a little sleckt lime: but if the fistula bee in such a place

as a man can neither cut against the bottome, nor nigh the same: then there is no remedy but euery time you dresse it, to powre into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or ferring, some strong white copporas water, or some allome water, so that it may goe downe to the bottome, and drye vp the filthy matter: and this you must doe twice a day at least vntill it bee whole. Now there bee of our later Farriers which vse this cure, after they haue searcht the Fistula to the bottome, to take a pottle of white wine vinegar, of camphaire halfe an ounce, of mercurie precipitate halfe an ounce, of greene treacle three ounces, of redde sage an handfull, of yarrow and Rib-wort, of each an handfull, of hony halfe a pint, of boares grease halfe a pint; boyle all these together till a quart bee consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the wound: then to heale vp the same, you shall take oyle of roses, virgin waxe, and rosen, of each a like quantity, of turpentine five ounces, of the gumme of Iuy and Deeres suet as much, boyle these together vnto a salue, and then dresse the soare therewith vntill it be whole, obseruing euer, both in this cure, and all the rest, that as soone you haue put in your tent, to clap a plaister ouer it of pitch, rosen, masticke, turpentine, and hogs grease, molten together, which will both comfort the wound by taking away euill humors, and also keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the fistula be in or about the head of the horse, then you shall take the iuice of houslicke, and dippe therein a locke of wolle, and put it into the horses eares, and it will stay the inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you shall cut away all the rotten

rotten and false flesh, and then bathe it well with the grounds of ale made warme, and then wipe the bloud cleane away: then take butter, rosen, and frankinsence a little, and boyle them altogether, and boyling hore powre it into the wound, & then clap on the plaister: do thus once a day till the horse bee whole. Now if there be any inflammation behind the horses eares, or that it grow to any impostumation in that place, then you shall boyle the roots of mallows in water till they waxe tender, then bruise them and straine out the water cleane, & being warme apply it to the soare, and it will heale it. There be other Farriers, which for this generall fistula vse as a preuention thereof, to take honny, and sheepes suet, and making it scalding hot, to scald the soare extremely therewith, vpon the first swelling, and it will keepe the fistula that it shall not breed; but if it be bred, then you shall launce it in the neathermost part, and put into it as much *Mercurie Sublimatum* as a pease, being first abated with sallet oyle, and laid on with a feather; after that take of verdigrease foure penyworth, of vitriolle a halfe penyworth, or redde lead three penyworth; beate these together, and euery day wash the wound with copporas water, made with copporas and Elder leaues in Sommer, and with the inner greene barke in Winter; after the washing, take the powder, & put it on the soare, and after it drop on a little oyle. Other Farriers take the outermost greene shels of walnuts, and put them in a tub, strowing 3. or 4. handfulls of bay salt vpon them, some in the bottom, some in the midst, & some on the top, & so keep them all the yeare; & when you will vse them, take a pint of them, & a little bay salt, & halfe a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, with halfe a

as a man can neither cut against the bottome, nor nigh the same: then there is no remedy but euery time you dresse it, to powre into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or ferring, some strong white copporas water, or some allome water, so that it may goe downe to the bottome, and drye vp the filthy matter: and this you must doe twice a day at least vntill it bee whole. Now there bee of our later Farriers which vse this cure, after they haue searcht the Fistula to the bottome, to take a pottle of white wine vinegar, of camphaire halfe an ounce, of mercurie precipitate halfe an ounce, of greene treacle three ounces, of redde sage an handfull, of yarrow and Rib-wort, of each an handfull, of hony halfe a pint, of boares grease halfe a pint; boyle all these together till a quart bee consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the wound: then to heale vp the same, you shall take oyle of roses, virgin waxe, and rosen, of each a like quantity, of turpentine fve ounces, of the gumme of Iuy and Deeres suet as much, boyle these together vnto a salue, and then dresse the soare therewith vntill it be whole, obseruing euer, both in this cure, and all the rest, that as soone you haue put in your tent, to clap a plaister ouer it of pitch, rosen, masticke, turpentine, and hogs grease, molten together, which will both comfort the wound by taking away euill humors, and also keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the fistula be in or about the head of the horse, then you shall take the iuice of houslicke, and dippe therein a locke of wolfe, and put it into the horses eares, and it will stay the inflammation; but if it be excoriated and broken, then you shall cut away all the rotten.

rotten and false flesh, and then bathe it well with the grounds of ale made warme, and then wipe the bloud cleane away: then take butter, rosen, and frankinsence a little, and boyle them altogether, and boyling hote powre it into the wound, & then clap on the plaister: do thus once a day till the horse bee whole. Now if there be any inflammation behind the horses eares, or that it grow to any impostumation in that place, then you shall boyle the roots of mallows in water till they waxe tender, then bruise them and straine out the water cleane, & being warme apply it to the soare, and it will heale it. There be other Farriers, which for this generall fistula vse as a preuention thereof, to take honny, and sheepes suet, and making it scalding hot, to scald the soare extreemely therewith, vpon the first swelling, and it will keepe the fistula that it shall not breed; but if it be bred, then you shall launce it in the nearhermost part, and put into it as much *Mercurie Sublimatum* as a pease, being first abated with sallet oyle, and laid on with a feather; after that take of verdigrease foure peny worth, of vitriolle a halfe peny worth, or redde lead three penyworth; beate these together, and euery day wash the wound with copporas water, made with copporas and Elder leaues in Sommer, and with the inner greene barke in Winter; after the washing, take the powder, & put it on the soare, and after it drop on a little oyle. Other Farriers take the outermost greene shels of walnuts, and put them in a tub, strowing 3. or 4. handfulls of bay salt vpon them, some in the bottom, some in the midst, & some on the top, & so keep them all the yeare; & when you will vse them, take a pint of them, & a little bay salt, & halfe a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, with halfe a

spoonefull of May butter (& for want thereof other butter) and mixe and incorporate them together; and then spread it on the soare, or taint the sore therewith; but two howres before you lay it on, annoynt the soare with Venice turpentine, and do thus till the fistula bee whole. Other Farriers take *Vnguentum Egyptiacum* (which is made of hony) a pint, vinegar halfe a pint, allome a quarterne of a pound, and verdigrease one ounce and an halfe; and seeth them altogether till they be thick, and of a tawny colour; this is called *Egyptiacum*, and to make it the strongest way, is to put in of *Mercurie Sublimatum* one ounce made in powder, and of arsnicke two scruples, and boyle it together: with either of these, especially the strongest, dresse any fistula, canker, or foule old vlcer whatsoeuer, and it will kill it; and the weaker of these which wanteth the *Mercury* and the arsnicke, may bee applied to a fistula in the mouth of a horse. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midst of well leauened bread slacke baked three ounces, of *Nenin* ten drams; mingle them together with a little rose water, and make tents thereof, and dry them vpon a tile; and at your pleasure tent your fistula therewith, and it will assuredly kill it. Others take strong lye, hony, roach allome, and *Mercury*, and seeth them together: and squirt it into a fistula, and it will kill it at the bottomes; and when you meane to dry vp a fistula, take redde wine, goats dung, and beane flowre, and seeth them together, and apply it to the fistula, and it will dry it vp. Now if you intend to sinke downe the swelling of a fistula, first of all seare it with a drawing yron in this proportion ⊕, and then take rosen, sheepes suet, & brimstone

stone, and boyle them together, and lay it vpon a fistula very hot with a cloth: and it will sinke downe the swelling. It is also most excellent to take away a windgall if it bee laid on after the windgall is prickt, but not too hote, but very reasonable, and it will keep it also very cleane. There bee other Farriers which for a fistula take verdigrease, butter, and salt, melted together, and poure it scalding hote into the soare, and vie this till all the flesh looke redde; then taint it with verdigrease, burnt allome, wheate flowre, and the yelks of egges well beaten and mingled together: last of all, skinne it with barme and soote mixt together. Other Farriers take of that *Resagallo* that is made of orpiment, vnsleckt lime, and brimston, and it will kill a fistula being applied vnto the bottome; yet it is a strong corrosiue, and desireth much descretion in the administration.

CHAP. II4.
Of the Anbury.

AN Anbury is a great spongy wart full of blood, which may grow vpon any part of the horses body, chiefly about the eye browes, nostrels, or priuy parts, & it hath a roote like vnto a cocks stone. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, 1. to tye it about with a threed, so hard as you can pull it, and the threed will eate in by little and little, in such sort as within seuen or eight daies it will fall away of it selfe; & if it be so flat that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharpe hote yron cutting it round about, and so deepe as you leaue none of the roote behind, and then dry it vp
with

with the powder of verdigrease; but if it grow in such a sinewie place so as it cannot bee conveniently cut away with a hote yron, then it is good to cate out the coare with the powder of *Resalgar*, and then to stop the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge for a day or two, and lastly to dry it vp with the powder of vnsleckt lim, and hony as is before taught. Other Farriers in stead of tying the wart with a thred doe tye it with two or three horse-haires; and that is a great deale the better, and will rot it off sooner and safer.

CHAP. IIJ.

Of the Cordes.

THe cordes is a certaine string, which commeth from the shackell veine to the gristell in the nose and betweene the lippe, the length of an almond; or they be two strings, like threds which lye about the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and goeth like a small cord through the body to the nostrhels, making the horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall also; & it is a disease very much incident to many yong horses. The signes are, an apparant stiffe going, and much stumbling, without any outward or visible forrance; and the cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers, to take the end of a crooked hartes horne that is sharpe; put it vnder the cordes, and twind it ten or twelue times about, till the horse be constrained to lift vp his foote, then cut the corde asunder, and put a little salt into the issue, or cut it first at the knee, then at the end of his nose, and so draw it vpwards, a spanne length, and cut that off. O
ther

The second Booke.

415

ther Farriers let the horse blood in the veine that descendeth in the inside of the legge, by the breast, and take away at least a pottle of blood, and after seauen daies wash him with beefe broth, and it wil heale him. Other Farriers take mustard, aqua vitæ, and sallet oyle, & boyle them on the coales, & make a plaister, & bind it to the place griued; and it will helpe. Others take the grounds of ale, and being made warme bathe his legges therewith, and then rope them vp with wet hay ropes, and it will make the horse perfectly sound.

CHAP. II6.

Of the string-halte.

The string-halt, of some called the mary-hinchcho, is a sodaine twitching vp of the horses hinder legges, as if hee did tread vpon needles, and were not able to indure his feete vpon the ground; the signes whereof bee, an apparant ill fauoured manner of halting, most visible to the eye. And the cure is to take vp the middle veine, aboue the thigh, and vnderneath the same; then vnder the said veine, there lyeth a string, which string must bee cut away: and the n annoynt him with butter, and salt, and he will both doe well, and goe plainly.

CHAP. II7.

Of a Horse that is spurgald.

IF a horse by the indiscretion of an euill rider bee spurre-gald, which is a disease most plaine both to bee felte or seene, then the cure is either to

bathe it with vrine and salt mixt together, or with water and salt, or with warme vinegar, or else binde vnto the place the crops or leaues of nettles stamped; and any of these will cure him.

CHAP. II. 8.

Of Wounds in generall.

WOunds, according to the opinion of all Farriers, is a solution, diuision, or parting of the whole: for if there be no such solution or diuision, then it is rather called a bruise then a wound; and therefore wounds are most commonly made with sharpe or piercing weapons, and bruises with blunt weapons: notwithstanding if by such blunt weapons any part of the whole bee euidently broken, then it is to bee called a wound as well as the other; and these wounds do proceed from some stroke, pricke, or violent accident. Now of wounds some bee hollow and some bee deepe and hollow: againe, some wounds chance in fleshy parts, and some in bony & sinewy places: and those which chance in the fleshy parts, though they be very deepe, yet they bee not so dangerous as the others, and therefore I will speake first of the most dangerous. If then a horse haue a wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place that is full of sinewes, bones, or gristles, then according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the wound well with white wine warmed, and keepe it euer whilest you are indressing it, couered with cloathes wet in warme white wine: that done, you shall search the bottome of the wound with a probe, or small instrument of Steele

steale made for the purpose, suffering the wound to take as little winde or aire as you can possible: then hauing found the depth, stoppe the hole close with a cloute vntill your salue bee ready: then take of turpentine, of *Melrosatum*, oile of roses, of each a quarterne, and a little vnwrought waxe, and melt them together, stirring them continually that they may bee well mingled together; and if the wound bee acut, make a handsome rolle or round plegant of soft tow, so long and so bigge as may fill the bottome of the wound, which, for the most part, is not so wide as the mouth of the wound: then make an other rolle or plegant somewhat bigger to fill vp the rest of the wound, euen to the hard mouth, and let both these rolles bee annoynted with the oyntment asorlayd made luke warme; onely this you must euer obserue, that if the wound bee long and large, that then it is best, if you can conueniently, to stitch the wound together with a needle and a crimson silke: for that will make it heale the sooner, and make the scarre lesse. But if the hurt bee like a hole made with some pricke, then make a stiffe tent either of tow or lint, such a one as may reach the bottome, annoynted with the asoresaid oyntment, and bolster the same with a little tow: and ouer both this & the other, or any wound whatsoeuer, assoone as your rolles, plegants, or tents, are put in, you shal clip a sticking plaister made of pitch, rosen, masticke, and turpentine melted together, as hath bene before taught, both to keepe in your salue, and to comfort the soere. Now if the mouth of the wound bee not wide inough, so as the matter may easily runne forth, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hur-

ting any sinew : then giue it a pretty slit from the mouth downward , that the matter may haue the freer passage, and in any wise haue an especiall regard that the tent may bee continually kept in by one means or other, and also that it may not be drowned within the wound, but by tying some threed about the vpper end thereof, so kept that it may bee taken out at pleasure. Now if the hole bee deep, & in such a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as bigge as the hole, of a drye sponge that was neuer wet, so long that it may reach the bottome; and the tent being made somewhat full, with continuall turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it downe, & then dresse the wound with this twice a day, cleansing the wound every time with a little white wine luke warme : for this sponge annoynted with the oyntment aforesayd, will both draw and sucke vp all the filthy matter, and make it so faire within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heale, so make your tent euery day lesser and lesser vntill it be ready to close vp, and neuer leaue tainting it so long as it will receiue a taint, bee it neuer so short: for hasty healing of wounds breedeth fistulaes, which properly bee old soares, and therefore must bee healed like fistulaes. Now if the wound proceed from any ancient impostumation, then you shall take two or three great onyons, and taking out the coares, put therein a little bay salt, and a litle whole saffron, and so roast them in the hote embers: then plaisterwise lay them all hote on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound bee healed. Now if the vpper skinne of the wound bee putrified, and you would haue it away, then make a plaister of
COWES

cowes dung fodde in milke, and clappe it to for foure and twenty howres, and it will leaue nothing that is vile about the wound. Other Farriers vse generally for any cut whatsoeuer, to take a quarter of a pound of fresh butter, of tarre and blacke sope, of each halfe so much, and a little turpentine; boyle all but the sope together: then when you take it from the fire, put in the sope, and with this oyntment dresse any cut, and it will heale it. Others vse onely to take hogs grease and Venice turpentine, and to melt them together, and it will heale any wound. Other Farriers take eight drammes of turpentine, foure drammes of new virgin-waxe; melt them in a pewter vessell, and stirre them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whilest they be hot, powre into them halfe a pint of white wine, then after they be cold throw away the wine, and annoynt your hands with oyle of roses, and worke the waxe & turpentine well together: after that put them into the pewter vessel againe: then put to them halfe an ounce of the gum of fir-tree, & three drammes of the iuice of bettony: then seeth them well together vntill the iuice of bettony be wasted: then put to it 3. drams of womans milke, or the milke of a red cow, and seeth them once againe vntill the milke be wasted; and then put it in a close pot or glasse, and with this dresse any wound whatsoeuer, & it will heale it. Others vse to take rosemary, & dry it in the shadow, and beate it to powder, then wash the wound with vinegar, or the vrine of a child, & strew thereon the aforesaid powder, & it will heale any indifferēt wound. Other farriers take worm-wod, *Marioram*, *Pimpernel*, *Calamint*, *Olibanum*; beate

them all into fine powder, then take waxe and barrowes greafe, and boyle them on a soft fire, vntill they bee as thicke as an ointment or salue; with this dresse any wound and it will heale it. Others vse to take the toppes of nettles, butter, and salt, and beating them well in a mortar till it come to a salue, and it will draw and heale a wound. Now the powder of hony, and lime, or turpentine simply by it selfe will dry vp and skinne any wound. Take turpentine, hony, hogges greafe, waxe, and sheepes suet, of each a like, melt them well together to a salue, and they will heale any wound. Now if a horse be goared vpon a stake, then you shall cast him, and powre into the wound butter scalding hote, and so let him lye till it be gone downe into the bottome, and doe thus once a day, till the wound be whole. If you desire to keepe a wound open, put into it the powder of greene caporas, and it will doe it, but if you intend to heale it speedily, then wheate flowre and hony well beaten together to a salue wil do it, dressing the wound once a day therewith.

CHAP. 110.

Of a hurte with an Arrow.

IF a horse be shot or hurte with an arrow, raint the hole only with hogges greafe and turpentine molten together, & renew it once a day vntill the wound be whole.

CHAP. 120.

Of the healing of any old soare, or vlcere.

OLdevicers or soares are of three kinds, the first deepe, hollow, and crooked, and they be called fistulaes; the second, broad, shallow, but much spreading

ding, and increasing, and they bee called cankers: & the last broad, deepe, blacke about the sides, and bottom, yet not much increasing, although not at all healing; and they be onely called old soares or vlcers: they proceede either from some great bruise, wound, or impostume, which is either venomd or abused in healing by contrary salues; or through the fluxe and abundance of humors flowing downe to those parts through the negligence of a most vnskilfull Farrier. The signes are, the long continuance of the soare, the thinnesse of the matter, which issueth away, and the blackenesse of the soare which is euer full of inflammation. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers it is thus, first cleanse the soare well with white wines then take copporas and the leaues of Lillyes, beate them well in a mortar with swines grease till it come to a perfect salve, and lay it vpon the soare with flaxe, and then couer it with a plaister as in case of wounds, and renew it once a day, and it will heale it. Other Farriers take lime, and tough horse dung, and mixe it very well together with pepper and the white of an egge, and lay it to the soare, renewing it once a day, till the vlcere be whole. Other Farriers strow on the soare the powder of galls, and that will dry it vp. Others scald it once a day with hote oyle oliue, and that will heale it.

CHAP. 121.

Of brusings or swellings.

ALL bruifings and swellings come vnto a horse either by accident, as by some blow, rush, pinch; or

or outward venoming; or else naturally, as through the fluxe of cold or hote humors; or through the corruption of blood, or through the aboundance of winde. The signes are, the sightly apparance in what place or member soeuer they be: and the first, which are those which come by accident, are properly called bruifings or swellings; and the other if they do rotte or corrode, and so turne to matter, are called impostumes. Now for the generall cure of any bruise or swelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers it is thus, take of dry pitch, of gumme, of each an ounce; of *Galbanum*, of lime, of each foure ounces, of *Bitumen* two ounces, of waxe three ounces; melt and boyle them very well together: then annoynt the soare place therewith once a day, and it will heale it. But if the swelling proceede onely from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of verduice, one pint of barne, and putting a little fine hay therinto, boyle them very well together, then bind the hay to the swelling very hote, and after powre on the liquor: doe thus three or foure daies together, and it will take away the swelling. Other Farriers take the toppes of wormewood, pellitory of the wall, *Branck vrsnie*, beate them well together with swines greafe, then seeth them; then adde a pretty quantity of hony, lin-seed oyle, and wheate meale; then stirre it ouer the fire till all againe be sodden together, then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day till the swelling bee goe. Other Farriers vse first, to pricke the swelling with a fleame: then take of wine lees a pinte, as much wheate flowre as will thicken it and an ounce of comen; boyle them together, and lay this somewhat warme vnto it, renewing it euery day
once

once vntill the swelling either depart or else come to a head, which if it doe not, then launce it, and heale it according to a wound. Other Farriers take of rosen, of turpentine, and of hony, of each halfe a pound, dissolue them at the fire: then straine them, and adde of myrrhe, *Sarcocoll*, and the flowre of fenegreeke, and of lin-seed oyle, of each an ounce, incorporate them altogether, & then make it thicke like a salue, with the meale of lupins, and lay it to the swelling, and it will asswage it. Other Farriers take of *Gabbanum*, and of *Ceruse*, of each an ounce, of oyle two ounces, and of waxe three ounces, mixe them together ouer a soft fire, and when they are brought to a salue; then lay it vnto the swelling, and it will asswage. If you take onely rotten litter, or hay boyld in strong vrine, and apply it dayly vnto any swelling, it will take it away. Now if the swelling be vpon the legs, and come by any straine, then you shall take of nerue-oyle one pound, of blacke sope one pound, of boars grease halfe a pound; melt and boyle them al well together, then straine it, and let it coole; then when occasion serueth, annoynt and chafe your horses legs therewith, holding a hote yron neare thereunto, to make the oyntment enter in the better; then rope vp his legges, and keepe them cleane from dust or dirt; but if the swelling be vpon any part of the backe or body; then take of hony and tallow of each a like, and boyle them together: then spread it on a cloth, and lay it on the swolne place, and let it there sticke till it fall away of it selfe. Now if the swelling proceede from any windy cause, and so appeare onely in the horses belly, then you shall take a sharpe pointed knife or bockin, & arme it so with some stay that it

go not to deepe for piercing his guts : then strike him therewith through the skinne into his body, before the hollow place of his haunch bone, halfe a foote beneath the backe bone, and the winde will come out thereat: then if you put a hollow quill therin, or some featherto keepe it open a while, the winde will auoyd the better : then heale it vp againe. It is also very good to rake the horse, and to annoynt all his belly with the oyle of sauen, and to ride him vp & downe a little : but if the swelling be vnder the horses iawes, or about any part of his head, then you shall take his owne dung hot as soone as hee makes it, and with a cloath binde it fast thereto, renewing it twice a day till the swelling be gone.

CHAP. 122.

Of Impostumes, and first how to ripen them.

Impostumes are a gathering, or knitting together of many most corrupt humors in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell extremely, & growing into such violent inflammation that in the end they rot & breake out into foule, mattery, and running soares : they commonly proceed either from corruption of foode, or corruption of bloud; they are at the first appearance, very hard & very soare ; which hardnesse is the principall signe that they will rot. And of these impostumes, some be hot impostumes, and some be cold; yet forasmuch as euery impostume must first be ripened and brought to matter before it can bee healed, we will first speake of the ripening of them. If therefore you will ripen an impostume (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) you shall take
of

of *Sanguis draconis*, of gum Arabicke, of new waxe, of mastick, of pitch of Greece, of incense, & of turpentine, of each a like quantity; & melting the together, & straining them, make a plaister thereof, & lay it to the impostume without removing it; and it will both ripen, breake, and heale any impostume. Other Farriers take swines grease, red waxe, and the flowre of *Eosorbium*, and mixing them on the fire well together, lay it to the impostume, and it will do the like. Other Farriers take of hony, and of wheat meale, of each a like quantity, and either boyle it in the decoction of mallows, or else mixe it with the yelke of an egge, and it will ripen, breake, and heale; yet it must bee renewed once a day. Other Farriers take barley meale, and boyle it with wine and pigdions dung, and so lay it to the impostume plaister-wise, and it will ripen exceedingly. Other Farriers take a handfull or two of sorrell, and lapping it in a docke leafe, roast it in the hot embers as you would roast a warden, and then lay it to the impostume as hot as may be, renewing it once a day, and it will ripen, breake, and heale. A plaister of shoos-makers waxe will doe the like also. Other Farriers take mallow roots, and lilly rootes, & then bruise them, and put thereto hogges grease, & linseed meale, and plaisterwise lay it to the impostume, and it will ripen it, breake it, and heale it perfectly.

CHAP. I23.

Of cold Impostumes.

IF the impostume do proceed from any cold causes, as those which rise after cold taking, or when a horse is at grasse in the winter season, then you shall take the

hearbe balme, and stampe it and hogges greafe well together, and so plaister-wise apply it to the soare, & it will heale it: or else when the impostume is ripe, open it in the lowest part with a hot Iron, then wash it with warme vrine: after that, annoynt it with tarre & oyle well mixed together; and if you make your incision in the manner of a halfe moone, it is the better. Other Farriers take white mints, & seeth them in wine, oyle, ale, and butter, and so lay it to hot, and it will heale it. Other Farriers take cuckoo-spit, and stamp it with old greafe, and so apply it, and it will heale it. Other Farriers take a handfull of rew, and stampe it well with the yelke of an egge and hony, and then apply it plaister-wise, and it will heale any cold impostume.

CHAP. 124.
Of hot Impostumes.

IF the impostume proceed from any hot causes, as from the extremity of trauell, the parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the bloud, then, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take liuer-wort, and stampe it, and mixe it with the grounds of ale, hogs greafe, and bruised mallowes, and then apply it to the soare, and it will ripen, breake, and heale it: but if you would not haue the swelling to breake, then take the grounds of ale or beere, and hauing boyled mallowes therein, bathe the soare place therewith, and it will driue the swelling away. Other Farriers take either lettis seede or poppy seede, and mixe it with the oyle of redde roses, and lay it to the soare plaister-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it will take it cleane away.

A Tetter is a filthy kinde of vlcer like vnto a canker, onely it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place, and many times it will remaine betweene the skinne and the flesh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not breake. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to make a strong lye with old vrine, ashes, and greene copporas, and to bathe the knots therewith, and it will kill, and heale them. Other Farriers take a snake, and cut off the head and the taile, and cast them away, the rest cut into small peeces, and roast them on a spit: then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot, annoynt the sorrance therewith, and it will heale it in very short time, but looke that you touch no part of the horse therewith, saue onely the sorrance onely: for it will venome.

IF a horse by the mischance of some wound, shall haue any of his sinewes either cut, prickt, or soare bruised, then if there be no conuulsion of the sinews, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take tarre, and beane-flowre, and a little oyle of roses, and mixing them together, lay it hot vnto the place, and if it do not present good, take wormes and sallet oyle fryed together, or else the oyntment of wormes which you may buy of euery

poticarie, and applying either of them, they will knit the sinewes againe if they be not cleane asunder; but if there bee a conuulsion, then with a paire of sheares you must cut the sinew in peeces, and then take rosen, turpentine, pitch, and *Sanguis draconis*; then melting them together, clappe it somewhat hote vnto the soare: then take flaxe, and put vpon it, for that will cleanse and defend it, and then this medicine there is none better for any swolne joint whatsoeuer. Now if the joint bee not much sweld, but onely that the sinewes are exceedingly stiffe, through the great bruising, then you shall take of blacke sope a pound, and seeth it in a quarte of strong ale, till it waxe thicke like tarre; then reserue it, and when you shall see cause vse to annoynt the sinewes, and ioynts therewith, and it will supple them, and stretch them forth although they bee neuer so much shrunk, as hath been approved.

CHAP. 127.

Of fretting the belly with the fore-girths.

IF when you saddle and girde your horse, the girths bee either knotty, or crumpled, and therewithall drawne too strait, they will not onely gall and wound the horse vnder the belly very much, but they will also stoppe the blood, which is in the principall veines, called the plat veines, in such sorte that they will occasion most extreme and hard swellings. The cure whereof is, according to the generall opinion, to take of oyle de bay, and oyle of balme, two ounces, of pitch two ounces, of tarre two ounces, and one ounce of rosen; mingle them well together and then

then annoynt the horses fore bowels therewith; then take either floxe, or chopt flaxe, and clappe vpon it, and so let it abide vntill it fall away of it selfe; and it will surely cure him. Other Farriers vse to take vinegar, and sope, and heate them well together: and stir it with a sticke or cloth, and then all to rubbe and wash the galled place therewith, and doe thus at least twice a day, and it will dry it vp in two or three daies at the most; but if the galling be about any parte of the horses necke, then you shall take the leaues of *Briony* (called the hedge vine) and stampe them, and mixe them with wine, and then plaister-wise lay it to the soare, and it will heale it.

CHAP. 128.

Of Blisters.

BListers are certaine waterish hollow blebs; which doe arise betwixt the skinne and the flesh, proceeding either from some sleight burnings, scaldings, or chafings, and they bee very full of thinne matter. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the most generall Farriers is, first in the Sunne to fret them till they bleed; then take of the rootes of Iuy, and stamping them in a mortar, mixe them with as much tarre, brimstone, and allome till they come to a salue; and then dresse the blister therewith, and it will heale it.

CHAP. 129.

To take away all manner of bones, knobs, or any
superfluous flesh.

VVhen a horse hath any bone growing vpon any part of his body, more then naturall, or when he hath any lumpes or bunches of superfluous flesh, otherwise then of right doth belong to his true proportions; then such bones, knobs, or bunches, are called excreſions, proceeding from tough & ſlegmatique ſubſtances, ſtirred vp either by moſt ſoare bruifes, imperfect healed wounds, or other naughty putrifaction of the blood, being moſt apparant to the eye, and moſt palpable to the hand. Now for the cure (according to the generall opinion of the moſt Farriers) you ſhall firſt vſe corroſiue medicines, after drawing medicines, and laſtly drying medicines; or more particularly thus you ſhall cure them, firſt with an incision knife ſcarrifie the excreſſion; then apply ſulphure and *Bitumen*, or *Coloquintida* burnt, and ſifted, and when it hath eaten the excreſſion away, then heale it vp with drying ſalues, as the powder of hony and lime, or bolearmony, or ſuch like. Other Farriers vſe after they haue made the excreſſion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the aſhes of *Vitis*, and as much vnſleckt lime, mixt with ſixe ounces of ſtrong lye firſt ſtrained, then ſodde till halfe be conſumed, and ſo brought to a firme ſubſtance; then keepe it in a glaſſe in a dry place, and apply it to the excreſſion till it haue eaten it away, and then heale it vp as is before ſaid. Other Farriers vſe to take a pound of ſtrong lye, and ſope, and a quarter of a pound of vitrioll

vitrioll *Romane*: one ounce of *Sal-armoniacke*, and as much roach allome, and boyle them altogether vntill they bee very thick, and then with that oyntment eate away the excreffion. Other Farriers take of *Gipsiacum* the strongest kind, and lay it on the excreffion with a cotton, three or foure times, and it will take it cleane away: this medicine is most excellent for any splent, and of no small importance, if it bee vled against a fistula; for it wil sinke it, although it were in the crowne.

CHAP. 130.

How to eate away any superfluons or dead flesh.

IF when your horse hath any wound, vicer, or other soare, you shall perceiue that their groweth therein any dead flesh; which dead flesh you shall know partly, by the insensibility thereof, and partly in that it is a spungy, hollow, naughty flesh, not substantial as the true flesh is; and either of a blackish, or an high redde colour; then it shall be meete that you seeke all meanes possible, how to consume and eate away that superfluons and naughty flesh, because the soare that is pestred therewith, neither can nor will euer heale, till it bee cleansed of the same; therefore according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, the best meanes to eate it away, is, to boyle fresh grease, and verdigrease, of each a like quantiry together, and either to tent or plaister the soare therewith, till the dead flesh bee consumed. Other Farriers take either the scrapings of harts horne, or oxe horne, and mixing them with old sope, dresse the soare therewith, & it will eate away dead flesh. Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or sea spung, & therewith

dresse the soare, and it will do the like. Other Farriers vse the powder of *Risagallo* or *Risage*, but it is a great deale too strong a frictier. Others vse *Litergie* or lime, in lye, but they are likewise very violent and strong eaters. Others vse to take either white or blacke *Eleborus*, incke, quicke Sulphure, orpiment, *Litergie*, vitriolle, vnstleckt lime, roche allome, gals, soote, or the ashes of *Auellan*, of each halfe an ounce, and they will consume dead flesh; likewise quicke-siluer extinct, and verdigrease, of each an ounce made into powder, will do the like: the iuice of *Borrage*, of *Scabious*, of *Fumitarie*, and of a docke, of each halfe an ounce; a little old oyle and vinegar, boyled with a soft fire; put to it tarrre, and it will likewise eate away any dead flesh. There be other Farriers which take *Cantharides*, oxe dung, and vinegar and mixe them together, and lay it to the soare, and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others vse first to pounce the soare with a razor, then annoynt it with grease, and strew vpon it a pretty quantiry of orpiment. Other Farriers vse in steed of *Risagallo*, to take the powder of verdigrease and orpiment, of each an ounce, of vnstleckt lime, and tartar, of each two ounces; mixe them together, and therewith dresse the sore, after you haue washt it wel with strong vinegar; and if you please, you may adde thereunto vitriol, and allome; for they are both great consumers of dead flesh. Other Farriers take the powder of tartar, and mans dung burnt with salt, and then beaten into powder, and strewed on the soare; or else take salt, vnstleckt lime, and oyster-shells; and beate them in a mortar with strong lye or old vrine, till it bee like a paste: then bake it in an ouen, & after beate it to powder, and strew it on the soare, and it will eate away

way dead flesh. Other Farriers vse first to wash the soare with ale, wherein nettle seeds haue bene sodden, & then strew vpon it the powder of verdigrease. Now to conclude, you must euer obserue, that before you vse any of these medicines, you do shauce away the haire, that it be no impediment to the salue; also after you haue drest it once, and see that there is an asker raised, then you shal dresse it with some mollifying, or healing salue, till the asker come away, and then dresse it with your eating salue againe: and thus doe vntill you behold that all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh, and then heale it vp as in case of wounds.

CHAP. I31.

For Knottes in Ioynts, Hardnesse, Crampes, or any Inflammations.

THere do grow in ioynts three sorts of swellings, namely, a hot swelling, a hard swelling, and a soft swelling; all which you may easily distinguish by your feeling, and they doe proceede either from abundance of grosse humours, ingendred by foule keeping; or else by accident, as from some wound, rush, or straine. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is to beate the powder called *Diapente*, together with oyle, till it be like an oyntment, and then apply it once a day to the grieve, and it will take it away, especially if it be a crampe, or an inflammation. Other Farriers vse to incorporate with oyle, halfe an ounce of liquid *Storax*, two ounces of turpentine, sixe of waxe, and ten of bird-lime, and apply that to the grieve, and it will

case it. Other Farriers take wine, old oyle, and tarre, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dresse the soare place, and it will helpe it. Other of our later Farriers take halfe a pound of grease, three scruples of mustard, and the like of bay salt; mixe these with vinegar, and apply it to the grieve. Others vse to make a plaister of figs, and the roots of fearn and rocket, or mingle them with grease and vinegar, and apply it to the grieve. Other Farries vse to take the *Vnguentum basilicon*, which is made of honny, *Storax*, *Galbanum*, *Bdelium*, blacke pepper, bay-berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of *Armoniacke*, and of the powder of frankinsence as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with shreepes suet, and apply it to the grieve, and it will helpe it. Other Farriers take dry pitch, pitch of Greece, of each one part, of *Galbanum*, and of line, of each foure parts, of *Bitumen* two parts, of waxe three parts; melt them all together, and annoynt the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grieve, and peraduenture also the eye-soare.

CHAP. 132.

*How to cure any wound made with the
shot of gun-powder.*

ACcording to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first with a probe or long instrument, search whether the bullet remaine within the flesh or no; and if you finde that it doth, then with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth if it be possible, if otherwise, let it remaine: for in the end nature it selfe will weare it out of it owne accord, without any grieve or impediment; because lead will not corrode or canker;

ker; then to kill the fire you shall take a little varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, annoynting it well within euen vnto the bottome: then stoppe the mouth of the wound with a little soft flaxe dipt in varnish also: then charge all the swolne place with this charge: Take of bolearmony a quarterne, of linseed beaten into powder, halfe a pound, of beane flowre as much, and three or foure egges, shels and all; and of turpentine a quarterne, and a quart of vinegar, and mingle them well together ouer the fire; and being somewhat warme, charge all the soare place with part thereof; and immediately clap a cloath or a peece of leather vpon it, to keep the wound from the cold aire, continuing both to annoynt the hole within with varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of foure or fise dayes: then at the fise daies end, leaue annoynting of it, and taint it with a taint reaching to the bottome of the wound, and dipped in turpentine and hogges grea'e molten together, renewing it every day twice vntill the fire be thoroughly killed; which you shall perceiue by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling: for as long as the fire hath the vpper hand, no thicke matter will issue out, but onely a thinne yellowish water, neither will the swelling asswage: and then take of turpentine washed in nine seuerall waters, halfe a pound, and put thereunto three yelkes of egges, and a little saffron, and taint it with this oyntment, renewing it euery day once vntill the wound bee whole. But if the shotte haue gone quite through the wound, then you shall take a few weauers linnen thrummes, made very knotty, and dipping them first in varnish, draw them

cleane through the wound, turning them vp and downe in the wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either side vpon the swolne places, with the charge aforelaid, vntill you perceiue that the fire be kild; then clappe onely a comfortable plaister vpon one of the hoales, and taint the other with a taint in the salue, made of washt turpentine, egges, and saffron, as is before said. Other Farriers vse onely to kill the fire with the oyle of creame, and after to heale the wound vp with turpentine, waxe, and hogges grease, molten together. Other Farriers kill the fire with snow water, and charge the sweld place with creame, and barme beaten together: and then heale vp the wound, by dipping the taint in the yolke of an egge, hony, and saffron well beaten and mixt together.

CHAP. 133.

Of burning with lime, or any other fiery thing.

ACcording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the soare round about, and in euery part very cleane with warme water; then kill the fire, by annoynting the place with oyle and water beaten together, dressing him so euery day vntill the soare bee all raw, and then annoynt it with hogges grease, and strew thereupon the powder of flecked lime, dressing him thus euery day once, vntill hee bee whole. Other Farriers vse first to wash and cleanse the soare with sallet oyle onely warmed; then to kill the fire with creame, and oyle beaten together, and when it is raw, then to spread vpon it creame and soote mixt together; and lastly to strewe vpon

vpon it the powder of hony and lime vntill it bee perfectly skinned.

CHAP. 134.

Of the biting with a madde dogge.

IF your horse at any time bee bitten with a madde dogge, the venome of whose teeth will not onely driue him into an extreame torment, but it will also infect and inflame his blood, in such sort that the horse will bee indangered to dye madde: The cure therefore, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, to take of goats dung, of flesh that hath laine long in salt, and of the hearbe *Ebulus*, called generally dan-worte, of each halfe a pound, and fourty walnuts; stampe all these together, and lay part thereof to the soare, and it will sucke out the venome, and heale vp the wound; but vpon the first dressing, you shall giue the horse wine and treackle mixt together to drinke. There be other Farriers, which first giue the horse sacke and sallet oyle to drinke, then with a hote yron cauterize and burne the soare, and lastly heale vp the wound, with the salve first recited. Other Farriers, first giue the horse two or three spoonefuls of the powder of *Diapente* to drinke, in a pint of muscadine; then take a liue pidgeon, and cleauing her in the midst, lay it hote vnto the wound and it will draw out the venome; then heale the soare with turpentine, and hogges grease well molten together.

CHAP. 135.

Of hurtes by the tuskes of a boare.

IF a horse bee stricken by the tuskes of a boare, you shall take copporas, and vitrioll, and the powder of a dogges head, being burned, after the tong hath ben pulled out, and cast away; and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the soare, and it will cure it: yet yet before you dresse it, first wash the soare very well either with vinegar or with white wine.

CHAP. 136.

To heale the biting, or sting of Serpents, or any venomous beasts whatsoener.

IF your horse be either bitten or stung either with serpent or any other venomous beaſt, which you shall easily know by the sodaine swelling either of the body or member; then you shall first chase him vp and downe till he sweate, and then let him blood in the rooſe of the mouth; and laſtly, take a young cocke or a pidgeon, and cleauing it in the miſt, clap it hote to the wound, and then giue the horse white wine & ſalt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the hearb called *Sanicula*; ſtampe it and diſtemper it with the milke of a cow, that is al of one colour, and giue it the horse to drink, and it will heale him. Other Farriers clappe to the ſoare hogges dung, or oxe dung, or henbane bruised, or elle the ashes of reedes; then giue him to drinke mugworſe, or great tanſey, with wine and camomill ſtampt together; or elle giue him wine and *Olum Roſatum* mixt together.

ther. Other Farriers make a plaister of onions, hony, and salt, stamp and mingled together, and lay that to the soare place, and giue the horse wine and treackle to drinke, or else white pepper, rew, and Time, mixt with wine. Other Farriers take *Alphodillus*, *Histula regia*, stamp with old wine, and laid to the soare: for it is most soueraigne good.

CHAP. 117.

Of lice or vermine, and how to kill them.

THE lice or vermine which breed vpon a horse bee like vnto geese lice, but somewhat bigger, and do breed most commonly about the eares, necke, maine, taile, and generally ouer the whole body; they doe proceede from poucity, or feeding in woodes, where trees are continually dropping vpon them: the signes are, the horse will bee alwaies rubbing and scratching, and all be he eate much meate, yet hee will not prosper; and with his continuall rubbing hee will fret and weare away all his maine, and taile, and you shall also perceiue the lice when the Sun doth shine, running on the tops of the haire. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of sope one pound, and of quick-siluer halfe an ounce, mixe and beate them together well, vntill the quick-siluer bee killed, and then annoynt the horse all ouer therewith, and it will consume the lice so dainely. Other Farriers take stauesaker and sope, & mixing them together, annoynt the horse all ouer therewith. Other Farriers take vnripe Mulberries and their rootes, or stalks, and seeth them in strong vrine, & then wash the horse therewith; after that annoynt all

M m m

his

his body ouer with *Sanguis draconis*, the iuice of leekes, salt, pitch, oyle, and swines grease, very well mixt together. Others vse to chafe all his body ouer with quicke-siluer and soft grease mixt together, till the quick-siluer be kild, and in two or three dressings the lice will be consumed.

CHAP. 138.

*How to saue Horses from the stinging of Flyes
in Sommer.*

IF you will saue your horse in the Sommer time from the stinging or biting of flyes, which is very troublesome vnto them, then you shall anoynt all the horses body ouer either with oyle and bay-berries mingled together, or else binde vnto the head-stall of his collar, a sponge dipped in strong vinegar: some vse to sprinkle the stable with water wherein hearbe of grace hath bene layd in steepe; or else to perfume the stable with the smoake of Iuy, or calamint, or with Githe burned in a panne of coales: But the surest way of all, both in the stable and abroad, is to make two good wispes of reu, and therewithall to rubbe the horses body all ouer, and no flye will light vpon him, or touch him, as hath bene often approued.

CHAP. 139.

Of bones being broken or out of the Ioynt.

OVr common English Farriers are very farre to seeke in this cure, because they neither do perfectly acquaint themselves with the members of a horse,

horse, nor haue so much inuention in this extremity, to make a horse, being an vnreasonable creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also in that the old traditions in Horse leach-craft affirme, that all fractures about the knee, are incurable; and so despairing, they cease to make practise: but they are much deceiued: for neither the fracture about the knee, nor the fracture below the knee, is more incurable in a horse then in a man: if the Farrier can tell how to keepe the horse from struggling, or tormenting the member griued. If therefore your horse haue any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned by the depriuation of the vse of that member, & as easie to be felt by the separation of the bones, the one part being higher then the other, besides the roughnesse and inequality of the place griued: you shall then for the cure thereof, first take a strong double canuasse, which shall bee as broad as from the horses forsholder to the flanke; and shall haue another double canuasse, which shall come from betweene the horses forebooths vp to the top of the withers, where meeting with the rest of the canuasse, & hauing exceeding strong loops, to which strong ropes must be fastened, you shall by maine force sling vp the horse from the ground, so as his feete may no more but touch the ground: and if it be a forelegge that is broken, then you shall raise him a little higher before then behind: if a hinder leg, then a little higher behinde then before, so that the horse may rest most vpon the members most sound. When your horse is thus slung, then you shall put the bones into the right place; which done, wrappe it close about with vnwashed wolles newly pulled from the

sheepes backe, binding it fast to the legge, with a smooth linnen roller, soaked before in oyle and vinegar mingled together, and looke that your roller lye as smooth and plaine as may be; and vpon that againe lay more wolles dipt in oyle & vinegar, and then splent it with three broad, smooth, & strong splents, binding them fast at both ends with a thong; and in any case let the horses legge be kept out very straight, the space of 40. daies, and let not the bonds bee loosened about thrice in twenty daies, vnlesse it shrinke, & so require to be new drest and bound againe; but faile not euery day once to powre on the soire place through the splents, oyle and vinegar mingled together: and at the forty daies end, if you perceiue that the broken place bee sowed together againe with some hard knob or gristle, then loosen the bonds, and ease the canuasse, so as the horse may tread more firmly vpon his soire foote; which when he doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him goe vp and downe faire and gently, vsing from thence forth to annoynt the soire place either with soft grease, or else with one of these plaisters or oyntments: Take of *Spuma argenti*, of vinegar, of each one pound; of faller oyle, halfe a pound, of armoniacke, and of turpentine, of each three ounces; of waxe and of rosen, of each two ounces; of *Bitumen*, of pitch, and of verdigrease, of each halfe a pound; boyle the vinegar, oyle, and *Spuma argenti* together, vntill it waxe thicke: then put thereunto the pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the *Bitumen*, without stirring it at all; and that being also molten, put in then all the rest, & set the pot againe to the fire, & let them boyle altogether, vntill they be all vnited in one: that done,

done, straine it, & make it in plaister forme, and vse it as occasion shall serue. Other Farriers take of liquid pitch one pound, of waxe two ounces, of the purest & finest part of frankinsence one ounce, of *Amoniacum*, toure ounces, of dry rosen, and of *Galbanum*, of each one ounce, of vinegar two pints; boyle first the vinegar and pitch together: then put in the *Amoniacum*, dissolued first in vinegar, and after that all the aforesaid drugges; and after they haue boyled all together, and be vnited in one, straine it, and make it into a plaister, and vie it according to occasion. Other Farriers take of old sallet oyle, a quart, and put thereunto of hogs grease, of *Spuma nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boyle together, vntill it begin to bubble aboue: then take it from the fire, & when you vse any of the ointment, let it be very warme, and wel chafed in, & then one of the two former plaisters folded aboue it, and it is most soueraigne & comfortable for any bone that is broken.

CHAP. I40.

Of Bones out of Ioynt.

IF a horse haue any of his bones out of the ioynt, as either his knee, his shoulder, his pasterne, or such like, which you shall both perceiue by the vncomlinesse of the ioynt, and also feeble by the hollownesse of the member that is displaced: then your readiest cure is to cast the horse on his back, and putting foure strong pasterns on his feet, draw him vp so as his backe may no more but touch the ground: then drawe the grieued legge higher then the rest, till the poysse and waight of his body haue made the ioynt to shoote into its right place againe; which you

shall know when it doth, by a sodaine and great crack which the ioynt will giue, when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentlenesse loose the horse, and let him rise: and then annoynt all the grieved place ouer, either with the last oyntment rehearsed in the last chapter, or else with the oyle of mandrake, or the oyle of swallowes, both which are of most so- ueraine vertue.

CHAP. I41.

To dry up humors, or to binde being astrictiue or binding charges.

TAKE of *Vnguentum Triapharmacum* made of *Lisbergie*, vinegar, and old oyle, boyled till they bee thicke, onely take as much oyle as of both the others, and it will stay the fluxe of any humors.

If you take strong lye, it is a great dryer and a binde of humors.

Dissolue in vinegar *Rosen*, *Affalto*, & *Myrrhe*, of each an ounce, of redde waxe, halfe an ounce, with a little *Galbanum*, of *Bitumen* halfe an ounce, & of armoniack halfe an ounce; mingle them wel together in the boyling: for this salue dryeth wonderfully, bindeth al loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakened.

Take of lard two pounds, and when it is sodden straine it with three ounces of ceruse, and as much allome molten, and it both dryeth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry figges beaten with allome, mustard, and vinegar, doth dry very abundantly.

Oyle or soft grease beaten to a salue with vitrioll, Gals and allome, and the powder of pomegranats,

netes, salt, and vinegar both dry and binde sufficiently.

Sope and vnfleckt lime mixt together dryeth perfectly after any incision

Verdigrease, orpiment, *Sal-armoniack*, and the powder of *Coloquintida*, of each a like, made into a plaister with milke or waxe, drieth and bindeth.

The grease of snakes roasted, the head & taile being cut away, is a great dryer.

To conclude, the barke of a willow tree burnt to ashes is as great a dryer, and binder, as any simple whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 142.

A plaister to dry up superfluous moisture, and to bind partes loosened.

Take of *Bitumen* one pound, of the purest part of Frankensence three ounces, of *Bdelium Arabicum* one ounce, of Deares suet one pound, of *Populeum* one ounce, of *Galbanum* ounce, of the drops of *Storaxe* one ounce, of common waxe one pound, of *Rosin Cabial* halfe a pound, of *Viscus Italicus* one ounce and an halfe, of *Apoxima* one ounce, of the iuice of hyssop one ounce, of the droppes of armoniack one ounce, of pitch halfe a pound; let all these bee well and perfectly molten, dissolued, and incorporated together according to art, and then make a plaister thereof.

CHAP. 143.

Another plaister to dry up any swelling, wind gall, splent, or bladders, in or about the ioints.

Take of virgin-waxe halfe a pound, of rosen one pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce and

and an halfe, of *Bitumen* halfe a pound, of *Myrrhe* secundary one pound, of armoniacke three ounces, of *Cosinus* three ounces; boyle all these things together in an earthen pot, saving the armoniacke, and *Cosinus*, which beeing first ground like fine flowre, must bee added vnto the other things, after that they haue bene boyled and cooled, and then boyled altogether againe, & well stirred, so as they may be incorporated together and made al one substance, and then applied as occasion shall bee administred.

CHAP. 144.

Receipts to dissolue humors.

TAKE of wormewood, sage, rosemary, and the barks of an elme, or of a pine, of each a like quantity, and boyle them in oyle with a good quantity of lin-seed; and making a batine thereof, bathe the grieved part, and it will dissolue any humors that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figs stampd with salt, till it come to a perfect salve, dissolueth al manner of humors, by opening the poores, and giuing a large passage.

CHAP. 145.

How to mollifie any hardnesse.

TAKE of lin-seed pund, and of Fenegrecke, of each foure ounces, of pitch, and rosen, of each three ounces, of the flowres of roses two ounces, pitch of Greece sixe ounces; boyle them together, then adde three ounces of turpentine, sixe ounces of hony, and a little oyle; and then applying this salve, it will mollifie any hard substance.

Maluanisco

Maluanisco wel sod, and stamp with *Oleum Rosatum*, being laid hote vnto any hardnesse, will make it soft.

Boyle *Branck vrsin*, & mallowes together, & beate them with grease, oyle, and lard, and they will mollifie, and heale most exceedingly.

Maluanisco, coleworts, *Branck vrsin*, hearbe of the wall, and old grease, being beaten together, mollifie very much.

The oyle of *Cypresse*, both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheat meale, hony, pellitory, *Branck vrsin*, and the leaues of wormewood, being beaten with swines grease, and laid hote vnto any harde tumor, doth suddenly mollifie it, and is passing good for any stripe also.

Grease, mustardseed, and comen, boyled together, doth mollifie very much,

Take of sope halfe an ounce, of vnfleckt lime an ounce, and mixe them well with strong lye, and it will mollifie, euen the hardest houes.

The iuice of the leaues and rootes of Elder, or a plaister made thereof, doth dry vp and mollifie humors maruellously.

So doth the iuice of the toppes of *Cypresse*, and dry figges macerated in vinegar and strained, of each three ounces; and if you adde to it of *Sal-niter* an ounce, of armoniack halfe an ounce, of aloes & opoponaxe a little, and make it into an oyntment, it will mollifie any hardnesse very sufficiently.

Mallowes, nettles, *Mercorella*, and the rootes of cowcumpers, and turpentine, being beaten together with old grease, wil mollifie any hardnesse speedily.

CHAP. 146.

To harden any softnesse.

THe soale of an old shooe burnt, and sodden in vinegar, wil harden houes, & so will also the powder of gals boyled with bran and salt in strong vinegar.

The powder of hony & lime, or the powder of oystershels, or the powder of burnt felt, or thicke creame & soote mixt together, wil harden any soare whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 147.

To conglutinate.

I*Ris Illirica* beaten and sifted, mingled with pepper, hony, corrants, and giuen the horse to drinke with wine, and oyle, helpeth and conglutinath any inward rupture or burstnesse whatsoeuer.

Dragant, saffron, the fruit of the Pine, with the yelkes of egges, giuen likewise to drinke with wine and oyle, doth also conglutinate any inward member or veine broken.

Incense, masticke, and cete, doth the like also.

Poligano sod in wine, & giuen to drink, is good also.

The roots and feedes of *Asparagus* sodde in water, and giuen to the horse: then after for three dayes giue him butter and opoponaxe, with hony and myrre, and it will conglutinate any inward vlcere or rupture whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 148.

To mundifie or cleanse any soare

TAke oyle of oliues, (swines grease clarified, the grease of a yong Fox, turpentine, allome, and white waxe; seeth them all together, till they be most thoroughly incorporated together; and with this oyntment

oyntment dresse any foule soare whatsoeuer, and it will mundifie, and cleanse it most sufficiently.

CHAP. 149.

Of repercussive medicines, or such as drive backe humors.

REpercussive medicines, or such as drive euill humors backe, are commonly called amongst Farriers, plaisters, or salues defensitiue, and are to be vsed about euery great wound and vlcer, lest the fluxe of humors flowing to the weake part, both confound the medicine, and breede more dangerous exulcerations. Now of these repercussive medicines these are the best, either vinegar, salt, and bole-armoniacke beaten together, and spread round about the soare, or else white lead and sallet oyle beaten also together; or red led and sallet oyle, or else *Vnguentum Album Camphiratum*, and such like.

CHAP. 150.

Of burning Compositions.

Burning Compositions are, for the most part, corrosiues, of which we shall haue occasion to speake more at large in a chapter following; yet forasmuch as some are of better temper then others, you shall here vnderstand that of all burning compositions, the gentlest is *Vnguentum Apostolorum*: next to it is verdigrease and hogges grease beaten together; next to it is *Precipitate*, and turpentine mixt together; next to it is arnicke allayd with any oyle, or healing salue; next to it is *Mercurie sublimate*, likewise allayd with some cooling salue; and the worst is lime and sope, or lime and strong lye beaten together: for they will

N n n a corrode

corrode & mortifie the soundest part or mēber whatsoever.

CHAP. 151.

For all manner of hurts about a horse, whatsoeuer.

TAKE an ounce of oyle, two ounces of turpentine, and a little waxe; mingle them at the fire: this will heale any wound or gall, and keepe it cleane from filth, water, and dirt.

Take vinegar and hony, & boyle it together, when it is cold, adde the powder of verdigrease, copporas, and brasse, burnt; mingle them well together: this will take away all ill and dead flesh, and cleanse and heale any old vlcer.

Take waxe, pitch, swines grease and turpentine, and mixe them well together: this will heale any bone or spell, or any other stubbe.

Take house snailes, and seeth them in butter, and they will draw out any thorne or naile, being oft renewed. So will also the roots of reedes being bruised and applyed.

The roots of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with hony, is good for any old soare.

Take salt, butter, and hony, or white waxe, turpentine, and oyle *Rosatum*, of each a like quantity, with twice as much beane flowre as of any of the other; mixe it very well together, and make it into a salve, & it will heale any soare, either old or new, whatsoever.

Take waxe, turpentine, and Deeres suet, or the marrow of a Stagge, and mixe them well together, and it wil heale any wound or impostume: so will also wax,
oyle

oyle, masticke, frankinsence, and sheepes suet, well molten together, or the powder of masticke, frankinsence, and aloes, mixt and molten well together.

The whites of egges beaten with *Oleum rosatum*, and salt, and so layd vpon flaxe hurds, healeth any wound that is not in any principall part where the muscles are.

If you will ceanſe and heale any ſoare, take three pints of well clarified hony, and boyle it with one pint of vinegar, and one of verdigrease, and so apply it; or else take of masticke, and verdigrease, of each halfe an ounce, of frankinsence one ounce, of new waxe foure ounces, of turpentine sixe ounces, and of hogges grease two pound; boyle and incorporate all these together, & then apply it to the soare, and it will both cleanse and heale.

Chick-weed, groundsell, graise, and stale vrine, very well boyled together, will heale any galling or hurts by halter, or other accident, or any straine, or stripe, or swelling, which cometh by any such like mischance.

Take of new milke three quarts, a good handfull of plantaine; let it boyle till a pint bee consumed: then adde three ounces of allome made into powder, and one ounce and an halfe of white sugarcandy, made likewise into powder: then let it boyle a little, till it haue a hard curde: then straine it; with this warme, bathe any old vlcer: then dry it, and lay on some *Unguentum Basilicon*: this cleanseth, dryeth, strengtheneth, and killeth the itch, and healeth the fouleſt vlcer either in man or beast, that may bee. Also, if you take of milke a quart, of allome in powder two ounces, of vinegar a spoonfull; when

the milke doth seeth, put in the allome and vinegar, then take off the curde, and vse the rest, and it will likewise dry vp and heale any foule old soare whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 152.

How to make the powder of hony, and lime.

TAKE such a quantity of vnfleckt lime, as you shall thinke fit, beat it into very fine powder, then take so much hony as shall suffice to mingle it together, & make it into a stiffe past, in the forme of a thick cake or loafe: then put the same cake or loafe into a hot ouen, or a burning fire, till it bee baked, or burnt glowing redde; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into very fine powder, and then vse it as any occasion shall serue. It dryeth, healeth, and skinneth any soare whatsoeuer very maruailously.

CHAP. 153.

The order of taking vp of veines, and wherefore it is good.

FIRST before wee speake of the order of taking vp of veines, you shal vnderstand, that al veines except the neck veines, the eie veines, the breast veine, the palate veines, and the spurre veines, are to bee taken vp, and not stricken with the fleames; partly because they bee so little and thinne, that if you strike them you shall either indanger the striking thorow them; or partly because they are so neere adioyning to arteries and sinewes, that if in striking you should hit and pricke either artery or sinewe, it were a perent laming of the horse, as I haue oftentimes seene and noted in the practise of many ignorant smiths. Now touching the order

order of taking vp of a veine, it is thus. First you shall cast your horse either vpon some soft ground, grasse, some dunghill that is not very moist, or in some light-some house, vpon good store of sweete straw; then when the horse is thus cast, you shall looke for the veine which you intend to take vp, and if it be either so small, or lye so deepe, that you can hardly perceine it; then you shall with warme water, rubbe, chafe & bathe all that part where the veine lyeth; then take a narrow silke garter, and a handfull or two above the veine (if it bee of any of the horses legs) garter the member very strait; but if it bee a veine to be taken vp on the body, or breast; then with a suringle either close behinde the hinder point of the troulder, or within a handfull of the place, where you meane to take vp the veine, gird him very strait, and presently you shall see the veine to arise; then marke that part of the skinne which couereth the veine, and with your finger and your thumbe, pull it somewhat aside from the veine, and then with a very fine incision-knife slit the skinne cleane through, without touching the veine, and in any wise cut no deeper then through the skinne, and that longwise too, in such sort as the veine goeth, yet not about an inch at the most in length: that done, remoue your finger and your thumbe, and the skinne will returne againe into his place, right ouer the veine as it was before, insomuch that but opening the orifice, or slit, you shall see the veinelye blew, and bare before your eyes: then take a fine smooth corner made either of the browantler of a stag, or of an old bucke, and thrust it vnderneath the veine, and lift it vp a pretty distance (that is to say, halfe the thicknes of the corner) above the

the skinne; that done, you shall then loose either the garter or the suringle, for they are but onely helpes for you to find out the veine; and where the veine will appeare without them, there by no means you shall vie them. Now when you haue thus taken your veine vpon your cornet, you shall then either put a redde silke threed, dipt in oyle, or butter, or else a small shoemakers threed, vnderneath the veine also, somewhat higher then the cornet, which silke or threed must serue to knit the veine when time requires; then the cornet standing still as before, with your kinfe slit the toppe of the veine longwite, the length of a barley corne, that it may bleed; then stopping the neather part of your veine with the silke or threed, suffer it to bleed well from aboue; then with your silke or threed removed aboue, knit it fast with a sure knot aboue the slit suffering it onely to bleed from beneath, and hauing bleed there also sufficiently, then knit vp the veine beneath the slit with a sure knot; then fill the hole of the veine with salt, and heale vp the wound of the skinne with turpentine and hogges grease molten together, or else with a little fresh butter, laid on with a little flaxe or tow. Now the vertue which redounds from this taking vp of veines, first it is very necessary, and doth ease all grieues, straines, and stiffnesse of the limbs; for the taking vp of the plat veins easeth al paines in the breast, and grieues in the chest; the taking vp of the fore-thigh veines easeth farcies, and swellings of the legges; the taking vp of the shackle veines before, helpeth gourdng, quitter bones, and the swelling of the ioynts, scabbes, and scratches; the taking vp of the hinder hough-veines, helpeth spauens of both kinds, most especially any farcy

farcy in those parts, and generally all swellings or impostumes; the taking vp of the pastorne veines behind helpeth swellings about the cronet, or neather ioints, Paines, mules and all manner of kibed heeles, besides sundry other such like diseases.

CHAP. 154.

*Of cauterizing or giuing the fire, the
kinds and vses.*

THe giuing of fire which amongst the best Farriers is called cauterizing, and amongst the simpler, burning, searing, or blistering, is (according to the generall opinion of all the most ancientest Farriers) the chiefeft remedy, and as it were the last refuge of all diseases incident to any horses body, whether they be naturall or accidentall; for the violence of fire separating and digesting all manner of humors, into a thinne aire, and loose body, cleanseth and auoydeth those grossnesses which are the materiall causes of all putrifaction, and vlceration. Now of cauterization there bee two kinds, the one of them actuall, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the instrument: that is to say of the hote yron of what fashion soeuer: the other potentiall, which is done by the applying of medicine, whose nature is either corrosiue, putrifiatiue, or caustique. Now the first of these, which is the cautery actuall, is principally to be vsed when there is any appostumation in any finewie part or member, or amongst any of the most principall veines: also when you shall dismember or cut away any ioynt, or make any incision where there is feare of any fluxe of blood, or

where you shall finde either the skinne or muscles shrunke or straitned, and in many such like cases. The cauterising potentiall is to bee vsed in old cankered vlcers, wennes, or any spongy excrecion either of flesh or bone whatsoeuer, of whose natures, and properties you shall reade more hereafter in a following chapter.

CHAP. 155.

Of the cauterize actuall, and the forme of Instruments.

AN actuall cautery, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately vsed, is a notable remedy to stop all corruption in members, to keepe perfect the complexion of the same, and also to staunch the bloud; onely you must haue a carefull regard that in the handling of your yron, you touch neither sinewes, tendants, cords, nor ligaments, lest you doe vtterly disable the member, or breede crampes or conuulsions, except it bee when you dismember or cut away any ioyns; as when you doe make curtals, geld horses, or such like: and then your cautery is to bee vsed onely to seare the veines, sinewes, and ligaments, till such time that you are perfectly assured that all fluxe of bloud is stopped, whatsoeuer.

Now againe the actuall cautery bindeth together parts loosened, it doth attenuate parts blowne, and puffed vp, it dryeth vp superfluous moysture, it looseneth, disperseth, and diuideth euill matter gathered together into knots, it asswageth old grieues, it rectifieth those parts of the body that
are

are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect estate, and suffereth no abundance of euill humours to grow or increase: for the skinne being separated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrifaction through the vertue of the fire, is first digested and ripened, and then so dissolued, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieued or sickened member is now healed, and eased of all paine and griefe; yea, and insomuch that the holes being once closed, and cleane shut vp, the place is stronger and better knit together, and couered with a tougher skinne then euer it was before; onely the greatest olemish that can any way be found in cautery, is, that it commonly leaueth a great scarre, which is many times an eyesore more then is tollerable; and therefore the vse of cauterizing is onely to be preferred but in desperate cases of great extremity; for albeit it worke soule, yet it is most certaine, it workes most sure. Now as touching the instruments wherewith you must cauterize, their substance, and proportion, you shall vnderstand that the most curious Farriers doe preferre either gold or siluer to be the best mettall to make them of, in that few or no euill accidents doe follow where they burne: But the wisest, best, and most skilfullest Farriers take copper to be sufficient inough, and a mettall without any lawfull exception; yet where copper instruments cannot be had, there you may, with commendations inough, vse such instruments as are made of iron, and finde your worke no deale at all hindered. Now for the fashion or proportion of your instruments or Irons, they are to be referred to the soare, or place grieued, wherewith you are to

meddle, according to the diuersity whereof your instruments are to bee made of diuers fashions, as some are to bee made knife-wise, either with thinne edges, or broad edges; and they bee called drawing kniues, or searing kniues, because they are principally employed in the drawing of strait lines shallow, or deepe, and sometimes in circular or diuers squares: some are made like strait, and some like crooked bodkins, and they are employed either in fleshy excrefions, to cause exulceration; or else in impostumes to open small passages for the matter; some are made like hookes or sickles, and they are to bee vsed where the wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead flesh, or such like hidden euils, which cannot bee reacht by any strait instrument: others are made either with great buttons, or little buttons at the end; and they are vsed to open impostumes, or else to burne into the sound flesh where you intend to make any new soare or issue for the drawing or keeping backe of other euil humors: and in making of these irons, the Farriers owne iudgement is to be of great valew, because he must either increase and diminish them according to the manner of the place grieved; and be sure that he euer make them fit for his right purpose. Now for the vse of these instruments, there are two principall things to bee regarded: First, the heating of the iron, and next, the true temper, or bearing of the Farriers hand. Touching the heating of the iron, you shall vnderstand, that the backe of the iron must neuer bee so hote as the edge, that is to say, you must neuer make the backe of the iron redde hote, for feare that thereby it yeeld too much heate, and so consequently breede inflammation

The second Booke. 459

inflammation : therefore whensoever you see the backe of your iron as hote as the edge, you shall a little coole it with water. Now for the temper, or bearing of your hand, you shall vnderstand that the more euenly, and lightly it is done, so much the better it is done; and heerein is to bee considered, the finenesse or thicknesse of the horses skinne, which you shall know most commonly by his haire: for if it bee short and fine, then the skinne is thin; if it be long and rough, then is his skinne thicke and boysterous.

Now the skinne that is fine, must bee cauterized or seared with a very light hand, in as much as the skinne is soone pierced through, and the thicke skinne with a heavy hand, and both of them with such a tempered hand, that the skinne must no more but looke yellow; wherein you shall euer finde that the fine skinne will sooner looke yellow then the thicke skinne, the reason being, because the thicknesse and roughnesse of the haire of the thicke skinne doth coole and choake the heate of the Iron, insomuch that if it be not layd to with a more heavy hand, and the instrument so much the more and the oftener heated, it cannot worke that effect which in art it should do. Now you shall also obserue, that in drawing of any line or other cauterize whatsoeuer, that you euer draw with the haire, and neuer against the haire, whether the lines be short, long, deepe, shallow, straight, crooked, or ouerthwart, according as the grieve doth require. Now to conclude, you are to obserue in cauterizing, these fewe precepts : First, that you doe not giue fire to any sinewie place, except there bee some apparant swelling, or else

impotumation; secondly, that you giue not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of ioynt, for feare of breeding a general weakenesse in the whole member. Thirdly, neuer to giue the fire so deepe, or suffer your hand to be so heauy, that you may either misshape or deform the horse, either by vnecessary figures, or vncomly scarres. Thirdly, not to be too rash or hasty in giuing fire, as if euery cure were to be wrought by that practise onely (as I know some very well reputed Farriers holde of opinion,) but onely to attempt all other good meanes before, and when all hope else is desperate, then to make the fire your last refuge, as an extremity that must preuaile when all other practises doe perish. Lastly, I would not haue you like those foolish Farriers which know nothing, vterly to contemne and neglect it, as if it were vlesse, but with all moderation and discretion to apply it in fit time and place, whereby the poore horse may gaine ease, your selte good reputation, and the owner profite; which is most certaine, as long as you are gouerned by wisedome.

CHAP. 156.

Of cauterize by medicine, which is cauterize potentiall.

THe potentiall cauterize or searing of the flesh by medicine is (as I said before) when the medicines are either corrosiue, putrifactiue, or caustick; corrosiue, as when they doe corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh; putrifactiue, when they doe corrupt the complexion of the member, and doe induce a maine scar like dead flesh, causing infinite paine, in such sort that they are often accompanied with feuers & mortality,
and

and therefore are not to be administred, but to strong bodies, & in very strong diseases; & caustick, which is as much to say as burning, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and commeth nearest to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoever it toucheth. Now these potentiall cauterizes doe exceed and excell one another, by certaine degrees, as thus, the corrosiues are weaker then the putrifactiues, and the putrifactiues are weaker then the causticks; the corrosiues worke vpon the vpper part in the soft flesh, the putrifactiues in the depth of the hard flesh; and the causticks haue power to breake skin sound or vnbound, both in hard and soft flesh, & that very deeply also. Now of corrosiues, some bee simple, and some bee compound; the simple corrosiues are, roach allome, burnt or vnburnt, the spung of the sea somewhat burnt, lime, redde corral, powder of mercury, shauings of an oxe or harts horne, *Precipitate*, verdigrease, and such like: the compound corrosiues are, blackesope, and lime, *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, and *Vnguentum Ceraceum*, and many such like; and these are to be applied vnto soares, vlcers, or excressions, after they are corroded. The putrifactiues are arsnicke, either white or yellow, *Sublimatum*, *Resalgar*, or any medicine compounded with any of them; besides *Sandaracha Chrysocollo*, and *aconitum*. Now if you would haue your putrifactiue medicines to be crustiue, that is breeding a great scar, and hote in the fourth degree; then they are vnsleckt lime, and the burned dregges of wine; and these are to be vsed to carbunkles, cankers, and anburies. The causticke medicines are those which are made of strong lye, called *Capitellum* or *Magistra*,

gistra, of *Vitriole Romane*, *Sal-niter*, *Aqua fortis*, *Apium*, *Cantharides*, *Ciclamine* onions, strong garlicke, *Melana-cardinum*, the stones or graines of briony, and many such like. Now in the conclusion I would wish, euery diligent Farrier, seldome or neuer to vse either *Arsnicke*, *Resalgar*, or *Mercury Sublimate*, simply of of themselues, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to worke be very great) with *Vnguentum Apostolorum*; but if it be very little, then with hogges grease, turpentine, or such like: and thus much for this potentiall cauterizing and the proper vses.

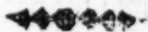
CHAP. 157.

Of the rowelling of horses, and the vse thereof.

THE rowelling of horses is, amongst our ignorant and simple smiths, the most ordinary and generall practise of all other whatsoeuer, insomuch that not any diseáse can almost be found, about a horse either how sleight or great soeuer it be, but presently without any reason or sence therefore, they will rowell him for the same; whereby they not onely put the horse to a needlesse torment, but also bring down now and then such a fluxe of naughty humors, that they lame the horse which otherwise would be perfectly sound; but it is not my theame to dispute of their ignorances, onely this I must say of rowelling, it is a practise as necessary & commendable for the good estate of a horses limbs, and body, as any medicine whatsoeuer, so it be applyed in his due time, and in his due place; otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodnesse. The helpes which are got
by


by rowelling, are these, it separateth and dissolueth all euill humors, which either through naturall or vn-naturall corruptions are gathered, and knit together in any one place, hindering the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluity of euill substance; it looseth parts that are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakened; it giueth strength vnto sicke ioynts, & comforteth whatsoeuer is opprest with any cold steame, or hote chollericke substance; the generall vse of rowelling is, either for old inward straines, especially about the shoulders or hips, or else for great hard swellings, which will not be mollified, or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either plaister or vnguent: for you must vnderstand, that when a horse receiueth any straine or bruise, either in the vpper ioynts of his shoulder, or his hips, which ioynts doe not stand one vpon another, as the lower ioyntes do, but they goe one into another, as the one end of the marrow-bone into the pot of the spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the elbow, which is a double bone: now as I say, when a bruise is receiued in these parts, if by present application of hote and comfortable medicines the grieue be not taken away, then eftsóones there gathers betweene the pot and the bone a certaine build ielly, which continually offending the tender gristle which couers the ends of euery bone, makes the horse to halt vehemently; and then is this corrupt matter not to bee taken away by any outward medicine, but by rowelling onely; & as I speake of the shoulder, so I speake of the hips also where the vpper thigh-bone goeth into the pot of the cancell-bone, & there beedeth the like infirmie.

Now for the manner of rowelling it is in this sort: First, when you haue found out the certaine place of the horses griefe, as whether it bee on the forepitch of the shoulder, on the hinder elbow, or on the hippe, then you shall (hauing cast the horse vpon some dung-hill, or soft ground) make a little slit more then a handfull below the place of his griefe through the skinne, and no more, so bigge as you may well thrust in a swannes quill into the same: then with your cornet raise the skinne a little from the flesh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skinne from the flesh vward, euen to the toppe, and all ouer the shoulder; then stopping the hole with your finger and your thumbe, take a smalll hazell sticke, and all to beate the blowne place all ouer; and then with your hand spread the winde into euery part, and after let it go: then take a tampin of horse haire twound together, or which is better, of red sarcinit, halfe the bignesse of a mans little finger, and aboue a foote, or sixtene inches in length, made in this forme:



putting it into your rowelling needle, which would bee at the least seuen or eight incnes long; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it vward, draw it out againe at least sixe inches aboue; & then, if you please, you may put in another aboue that: and then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and moue & draw them to and froe in the skinne, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and euery day after they are in, to annoynt them well with butter, hogges grease, or oyle de bay.

Now there bee other Farriers which in that they are

are opiniated that these long rowels, or tampins of haire or silke, doe make both a double soare, and a great scarre, therefore they make their rowels of round peeces of stiffe leather, such as is the vpper part of an old shooe, with a round hole in the midst, according to this forme:  and then doubling it when they put it in, as soeue as it is within, to spreade it, and lay it flatte betweene the flesh and the skinne, and so as the hole of the rowell may answere iust with the hole that is made in the horses skinne; and then once in two or three dayes to cleanse the rowell, and to annoynt it, and so put it in againe. Other Farriers do vse to make the rowell of lanthorne-horne, in the same fashion as it is made of leather, and in like sort to vse it. But for mine owne part, I haue vsed them all, and truly in my practise, finde not any better then other; onely the leather or the horne is somewhat more cleanly, and lesse offensiue to the eye, yet they aske much more attendance. Now if you rowel your horse for any swelling, then you shall euer put in your long rowell the same way that the veines runne, and seldome, or neuer crosse-wise, and the more you blow the skinne for a swelling, so much the better it is: for the winde is it which onely occasioneth putrifaction, and makes the festered humours to dissolue, and distill downe from the secret hollowes of the ioynts, into those open places where it falleth away in matter, and so the beast becomes cured.

THere is to be obserued in the gelding of horses,
 first, the age; secondly, the season of the yeare;
 and lastly, the state of the Moone. For the age, if it
 be a colt, you may geld him at 9. dayes old, or 15. if
 his stones be come down: for to speake the truth, the
 sooner that you geld him, it is so much the better,
 both for his growth, shape, and courage; albeit some
 hold an opinion, that at two yeares old should be the
 soonest, but they are mistaken, and their reasons are
 weake therein. Now if it be a horse that you would
 geld, then there is no speech to be made of his age:
 for it is without any question, that a perfect Farrier
 may geld a horse without danger at any age whatso-
 euer, being carefull in the cure. Now for the season
 of the yeare, the best is in the Spring, betweene A-
 prill and May, or in the beginning of Iune at the fur-
 thest, or else about the fall of the leafe, which is the la-
 ter end of September. Now for the state of the
 Moone, the fittest time is euer when the Moone is in
 the waine: as touching the manner of gelding, it is
 in this sort, whether it bee foale, colt, or horse: First,
 you shall cast him either vpon straw, or vpon some
 dung-hill; then taking the stone betweene your fore-
 most finger and your great finger, you shall with a ve-
 ry fine incision knife slit the codde, so that you may
 presse the stone forth and no more: then with a paire
 of small nippers, made either of steele, boxe-wood,
 or brasill, being very smooth, and clap the strings of
 the stone betweene them, very neere vnto the setting
 on of the stone, and presse them so hard, that there
 may

may be no fluxe of bloud: then with a thin drawing cauterizing Iron made red hot, seare away the stone; then take a hard plaister made of rosen, waxe, and turpentine, wel molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it vpon the head of the strings; then seare the strings, and then melt more of the salve, till such time as you haue layd a good thicknesse of the salve vpon the strings: then loose the nippers, and as you did with that stone, so do with the other also: then fill the two slits of the codde with white salt, and annoynt all the out-side of the codde, and all the horses belly and thighe with hogges grease cleane rendred; and so let him rise, and keepe him either in some very warme stable, or in some very warme pasture, where he may walke vp and downe; for there is nothing better for a horse in this case, then moderate exercise. Now if after his gelding you doe perceiue that his codde and sheath doth swell in any extraordinary fashion, then you shall chase him vp and downe, and make him trotte an howre in a day, and it will soone recouer him, and make him sound without any impediment.

CHAP. 159.

*of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of the
tailes of Horses.*

THE curtalling of Horses is vsed in no nation whatsoeuer, so much as in this kingdome of ours, by reason of much carriage, and heauy burthens which our horses continually are exercised and employed withall, and the rather sith wee are strongly opinated, that the taking away of those ioynts

doth make the horses chine or backe a great deale the stronger, and more able to supporte burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily finde it by continuall experience. Now for the manner of curtalling of horses, it is in this sort. First your shall with your finger and your thumbe, grope till you find the third ioint from the setting on of the horses taile; and hauing found it, raise vp all the haire, and turne it backward; then taking a very small strong corde wrappe it about that ioynt, and pull it both with your owne strength, and an other mans, so strait as you can possible pull it: then wrappe it about againe, and draw it as strait or straiter againe, and thus doe three or foure times about his taile, with all the possible straitnesse that may be; and then make fast the ends of the cord: then take a peece of wood, whose end is smooth and euen, of iust height with the strunt of the horses taile, & setting it betweene the horses hinder legges (after you haue tramelled all his foure legges, in such sort that he can no waies stirre) then lay his taile thereupon, and taking a maine strong sharpe knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so neare as you can gesse it, betweene the fourth and fift ioynt, and then with a great smithy hammer striking vpon the backe of the knife, cut the taile asunder; then if you see any blood to issue forth, you shall know that the corde is not strait enough: and therefore you must draw it straiter; but if no blood follow, then it is well bound; this done, you shall take a redde hote burning yron of the full compasse of the flesh of the horses taile, made round after this fashion, that the bone

of

of the taile may goe through the hole, and with it you shall seare the flesh, till you haue mortified it; and in the searing you shall see the ends of the veines start out like pape heads, but you shall stil continue searing them; vntill you see all to bee most smooth, plaine and hard, so that the blood cannot breake through the burning; then may you boldly vnloose the cord, and after two or three daies that you see the soare beginne to rot, you shall annoynt it with fresh butter, or else with hogges grease, and turpentine, vntill it bee whole.

CHAP. 160.

*To make a white starre in any part
of a horse.*

IF you will at any time make a white starre, either in your horses fore-head or in any other part of his body, you shall according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take a tile stone, and after you haue burned it, beate it into fine powder; then take lilie rootes, dasie rootes, white bryer rootes, of each a like quantity, and hauing dryed them beate them also into fine powder, and mixe them with the first; then with a razor shaue that part of your horse where you would haue your starre: and then with this powder rubbe it so vehemently, that you scarce leaue any skinne on; then take a good quantity of hony-suckle flowres, and a like quantity of hony, & the water wherein a moule hath bene sodden; & then distill them into a water, and with that water, wash the soare place the space
of

of three daies together, and keepe the winde from it, and you shall presently see the white haire to grow; for this receipt hath bene often very well approued. There bee other Farriers, which take a craube, and roast it, and being fire hote, bind it to that part which you would haue white, and it will scald away the old haire, & the next haire that groweth will be white. Other Farriers vse after they haue shaued the place to take the iuice of sharpe onions or leeks, and to bathe the place very much therewith; then to take barley bread, as fire hot as it cometh from the oven, and clap it to the shauen place, suffering it to lye so till it be cold: and then after annoynt it with hony, and the white haire will come. Other Farriers vse to annoynt the shauen place with the grease of a moldy-warpe sodde, and that will bring white haire. Other Farriers vse after they haue shaued it, to rub the place well with salte, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broth wherein a mouldy-warpe, and some swines grease hath bene sodden. Other Farriers vse to boyle a mouldy-warpe in salt water for three daies together, or else in strong lye; and euer as one liquor consumeth, to supply it with an other; then with this decoction being warme, annoynt the shauen place, and it will bring white haire sodainely. Other Farriers take the gall of a goare, and rubbe the shauen place therewith, and it will bring white haire also. Other Farriers take sheepes milke and boyle it, and in that wet a linnen cloth, and being very hote lay it to, renewing it till you may rubbe off the haire with your fingers; this done, apply the milke to twice a day like warme, till the haire doe come againe, which without all
question

question will be white. Other Farriers take the rootes of wilde cowcumbers, and twice so much *Nitrum* mingled with oyle and hony, or else adde to your cowcumbers *Sal nitrum*, beaten, and hony, and annoynt the shauen place therewith, and it will bring white haire. Other Farriers vse to take a peece of a bricke-bar, and with it gently to rubbe and chafe the place, till by the continuance therof, you haue rubbed away both the haire and the skinne, so broad as you would haue the starre, and then after to annoynt it with hony, till the haire come againe; or else to roast a colewort stalke like a warden, or an egge, til it be stone hard: and then as they come hote out of the fire, to clappe either of them to the horses forehead, and it will scald off the haire, then to annoynt it with hony till the haire come againe. Now to conclude, and to shew you the most perfect & absolute experiment which I haue euer found to bee most infallible, it is thus; you shall take a very fine, sharpe, long bodkin, made for the purpose, and thrust it vp betwixt the skinne and the bone vpward, so long as you would haue the star; and in thrusting it vp you shall hollow the skin from the bone, the bignesse that you would haue the starre: this done, you shall take a peece of lead, made in the true shape of your bodkin, & drawing out the bodkin, thrust in the lead into the same hoales; then you shall thrust the bodkin crossewise, the forehead vnderneath the lead; and then thrusting in such another peece of lead, you shall see it in the horses face to present this figure,



Q 99

which

which being done, you shall take a very strong packe-thread, and putting it vnderneath all the foure ends of the leads, and drawing it with all straitnesse, you shall gather all the hollow skinne together on a purse, folding the packe-thread oft and oft about, and stil straiter and straiter, so that you shall see it then to present vnto you this figure: this done, you shall let it rest at least the space of eight and forty howres, in which time the skinne will bee, as it were, mortified: then may you vnloose the packe-thread, and draw forth the leaden pinnes, and with your hand close the hollow skinne to the fore-head hard againe; and shortly after you shall see the haire to fall away, and the next haire which cometh will bee white; and this experiment is most infallible. Now there bee some Farriers which will not put in pinnes, nor vse any packe-thread, but onely will slit the fore-head, and open the skinne on both sides, and then put in either a borne or a plate of leade as bigge as the starre, and so let it remaine till the skinne rot: then take out the borne or lead, and annoynt the place with hony, and the water of mallowes sod, and it will bring white haire: and surely this experiment also is most infallible, but it maketh a foule soare, and is somewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect.



How to make a blacke Starre, or white haire blacke.

IF at any time you would make vpon a white horse a blacke starre, you shall take a scruple of inke, & 4. scruples of the wood of *Oliander* beaten to powder; incorporate this in as much sheepes suet, as will well suffice, and then annoynt the place therewith, & it will make any white haire black. Other Farriers vse to take the decoction of fearne roots, and sage sod in lye, and wash the place therewith, and it will breede blacke haire; but you must wash the place very oft therewith. Other Farriers vse to take the rust of Iron gals, and vitrioll, and stampe them with oyle; or else take souter inke, gals, and rust, and beate them well together, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it will turne any white haire to blacke.

To make a red starre in a Horses face.

IF you desire to make in your horses' face, or any other part, a red starre, you shall take of *Aqua fortis* an ounce, of *Aqua-vita* a penyworth, of siluer to the valew of eightene pence; put them into a glasse, and heate them well therein, and then annoynt the place very well therewith, and it will immediatly turne the haire to be of a perfect red colour, only it wil endure no longer then till the casting of the haire; and therefore at euery such time you must renew the haire againe, if you will haue the starre to continue.

CHAP. 163.

*How to make haire to come very soone, very
thicke, and very long.*

IF you would haue haire to come very soone in a-
ny bare place, or to grow thicke where it is thin, or
long where it is short, you shal take (according to the
opinion of the most ancient Farriers) the vrine of a
yong boy, and with it first wash the place; after that,
take lye made of vnfleckt lime, *Ceruse*, and *Litargie*,
and with it wash the haire oft, and it wil make it come
soone, long, and thicke. Other Farriers vse to wash
the place with water wherein the roots of *Althaa* haue
bene sod: then after drye it gently with your hand,
and it will encrease haire much. Other Farriers vse to
wash the place with oyle mingled with the ashes of
nut-shells burnt, or else snayle-shells burnt, and it will
encrease haire also. Other Farriers take *Agrimonie*
pund with goats milke, & with it annoynt the place,
or else oyle wherein a mouldiwarpe hath bene boy-
led, and annoynt the place with either of them, and
it will encrease haire very much. Other Farriers take
the dung of goats, allome, hony, and the bloud of a
swine; mingle them altogether, and stirre them till
they be ready to boyle, and being hot, rubbe the bare
place therewith. Other Farriers take nettle seeds brui-
sed with hony, water, and salt, & then rub the place
therewith. Other Farriers take the roote of a white
lilly beaten and sodde in oyle, and annoynt the place
therewith. Others take the iuyce of a long onyon, or
else the iuyce of radishes, and annoynt the place there-
with. Others take tarre, oyle oliue, and hony boyled
together,

The second Booke. 475

together, and with it annoynt the bare place. Other Farriers take the soote of a cawdron mixed with hony, and oyle, and annoynt the place therewith. There bee other Farriers which take greene wall-nut-shells, & burne them to powder, and then mixe it with hony, oyle, and wine, and annoynt the place therewith, and it will encrease haire wonderfully.

CHAP. 194.

To make haire smooth, sleeke, and soft.

IF you will make your horses coate to be smooth, sleeke, soft, and shining, you shall with sufficient store of cloath, keepe him warme at the heart; for the least inward cold will make the haire stare: then you shall make him sweate oft: for that will rease vp the dust and filth, which makes his coate foule and hard: then you shall, when the horse is in his greatest sweate, with an old sword blade, turning the edge towards his haire, scrape, or as it were, curry away all the white foame, sweate, and filth which shall bee raised vp, and that will lay his coate euen, and make it smooth; and lastly, you shall when you let him bloud, rubbe him all ouer with his owne bloud, and so let it remaine two or three dayes, and then curry and dresse him wel, and this will make his coate shine like glasse.

CHAP. 165.

How to take off haire in any part of a Horse.

IF you will at any time take off the haire from any part of a horse, you shall dissolue in water,
Qqq 3 (accor-

(according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) eight ounces of vnfleckt lime: and then boyle it till a quarter bee consumed, then adde vnto it an ounce of *Orpiment*, and then lay a plaister thereof, to any part of the horse, and it will in very few howers bring all the haire away. There bee other Farriers which boyle in running water rust, and *Orpiment*, and with it beeing very hote, wash the place, and it will soone bring the haire away.

CHAP. 166.

How to cast or overthrow a horse.

VVHensoever you intend to cast or overthrow your horse, after you haue brought him into a conuenient place, as namely either vpon some greene swarth, or vpon some dunghill, or in some barne vpon good store of soft straw, you shall take and double a long rope, and cast a knot a yard from the bought: then put the bought about his necke, and the double rope betwixt his foure legges, and about his hinder pasternes, vnderneath his fetlockes; then put the ends of the rope vnder the bought of his necke, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold down his head, vnder which alwaies you must bee sure to haue good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your horse on the buttocke, or doe any thing about his hinder legges, that he may not strike, take vp his contrary forelegge; and when you doe brand your horse see that the yron be redde hote, and that the haire be both scared quite away, and the flesh scortched in euery place before you let him goe,

Robert and
Mary Leach 1700

goe, and so you shall lose no labour.

CHAP. 167.

How to know the age of a horse.

THe age of every horse is knowne, either by his teeth, or by his hooves, or by his taile, or by the barres in the roose of his mouth. It is knowne by his teeth thus; at two yeares old, hee changeth foure foremost teeth in his head; at three yeares old he changeth the teeth next vnto them, & leaueth no more apparant foales teeth but two of each side, aboue and below; at foure yeares old he changeth the teeth next vnto them, and leaueth no more foales teeth but one on each side, both aboue and below; at five yeares old, he hath neuer a foales tooth before, but then he changeth his tusshes on each side; at sixe yeares old, hee putterh vp his tusshes, neare about which you shall see apparantly growing a little circle of new and young flesh; besides, the tush will be white, small, short, and sharp; at seuen yeares old, the two outmost teeth of his neather chap on both sides will bee hollow, with a little blacke specke in them; and at eight yeares old, all his teeth will be full, smooth, and plaine, the blacke specke beeing cleane gone, and his tusshes will bee somewhat yellow, without any circkles of young flesh; at nine yeares old, his foremost teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foule, and his tusshes will be blunt; at ten yeares old, in the inside of his vpper tusshes will be no hoals at all to be felt with your fingars end, which till that age, you shall euer most perfectly feele; besides, the temples of his head will beginne to bee crooked
and

and hollow; at eleauen yeares of age, his teeth will bee exceeding long, very yellow, blacke, and foule; onely he will cut euen, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another; at twelue yeares old, his teeth will be long, yellow, blacke, and foule: but then his vpper teeth will ouerreach, and hang ouer his neather teeth; at thirteene yeares, his tusshes will be worne close to his chappe, if he bee a much ridden horse, otherwise they will bee blacke, and foule, and long like the fanges of a boare. If a horses hooves bee rugged, and as it were seamed, one seame ouer another; if they bee dry, full, and crustie, it is a signe of very old age: as on the contrary part, a smooth, moyst, hollow, and well sounding hoofe, is a signe of young yeares. If you take your horse with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the taile, close at the setting one by the buttocke, and feeling there hard; if you feele betwixt your finger & your thumbe of each side his taile, a ioynt sticke out more then any other ioynt, by the bignesse of an hazell nut, then you may presume, the horse is vnder ten yeares old; but if his ioynts be all plaine, and no such thing to be felt, then hee is aboue ten, and at least thirteene. If a horses eies bee round, full, and starting from his head, if the pits ouer his eyes be filled smooth and euen with his temples, and no wrinckles either about his brow or vnder his eyes, then the horse is young: if otherwise you see the contrary characters, it is a signe of old age; if you take vp a horses skinne on any part of body, betwixt your finger and your thumbe, and plucke it from the flesh: then letting it goe againe, if it sodainely returne to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plaine, without wrinckle,

wrinkle, then the horse is young, and full of strength: but if being pulled up it stand, and not returne to his former place, then hee is very old and wasted. Lastly, if a horse that is of any darke colour shall grow grissell onely about his eye browes, or vnderneath his maine, it is then an infallible signe of most extreme old age: and thus much touching a horses age.

CHAP. 168.

How to make an old horse seeme young.

TAKE a little small crooked yron, no bigger then a wheate corne, and hauing made it red hot, burne a little blacke hole in the toppes of the two outmost teeth of each side the neather chappe before, next to the rushes; and then with an aule blade pricke it, and make the shell fine and thinne; then with a sharpe scraping yron make al his teeth white and cleane: this done, take a fine launcet, and about the hollowes of the horses eyes which are shrunk downe, make a little hole onely but through the skinne, and then raising it vp, put in a quill, that is very small: as the quill of a rauen or such like: and then blow the skinne full of winde till all the hollownesse bee filled vp, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the wind will stay in, and the horses countenance will be as if he were but sixe yeares old at the most

CHAP. 169.

How to make a horse that bee shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.

IF either when you are in seruice in the warres, and would not be discouered, or when vpon any other
R r r occasion

occasion, you would not haue your harse to ney, or make a noyse, you shall take a list of wollen cloath, and tye it fast in many foldes about the midst of your horses tongue; and belecue it, as long as the tongue is so tyed, so long the horse can by no meanes ney, or make any other extraordinary noise with his voyce, as hath bene often tryed.

CHAP. 170.

How to make a horse exceeding quicke of the spurre.

IF your horse either bee dull of the spurre through his naturall inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you shall first haue him the breadth of a saucer on both the sides, iust in the spurring place, on both sides the veine: then with a launcet make fixe issues, or small orifices on both sides: then raising the skinne from the flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantitie of burnt salt, which will make the soare to ranckle. In this sort you shall keepe it 3. dayes, and by no meanes ride the horse: the third day being ended, you shall set a child on his backe with spurs, & make him spurre the horse in the soare place: which done, you shall wash the place with pisse, salt, and nettles, sodden well together: and this will make his sides smart so extremely, that hee will neuer abide the spurre after. Now you shall let him stand after his washing three dayes more, and then take halfe a pint of hony, and with it annoynt his sides once a day till they be whole.

CHAP. 171.

*How to make a horse that tires, or is restife, to
goe forward.*

IF your horse (as it is the common nature of iades) through the naughtinesse of his nature, or dulnesse of spirit, be either to restife, or so tired that hee will not goe forward a foote, but standeth stocke still; you shall then make a running suickle of a small cord, and put it about his coddies, and stones in such sort that it may not slippe: then you shall draw the rest of the cord betweene the girths and the horses body, and bringing it vp betweene the horses forelegges, be sure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you sit in the saddle: then ride the horse forward, and when he beginneth to grow restife, or to stand still, then plucke the cord, and crampe him by the stones, and you shall see that immediatly hee will goe forward: and in this manner you shall vse him for at least a fortnight, and it will cleane take away that euill quality.

CHAP. 172.

*How to make a Horse to follow his maister, and to finde
him out, and challenge him amongst many people.*

IF you will haue your horse to haue such a violent loue towardes you, that hee shall not onely follow you vp and downe, but also labour to find you out, and owne you, as soone as he hath found you; you shall then take a pound of oat-meale, & put thereto a quarter of a pound of hony, and halfe a pound of *Lunace*; and then make a cake thereof, and put it in your bosome next vnto your naked skinne: then runne or

labour your selfe vp and downe vntill you sweate : then rub all your sweate vpon your cake : this done, keepe your horse fasting. a day and a night, and then giue him the cake to eate, which as soone as hee hath eaten you shall turne him loose; and he will not onely most eagerly follow you, but also hunt and seeke you out when he hath lost, or doth misse you; and though you be enuironed with neuer so many, yet he wil find you out, and know you; and you shall not faile but euery time that he commeth to you, you shall spee in his mouth, and annoynt his tongue with your spetle : and thus doing he will neuer forsake you.

CHAP. 173.

The nature and speciall qualities of all the simples that are spoken of in this whole worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.

A

A *Brotomum*, which we cal in English southernwort is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for short winde.

Absinthium, which we call wormewood, is hote in the first degree, and dry in the second; it cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for the stomacke.

Aceto, which we call vinegar, especially if it bee of wine, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree.

Agaricum is hote in the first, and dry in the second degree; it expelleth humors, purgeth all fleame and choler, and is good for the liuer and kidneies.

Allium, which we call garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all euill humors.

Agreum, which we call cresses, is hot and drye in the fourth

fourth degree; it burneth, draweth, and resolueth, & is good for scurfe, or wild scabs, or for the lungs.

Agripa is a knowne vnguent that is good against all tumors. *Allome*, called roche allome, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is good for cankers.

Alder, or *Elder* tree is hot and dry, it purgeth choler & fleame, and healeth wounds.

Aloes is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth and dissolueth, and also comforteth.

Alhea, which we call white mallowes, is hot and dry: it looseth & scattereth humors, warmeth & moisteneth.

Almonds is hot and moist in the first degree: it prouoketh vrine, and is good for the lungs or liuer.

Ambrosia, which we call wood-sage, represteth, driueth backe, and bindeth humors.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, it softeneth and dissolueth humors.

Anctum, which we call *Dill*, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it ripeneth crude humors, & expelleth heate.

Aniseeds is hot and dry in the third degree, expelleth cold, & dissolueth humors, and prouoketh vrine.

Antimonium, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth and purgeth.

Appio, which we call smallage, or parsley, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: it ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and prouoketh vrine.

Aristolochia, which we call birthwort, or hartwort, is hote, and cleanseth: but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much the stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree: it draweth, and purgeth thin water & fleame, and is good to open the lungs.

Armoniske drieth, cooleth, softnerh, and draweth. *Artemisi*, which wee call great tansey or mugwort, is hote in the second, and dry in the third degree; it is good for the wormes, and swellings in the sinewes.

Asfuck of both kinds is hote in the third, and dry in the second degree; it bindeth, eateth, and fretteth being a very strong corrosiue.

Assafetida is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree; it cleanseth euill humors.

Asphaltum is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*; it is hote and dry, and comforteth any swelling.

Assoteo, is hote in the first, and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth and dryeth, and is good for the stomacke.

Asungia, which we call soft or fresh grease, is hote and moist in the first degree: it mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any wound, impostume, or vlcer.

Auena, which we call oates, are naturally dry; they doe dry, binde, cleanse, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the onely principall simple which doth naturally agree with the compositiō of a horses body; and therefore the oyle or quintessence of them is the onely absolute and perfect medicine that can be administered for any inward sicknesse, as experience will approue and make perfect.

Auelanne, which wee call the ashes of nut-shells burnt, are hote and dry, and do skinne or stop the flux of matter

B

Bay-berries are vehemently hote and dry, and are good for all manner of rheumes, or shortnesse of wind, especially for any disease in the lungs.

Balsamum is hote and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth

cleanſeth, draweth, and comforteth.

Bdelium is a gum that is hote and dry; it ſoftneth and draweth away moiſture, and is excellent againſt all hard ſwellings whatſoeuer.

Bertonium or *Bettonicum*, which we call dogſene or kegwort, is hote and dry in the firſt degree; it purgeth and cleanſeth all euill humors.

Bicca is cold & dry in the ſecond degree; it cloſeth things opened, it ſoftens hardnes, filleth places emptied, and doth extenuate all exciſſions.

Bictole, which we call Beets, is cold and moiſt, and cleanſeth vlcers.

Bitumen is a kind of brimſtone, or fatneſſe from the ſea, and it is hote and dry in the ſecond degree, and is comfortable againſt any ſwelling.

Bottiro is hote in the firſt, and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and it ripeneth impoſtumes.

Bolcarmonia is a certaine earth which is cold & dry; which bindeth, and driueth backe euill humors, and is alſo an excellent deſenſiue againſt fluxes of blood.

Brackurſin is a wonderfull great molliſer.

Brasica which we call coleworts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate wounds, it healeth vlcers and tumors; it holdeth the ſeed, and killeth euill humors.

Brotano which is the ſame that *Abrotonum* is, looke there.

Brusco which we call butchers broome, or knee holm, is hote in the ſecond degree, and dry in the firſt; it prouoketh vrine.

Bryenie of it are two kinds, the white and black, but the white is more effectually; the roote of it is hote and dry in the ſecond degree; it cleanſeth & ripeneth,
and

and is good for all cold diseases, it also dryeth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardnesse.

C

Califonia or *Colophonia* doth incarnate vlcers, & doth conglutinate things which are separated.

Calamamento which wee call wilde penyriall or wilde mint, of which that which growes on the mountaines is the best, is hote and dry in the third degree, doth resolue tumors, and draweth away humors.

Calcina viva which we call vnsleckt lime, is hote & dry in the fourth degree; it adusteth, dryeth, and corrodeeth.

Camamila which wee call camomile, is hote and dry in the first degree; it mollifieth & dissolueth al grieues, and is good especially for the liuer.

Camedros which we call geomander, is hote & dry in the third degree, and is good against al moist colds.

Camphora is a kind of gum which is cold, and dry in the third degree; it preserueth the body from putrification, and bindeth humors.

Canabis which wee call hempe, is hote, the seede whereof driueth away extraordinary colds; it ripeneth and dissolueth humors; and mollifieth and dryeth inflammations.

Cinamon is hote and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward sicknesses.

Canna which we call reeds, especially the hedge reede, draweth out pricks, if you lay the rootes too with the knobbes.

Cantharides are certaine flies, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they wil raise blisters in the sound parts.

Capilli Venere which weecall maidens haire, is dry, and bindeth loose humors.

Cardimonium is hote; it extenuateth humors, and being mixt with vinegar killeth scabbes.

Clones are hote and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

Carrowaies are hot and dry in the third degree; it helpeeth wind, and cleanseeth euill humors.

Cassia is hote and moist, in the first degree; it expelleth wind, dissolueth humors, and purgeth the stomacke of choler and fleame.

Cassoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cabbage is hote in the first, and dry in the second degree; it cleanseeth and ripeneth humors.

Cenere which wee call ashes, are hote and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanse mightily.

Centauria which wee call wilde running *Bettonie*, smelling like *Marioram*, is hote and dry in the third degree; it bindeth wounds, and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased liuers, for the wormes, old soares and wounds, and is commonly called centuarie.

Cepe which we call onions, is hote in the fourth degree: it doth cleanse corruptions, & ripens swellings.

Ceruill is hote and dry, and bindeth much.

Cerus is a white oyntment made of oyle & white lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: and for the effects it hath all those which *Braccha* hath.

Cereocollo: see *Serococollo*. *Chelidonium* which wee call *Seladine*, is hote and dry in the third degree; it cleanteth al putrifactiue humors, & is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellowes or iaundies.

Cicuta which wee call hemlocke, is cold in the fourth degree: it numbeth and astonieth.

Cucoria, which we call succory, is cold & dry in the

first degree, and bindeth much.

Comen is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

Cipolle, which is leekes, or as wee call them, chiuess: see *Cepa*.

Cinaber, or *Sanguis draconis*, or as we call it, *Vermilion*, is a certaine mettall drawne from quicke sulphure, and quick-siluer; it dryeth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth, and comforteth vlcers.

Cito, or *Cisto*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrans, or *Cithrons*, are cold & moyst in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

Coloquintida, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth onely.

Colosonia, which wee call earth-pitch, or Greeke pitch, is hot & dry in the third degree: it conglutineth and gathereth together. see *Peca Graca*.

Cocumeri, see *Cucumeri*.

Consolida which we call *Camphrey*, is cold: it conglutineth and bindeth, & is good against ruptures.

Costro, or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot, & healeth vlcers.

Costus is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: and it raiseth vp wormes, and is that which we call hearbe *Mary*, or the roote of *Angelica*.

Corno di Cerno, which we call harts horne, is dry, yet it strengtheneth very much.

Crocum, which we call saffron, is hot in the second, & dry in the first degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and resolueeth impostumes.

Cucumeri seluaggi is hot and dry in the third degree: it dissolueth, softeneth, and purgeth scame.

Cucumeri elasterium is cold & moist in the second degree; it cleanseth much, & is made of the iuice of wild

cowcumbers.

D

Dates are hot and moyft in the fecond degree: they do refolve and difperfe things knit together.

Diacatholicon, purgeth all offenfiue humors which offend the body, whatfoeuer.

Diafinicon, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth winde exceedingly, and compacteth all grieues of the belly which are begot by crude humors, fpringing from cholickes or fuch like paines.

Dialtea, or *Dialthea*, is an oyntment made of holy-hoxe, or fea-mallows: it warmeth and moyfteneth.

Dragonwort is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

E

Ebuli which we call Elder, is hot & dry in the third degree: it drieth and driueth out water, and expelleth choler and thin fleame, fee *Sambucus*.

Edera terrestris, which we call ground luy, fee *Hedera*.

Elaterium, fee *Cucumeri*.

Elleboro, which we call neefing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and blacke: it is hote and dry in the third degree.

Eruca which we call rocket, and of which the wild is the beft: the feeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth vrine, wormes, and water.

Efula, which is an hearbe like fperge, is hote in the fourth degree, and dryeth and cleafeth exceedingly, and of fome is called wolfes milke.

Euforbium is a gum that is hot in the fourth degree: it drieth, purgeth, cleafeth, and exulcerateth much.

Exerufion which is that which we call *Oxieration*, is a certaine composition or mixture made of *Aceto*, and water, and is good to allay fwellings and tumors.

F

Faba, which we call a beane, is cold and dry, and it cleanseeth, and dissolueth.

Farina, which we call bran, is hot and dry in the first degree, and dissolueth very much.

Fearne is dry and binding, but the roote is hote and cleanseing, and killeth wormes.

Felle which we call gall, is hot and dry, & it cleanseeth and mundifieth.

Ferugo, which we call the rust of iron, is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and restraineth euill humors.

Fici aridi, which we call dry figges, are hot and dry in the second degree: they ripen tumors, soften and consume hardnesse, and are good for purficknesse, coughes, and diseases of the lungs.

Filomontano, which we call a dodder, being a thing that cleaueth to hearbes, winding about them like threeds; it openeth the liuer and milt, and purgeth all fleame and choler.

Filonio is a composition, which will astonish or benumbe any part or member.

Fennel is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree: it doth dissolue all manner of grosse humours, and is good for the liuer or lungs.

Foligine, which we call foot, is hot & dry, and it dryeth maruellously, and so doth all foots whatsoeuer.

G

Gallanga which we call *Galingale* is hote & dry in the third degree: it easeth the stomacke of all grieues which proceed from cold causes: it strengtheneth the braine, and comforteth the senses.

Galbanum is hote in the third degree, and dry in the second:

second: it softeneth, stoppeth, and draweth away euill humors, and is good against colds.

Galls, which we call galls, or a light fruit of oaks, are hot and piercing.

Gariflata, which we call hearbe bennet, is hote and dry in the second degree.

Garofoli, which we call cloues, is hot and dry in the 3. degree, & are very comfortable for inward sicknesse.

Genger is hot, and is excellent to preferue heate in the inward parts.

Gimila, or *Ginefra*, which we call broome, is hote and dry in the third degree: it killeth worms, and scou-
reth much.

Gentian, especially the root, is hot in the third, & dry in the second degree: it doth extenuate, purge, and cleane all euill humors, and is good for the liuer and stomacke, and for wounds and soares.

Giglio which we call lillies, softeneth sinewes, and are good for wounds and soares.

Giniper is hot and dry in the third degree.

Gramen, which is any manner of graine or pulse, is cold and dry, except wheate, and that is temperatly hot and moyst: they do incarnate and mundifie.

Graso, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moist, and doth ripen and soften.

H

Harundinis cortex, which we call cane reed, is hot & dry in the third degree.

Hedera, which we call Iuy, is a great drawer, & opener.

Helxine, which we call pellitory of the wall, cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

Hyssopo, which we call hyssope, there is both wilde

and that of the garden, but the garden is the best; it is hote and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth and warmeth, and is good for inflammations of the lungs, old coughs, pofes, rheumes, and short winde.

Hordeo which we call barley, is cold and dry in the first degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

I

Incenso which we call Frankinsence; it dryeth, and incarnateth: see *Olibanum*.

Ipericon which we call Saint Johns wort, expelleth moisture, and healeth burnings,

Ireos Florentina which we call Flower de luce, especially the roote, it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hote and dry in the third degree.

Iride Illyrica: see *Helpine*.

Iris is a roote that is hote and dry: it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, & purgeth vlcers.

Iasquiani which wee call henbane, is cold in the fourth degree: it astonieth, and benumbeth.

L

Ligustum which wee call louage, is hote and dry in the third degree; it expelleth winde, especially the seed and roote.

Lapathum which wee call a docke, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

Lauri which we call laurell, or bayes, are hote and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

Lentisco is a gumme that is like masticke; it is dry in the second degree, and moderately bindeth, it is bitter in tast, and euer greene.

Linosæ which we call flaxe or line, the seed thereof is hote and dry, & it ripeneth and mollifieth tumors.

Lee

Lee is hote and dry in the fourth degree; it is very aduſtiue, cleaſing, and piercing.

Lithargio of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of gold, the other of ſiluer; it is very dry, it bindeth, ſoſteneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and cloſeth vp; and of theſe two, that which is like gold is the beſt.

Lolium which wee call cockle, is hote and dry in the third degree, and diſſolueth much.

Lumache which we call houſe-ſnailes without ſhells, doe conglutinate very much.

M

Malua is cold and moiſt, it ſtoppeth, ſoſtneſth, and mitigateth paine.

Malua ſciſus is very dry, it ſoſteneth, looſeneth, and incarnateth.

Mace is dry in the third degree, without heate, and onely bindeth.

Manna is of equall temper hote and dry; it openeth, it mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Martaton or *Martiaton*, is a hote vnguent againſt all cold humors; it helpeth the grieve of ſinewes, purgeth cold watry matters, and ripens tumors.

Marrobie which we call horehound, of which there are two kinds, the white and blacke, but the white is the better; it is hote in the ſecond, and dry in the third degree; it helpeth obſtuctions in the liuer, openeth and purgeth, and is good againſt colds, or for ſoares.

Maſticke is hote in the fiſt, and dry in the ſecond degree; It draweth, and dryeth, bindeth, and ſoſtneſth, and is good againſt old cold.

Medulla which we call marrow, of what kind ſoeuer, is cold & moiſt, & mollifieth vlcers; now the beſt mar-

row is that of the hart or old stagge, the next that of a calfe, the next that of a sheepe, and the last that of a goate.

Mel which wee call hony, is hote and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth the stomacke and entrails, stoppeth humors, and incarnateth wounds.

Melissa which we call balme, is hote in the second, & dry in the first degree; it cleanseth, & conglutinateth.

Mentha which we call Mints, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree; of which the wilde minte is best, it killeth wormes, it bindeth, it dissolueth, and is good for the stomacke, or a cold liuer.

Minio which we call redde lead, is cold and dry, and good against swellings.

Mirre or *Mirra* is a soueraigne gum; it is hote & dry in the second degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanseth wounds, is good against al colds, killeth wormes, and helpeth the purficker: for though it doth cleanse much, yet it doth not exasperate the arteries; also it doth incarnate.

Morcosita or *Marcafita* is hot and dry; it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humors.

Mertilla is the fruite of the mirtill tree, it is dry in the third degree; it doth bind good, & loosen euil humors.

Morcas which we call the mulbery, the vnripe is cold and dry, in the second degree; the barke, but chiefly the roote, is hote and dry in the third degree: it doth cleanse, purge, and bind; the roote thereof killeth wormes, and the gumme thereof doth loosen, and the iuice of the berry doth heale cankers or soare mouths.

N

Narcissi radix which we call the roote of white *Daffa-*
dill,

or else prim-rose pearlesse, is dry, it cleanseth, and draweth, and healeth wounds

Nardus radix which wee call setwal, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; it bindeth, and *Spica Nardo* prouoketh vrine.

Nasturtio is hote and dry in the fourth degree; it burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth wormes: see *Agricum* which wee call cresses.

Nigella which we call git, is hote and dry in the third degree; it stayeth wind, killeth wormes, and looseth; yet to giue too great a quantity is dangerous.

Nitro is of the same nature, that salte-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O
Olibanum is a gumme, it is hote and dry in the second degree; it warmeth, bindeth, closeth woundes, and incarnateth.

Oyle of Olives is of a very temperate nature, and changeth his qualities according to the nature of the simples which are mixt with him.

Opium, is cold and dry in the fourth degree; and is a liquor made of poppy dried and mixt with saffron; it doth astonish and prouoke sleepe.

Opoponax is a gumme, that is hote in the third, and dry in the second degree; it softeneth and stayeth humors; is good against all colds: see *Papauer*, *Galbanum*, *Baelium*, and *Sagapenum*.

Orpimento is a kind of mettall, of which the artificial is called *Arsnick*, is hote in the third degree, and dry in the second; it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a corrosiue.

Origano which wee call wilde marioram, or pennyrial, is hote and dry in the third degree; it taketh

away stoppings, and is good for coughes.

Orobis, which we call fitches, are hote in the first, dry in the second degree: they do open & cleanse.

Orzo, which we call barley, is cold and drye in the first degree; it ripeneth and cleanseth.

Ortica, which we call nettles, are hote and dry: they are biting, & wholesome for the lungs, or for soares.

Oria which we call egges, the white is cold, and the yolke is hot, and doth incarnate.

P

Panacea, is that hearbe whose fruite wee call *Opopanax*.

Panico is a graine which wee call panicke, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

Papauer, which we call poppy, the seeds thereof are white, and hote in the fourth degree: see *opium*.

Pastinache, which we call parsnips, are hot, and doe prouoke vrine.

Pece which we call pitch, is hot & dry in the second degree, it draweth, drieth, and ripeneth.

Pece liquida, which we call tarre, is hote and dry in the second degree, is good against colds, or euill humors gathered together in the breast, and draweth wounds.

Pece Rasina, which we call rosen, or pitch of Greece, it draweth, healeth, and incarnateth.

Pece Rasina, & liquida, which we call turpentine, it doth draw, skinne, incarnate, and conglutinate things together.

Pepper is hote and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractiue and mundificatiue, and good for all diseases of the breast or lungs.

Peaches are cold and moylt in the second degree: they

they binde, and stirre vp wormes.

Petasites, which we call butter burre, is drye in the third degree.

Petroleum is a certaine oyle made of salt-peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the second degree: it healeth wounds, and comforteth weake members.

Petroselinum, which we call parsley, or stone parsley, is, & especially his seed, hot and dry in the third degree: it staies winde, openeth, and prouoketh vrine.

Phylonium, of which there are two kinds, *Phylonium Romanum*, & *Phylonium Persicum*, are excellent compositions, and most comfortable after the losse of blood.

Polygonum, which we call knot-grasse, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth backe humors.

Plantago, which we call plantaine, is cold and dry in the third degree: it comforteth, dryeth, bindeth, and incarnateth wounds.

Porri, which we call leekes, scallions, or onyons, are hot & dry, and do extenuate obstructions, and raise vp and loosen all euill humors in the body.

Pueri or *porrum*, is hot in the second degree, and is good for all cold waterish stomackes.

Pulegium, which we call penyryall, is hot and dry in the third degree: it doth vehemently dry vp moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the lungs: see *O-rigono*.

Punicum Malum, which we call pomegranate, is cold & dry: it bindeth, prouoketh vrine, & is good for the stomacke.

R

Rasano, or *Raphanus* which we call radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: they comfort, and are good for old colds; but especially they prouoke vrine.

Rosina, which we call rosen, is hot and dry in the second degree; it stoppeth, softeneth, cleanseeth, draweth, and purgeth wounds, and is good against cold causes.

Resalgar. See *Risigallo*.

Regoratio, or *Rigolatio*, which we call licoras, is temperate in heate, & moisteneth, & ripeneth, and is good for heate in the stomacke or liuer, and profitable against wounds.

Risigallo, is a composition of Sulphure, orpiment, and vnbleckt lime; and is a most strong corrosiue.

Rosaflos, which we call rose leaues, or rose cakes, are dry and binding.

Rubea, which we call madder, is dry, it comforteth, and incarnateth, the root thereof prouoketh vrine, & is good for the yellowes.

Ruberb, or Rubarb, is hote and dry in the second degree: it purgeth choler and fleame, and putteth away stoppings.

Ruta, which we call rue, or hearbe of grace, is hote and dry in the third degree: but the wild rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth: the garden rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inflammations, it ripeneth, and dryeth, and expelleth winde.

S

Sauina, which we call *Sauine*, is hot and dry in the third degree: it openeth, dissolueth, and dryeth mightily, and is most soueraigne against wormes.

Sacaro is hot and moyst and comfortable.

Sagapenum. See *Serapino*.

Sagina, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of some called *panicum Indicum*, is onely hote and dry.

Sal.

Salē which we call salt, is hot and dry in the second degree; and it cleanseth.

Salamora, which we call brine, or water and salt, is of the same nature that salt is.

Sal armoniacke is hot and dry in the fourth degree, & it cleanseth.

Salce, which we call fallowes, or willow, it bindeth and drieth vehemently.

Sal gemma is a kinde of salt which is hote and dry, it cleanseth and mundifieth.

Salnitro, some vse for this salt-peter; it is hot & dry, & euaporateth: it comforteth sinewes, and taketh away tiring or wearinesse.

Salvia, which we call sage, is hot and dry in the second degree: it cleanseth and bindeth, is good for wounds or exulceration of the lungs.

Sambucus, which we call Elder tree, or wal-wort, that is like Elder tree, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first: it dryeth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

Sandolo, which we call saunders, are cold and drye in the second degree, and driue backe humors.

Sandolo Rosso, or *Sandolo Bianca*, which wee call red kind, or white sand, are hote and dry, and bring on skin.

Sanguis draconis, see *Cinaber*; yet some take it for the red docke, or red patience, but it is not so.

Sapone, which we call sope, is hot; it draweth, molli-fieth, drieth and purgeth.

Saxifragia, which we call saxifrage, is hote and dry, and binding.

Scabioso, which we call scallions, is hot and dry in the second degree: they do regenerate, and are good for scabs, for the lungs, or for soarenesse in the breast.

Seamonium which is the iuice of a roote, is hote in the third degree; it digesteth and purgeth choler, but must neuer be giuen inwardly, vnlesse it be corrected.

Scariola which we call endiue, is cold, and dry, and binding.

Scarcocolla is a gumme of the kind of *Euforbium*; it is hote and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth, incarnateth, and comforteth wounds.

Sea onion is hote in the second, and dry in the first degree; it ripeneth and expelleth humors: it hindereth putrification, and preserueth health.

Semola which we call young coleworts, are hot and dry in the first degree.

Sempervine which we call housleeke, and some call stonecrop, is cold in the third, and dry in the second degree; it is good for burnings, or frettings, or for inflammations of vlcers, it driueth backe humors, coo- leth, and bindeth.

Sena dolce is hote in the second and dry in the first degree: it cleanseth, and openeth.

Serapino is a gum of *Ferula*, it is hote in the third and dry in the second degree; it mollifieth, loosneth, and is good for colds.

Serpillo which we call wilde running *Bettonie*, or Time smelling like marioram, is hot & dry in the third degree.

Sinapi which we call mustard, is hote and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth and resolueth, and is good for scurres or wild scabbes.

Solatro which we call night shade is cold in the third degree.

Sulphure viue which we call brimstone, is hote and dry in the third degree; it draweth, disperleth humors, and



